Modern Natural Product Synthesis
Modern Natural Product Synthesis
Overcoming Difficulties
Small-molecule drugs that can be orally administered, cross cell membranes, and interact with intracellular targets have been significant in the pharmaceutical industry for over 100 years. It appeared that small-molecule drugs might become obsolete as the industry became more interested in biotherapeutics, but in fact, 62% of new chemicals approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) between 2017 and 2022 are still small-molecule drugs. In addition, over the past decade, advances in synthesis and manufacturing techniques and methods, as well as in biopharmaceutical studies, have expanded the potential of small-molecule drugs. Thus, small-molecule drugs still have significant therapeutic potential.

However, recently FDA-approved drugs have exhibited a trend toward larger sizes, so-called beyond the rule of five. Therefore, I believe that researchers with the ability to design and synthesize such compounds are needed. Moreover, in drug discovery, in addition to the synthesis of bioactive compounds that can be used as pharmaceuticals, it is necessary to address problems related to favorable pharmacokinetics, metabolism, and toxicity. These problems must be addressed based on their physical properties and the wide range of chemical reactions in vivo.

Therefore, knowledge and experience regarding the physical properties of compounds, a wide range of chemical reactions, and related research fields gained through the study of natural product synthesis, which is integrated science and technology, will certainly be useful in drug discovery. The pipeline for students who have studied natural product synthesis to work on drug discovery in the industry has not changed, and it is evident that researchers studying the synthesis of complex natural products will continue to play an important role in drug discovery.

Drug discovery is steadily advancing, and we currently live in an era where artificial intelligence and machine learning are being used to streamline the identification of new drugs. However, even in such situations, the ability to handle and synthesize new compounds is necessary for drug discovery. Therefore, I sincerely hope that several young people will become interested in the total synthesis of complex natural products, and that they will further develop this research field and aspire to drug discovery. If young people read this book and become interested in the total
synthesis of natural products because of its fascination, I would be happy to have supported its publication.

In conclusion, I am grateful for the publication of this book and wish further development of the natural product synthesis.

Hiroshi Tomiyama, Ph.D.
President and CEO
Kotobuki Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.
Nagano, Japan
Preface

We are delighted to publish our book titled, *Modern Natural Product Synthesis—Overcoming Difficulties*, edited at the request of Springer’s editorial team. First, we would like to convey special gratitude to the authors for the time they have expended to participate in the publication of this book.

The basic policy of this publication was not to re-edit previously published journal papers, but to include content that could not be described in the journal papers. Specifically, we asked the authors to describe how they overcame these difficulties and achieved a complete synthesis, including reactions and synthetic routes that failed in their natural product synthesis. If readers become familiar with natural product synthesis by reading this book and become interested in total synthesis studies, the publication of this book would have been successful. We hope that the coming generations will learn about the science and technology of natural product synthesis by reading this book and further develop it.

With advancements in science and technology, remarkable progress has been made in synthetic organic chemistry, and structurally complex natural products have been synthesized successively. At an industrial scale, Halaven®, which has 19 asymmetric carbons, has been produced as a drug. The synthesis of such a complex molecule has made advances since it was studied at universities and has become a method of manufacturing pharmaceuticals. Today, even if a new natural product emerges with a unique and complex structure that exhibits promising bioactivity as a drug, its total synthesis will soon be achieved.

This suggests that modern synthetic organic chemistry is mature. From a different perspective, higher goals must be set for further development of natural product synthesis. “Faster (Citius), Higher (Altius), Stronger (Fortius)” is the motto of the Olympics, but it may also be applied to natural product synthesis. Do we have something in common in terms of pushing the cutting edge? The question of what is required for faster (shorter time), higher (higher efficiency), and stronger (scalable) synthesis of natural products, combined with the social demand for green chemistry, will become increasingly important and is a problem to be addressed by future generations.
Finally, on behalf of all the authors, we would like to express our sincere gratitude to Dr. Hiroshi Tomiyama, President and CEO of Kotobuki Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd., for his help in ensuring this book is open access such that several young people can read it freely.

Tokyo, Japan
Sapporo, Japan
Koganei, Japan
Nagoya, Japan

Masahisa Nakada
Keiji Tanino
Kazuo Nagasawa
Satoshi Yokoshima
Contents

1 A Journey to the Total Synthesis of Brasilicardins .................. 1
Ryusei Itoh, Keiji Tanino, and Fumihiko Yoshimura

2 Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin ........................................... 31
Yasuhiro Meguro, Masaru Enomoto, and Shigefumi Kuwahara

3 A Long Journey Toward Structure Revision and Total
Synthesis of Amphidinol 3 ............................................... 55
Tohru Oishi

4 Total Synthesis of (+)-Siladenoserinol A ............................. 83
Masahito Yoshida, Koya Saito, and Takayuki Doi

5 The Asymmetric Total Synthesis of Discorhabdin B, H, K,
and Aleutianamine .......................................................... 103
Juri Sakata, Masashi Shimomura, and Hidetoshi Tokuyama

6 Convergent Total Synthesis of Hikizimycin: Development
of New Radical-Based and Protective Group Strategies .......... 127
Haruka Fujino and Masayuki Inoue

7 A Chemo-enzymatic Approach for the Rapid Assembly
of Tetrahydroisoquinoline Alkaloids and Their Analogs .......... 145
Ryo Tanifuji and Hiroki Oguri

8 Fluoroarene Strategy in Total Synthesis of Natural Flavonoids .... 163
Ken Ohmori and Keisuke Suzuki

9 Collective Total Synthesis of Secologanin-Related Natural
Products ................................................................. 181
Jukiya Sakamoto and Hayato Ishikawa

10 Oxidative Phenolic Coupling Reaction/Aza-Michael Reaction
Strategy for the Synthesis of Complex Polycyclic Alkaloids ....... 205
Minami Odagi and Kazuo Nagasawa
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Overcoming Difficulties in Total Synthesis of (+)-Cotylenin A</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masahiro Uwamori, Ryunosuke Osada, Ryoji Sugiyama, Kotaro Nagatani, Haruka Tezuka, Yunosuke Hoshino, Atsushi Minami, and Masahisa Nakada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Unified Total Synthesis of Madangamine Alkaloids</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Takaaki Sato</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Total Syntheses of (+)-Aquatolide and Related Humulanolides</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Akihiro Ogura and Ken-ichi Takao</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Complex Oligosaccharides Synthesis—Challenges and Tactics</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daisuke Takahashi and Kazunobu Toshima</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Pursuing Step Economy in Total Synthesis of Complex Marine Macrolide Natural Products</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haruhiko Fuwa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Enantioselective Total Syntheses of (−)-Cochlearol B and (+)-Ganocin A</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tomoya Mashiko, Yuta Shingai, Jun Sakai, Shinya Adachi, Akinobu Matsuzawa, Shogo Kamo, and Kazuyuki Sugita</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Construction of Quinoline N-Oxides and Synthesis of Aurachins A and B: Discovery, Application, and Mechanistic Insight</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satoshi Yokoshima</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Total Synthesis of Avenaol</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chihiro Tsukano, Motohiro Yasui, and Yoshiji Takemoto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Nonbiomimetic Total Synthesis of Polycyclic Alkaloids</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hiroaki Ohno, Norihito Arichi, and Shinsuke Inuki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sequential Site-Selective Functionalization: A Strategy for Total Synthesis of Natural Glycosides</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yoshihiro Ueda and Takeo Kawabata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Synthetic Study of Bio-functional Glycans</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Koichi Fukase, Atsushi Shimoyama, and Yoshiyuki Manabe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Total Synthesis of a Marine Bromotriterpenoid Isodehydrothrysiferol</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keisuke Nishikawa and Yoshiki Morimoto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Utilizing the pH Concept to Address Unfavorable Equilibrium Reactions in the Total Synthesis of Palau’amine</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eisaku Ohashi, Kohei Takeuchi, Keiji Tanino, and Kosuke Namba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1
A Journey to the Total Synthesis of Brasilicardins

Ryusei Itoh, Keiji Tanino, and Fumihiko Yoshimura

Abstract C(sp³)-rich natural products with quaternary carbon stereocenters have recently received increasing attention as formidable synthetic targets and higher lead and drug compounds. Among them, brasilicardins, which are terpenoids–amino acids–saccharide(s) hybrids, share a unique and highly strained anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic terpenoid skeleton containing two adjacent quaternary carbon stereocenters and have attracted attention as promising immunosuppressive drug lead compounds. Herein, we describe our endeavor toward a unified total synthesis of brasilicardins A–D, focusing on overcoming various synthetic challenges. In addition, we discuss several key lessons learned from our journey.

Keywords Brasilicardin · Hybrid natural products · Quaternary stereocenters · Nitriles · Intramolecular conjugate addition · Amino acids · Glycosylation

1.1 Introduction

The chemical synthesis of structurally complex natural products has been a great challenge in organic chemistry over several decades. Therefore, we have engaged in the total synthesis of C(sp³)-rich natural products that bear multiple quaternary carbon stereocenters (i.e., stereogenic carbon centers having four different
carbon substituents) on the carbocyclic framework [1]. These compounds represent formidable synthetic targets [2] and often exhibit superior biological activities than do achiral or “flat” compounds [3].

Brasilicardins A–D (BraA–D, 1–4) (Fig. 1.1), isolated from the pathogenic actinomycete *Nocardia brasiliensis* IFM 0406, is a novel C(sp³)-rich tricyclic diterpenoid that exhibits potent immunosuppressive activity [4–7]. Among the brasiliocardin family members, BraA (1) is a promising drug lead compound because it exhibits strong immunosuppressive activity ($IC_{50} = 0.057 \mu g/mL$), low toxicity, and a mode of action that differs from that of current clinical drugs, such as tacrolimus (FK-506) and cyclosporine A [8]. Thus, BraA (1) has been extensively studied, particularly for developing a new type of immunosuppressive drug without serious side effects. However, further preclinical investigation of this promising drug candidate has been impeded by its low availability from natural sources. Therefore, the efficient chemical synthesis of 1, as well as its analogs, derivatives, and probe molecules, is required to support further biological studies.

As shown in Fig. 1.1, BraA–D (1–4) share a highly strained anti-syn-anti-fused perhydrophenanthrene terpenoid skeleton (i.e., the ABC-ring; hereafter referred to as anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton) containing two angular quaternary methyl groups with the central ring (i.e., the B-ring) in the boat conformer. Different amino acid and sugar units are connected to this skeleton.

Their characteristic biological properties and novel, complex structures render this family attractive targets by synthetic organic chemists. Several research groups have conducted synthetic studies [9–12], including the first total synthesis of BraA (1) and BraC (3) by Anada and Hashimoto in 2017 [13]. A semi-synthetic approach for the large-scale production of BraA (1) was also reported in 2021 [14]. We launched
synthetic studies on brasilicardins in 2008, aiming to develop an efficient route that can be accessed to all BraA–D (1–4) members from the same late-stage intermediate, while enabling the synthesis of various analogs and substructures for biological testing. We accomplished the total syntheses of 1–4 in 2018, including the first total syntheses of BraB (2) and BraD (4) [15, 16]. In this chapter, we describe our efforts toward the total synthesis of brasilicardins, focusing on how to overcome various synthetic challenges. In addition, several key lessons learned from our 10-year synthetic journey are discussed.

1.2 Previous Synthetic Approaches

The anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton is found in several bioactive natural products (Fig. 1.2a) and is an important intermediate (i.e., transient protosteryl cation 8) in the enzymatic cyclization of squalene in steroidal biosynthesis (Fig. 1.2b) [17]. This unusual and synthetically challenging anti-syn-anti configuration of the tricyclic skeleton has attracted the attention of organic chemists over the last few decades. However, in contrast to the detailed and extensive synthetic investigations performed in the field of classic terpenoids and steroids, the synthesis of such skeletons remains unexplored [9, 13, 18–24], with only a few total syntheses of natural products 5–7 having been reported [22–24]. Representative methods for constructing a skeleton are shown in Fig. 1.3. Because synthetic approaches to this skeleton, regarding equilibrium control, are expected to produce a more thermodynamically stable system (i.e., anti-anti-anti-fused system that does not possess the central ring boat conformer), kinetic control is required to access an anti-syn-anti-fused system. Thus, most previous syntheses have adopted the following two-phase strategy (Fig. 1.3a) [9, 13, 18, 19, 22, 24]. In phase I, a more thermodynamically stable 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton is constructed. This skeleton includes a tricycle bearing a double bond in the ring juncture (e.g., 10) or one possessing all chair conformers (e.g., 18; Fig. 1.4). In phase II, a stereogenic center at the ring juncture is constructed under kinetic control. As shown in Fig. 1.3a, in the total synthesis of protostenediols (7) [24], Corey and Virgil first constructed a stable 6,6,6-system (10) bearing a double bond at the ring juncture via Robinson annulation (phase I). The crucial generation of the anti-AB fusion was achieved using the allylic diazene rearrangement of the in situ-generated hydrodiazene intermediate 11 (phase II), which resulted in the anti-syn-anti-fused product 12 as a major isomer along with the syn-AB fused isomer 13. The desired isomer 12 was converted to 7. In addition to the above two-phase strategy, transannular Diels–Alder reaction-based [20] and intermolecular/transannular Michael reaction cascade-based approaches [21] have been reported (not shown here).

Although biomimetic approaches often enable access to complex targets in a concise and stereoselective manner, applying this approach to a thermodynamically less stable anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton is adversely affected by low stereoselectivity (Fig. 1.3b) [23]. For example, in the total synthesis of isoaplysin-20 (6), Nishizawa et al. directly constructed an anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic
**Fig. 1.2** Examples of anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic systems found in nature. **a** Selected examples of previously synthesized terpenoids. **b** Related biosynthetic intermediate.

**Fig. 1.3** Reported synthetic approaches to anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic systems. **a** Two-phase approach by Corey and Virgil. **b** Biomimetic approach by Nishizawa et al.
system using the biomimetic Hg(OTf)2-mediated polyene cyclization of (E,E,E)-geranyl acetate (14), affording the desired product 16 after subsequent bromination. However, in this biomimetic cyclization, the major product was the stereoisomer 15 with anti-anti-anti-ring juncture, which forced the ring system to adopt a stable chair-chair-chair conformation.

The first total syntheses of BraA (1) and BraC (3) by Anada and Hashimoto are summarized in Fig. 1.4 [13]. In their total synthesis, the anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton was constructed using the Diels–Alder reaction/angular methylation sequence developed by Coltart and Danishefsky [9]. Thus, the Diels–Alder reaction of Wieland–Miescher ketone-derived cyanoenone 17 with siloxydiene proceeded smoothly to yield ketonitrile 18 as the sole isomer. The reductive angular methylation of 18 afforded the desired C-methylation product 19 with high chemoselectivities. Incorporating the amino acid moiety was conducted using an anti-selective aldol reaction (20 → 22) using titanium enolate generated from chiral iminoglycinate 21. The stereocontrolled glycosylation of alcohol 23 with disaccharide 24 under Schmidt’s conditions delivered BraA (1) following the removal of the protecting groups. BraC (3) was synthesized using a similar reaction sequence to that of 23 via glycosylation with a monosaccharide.

1.3 Synthetic Challenges and Initial Model Studies

From a synthetic perspective, the total synthesis of structurally complex BraA–D (1–4) members must overcome the following challenges:
(1) The development of a stereoselective methodology for a highly strained carbocyclic skeleton with two quaternary carbon stereocenters at the ring junctures (ABC-ring system; Fig. 1.1) represents the most important issue in this synthesis program.

(2) In relation to (1), the stereoselective construction of two neighboring quaternary carbon stereocenters must involve stereoselective carbon–carbon forming reactions that proceed in a sterically congested environment.

(3) Stereoselective construction of the amino acid component.

(4) Regio- and stereoselective glycosylation of the sugar unit.

(5) Overall protecting group strategy toward an efficient total synthesis.

With these considerations in mind, our synthetic journey to BraA–D (1–4) began with the development of a stereocontrolled route to the ABC-ring system using a model substrate without hydroxy functionalities on the A-ring. We found that nitriles were the important functional groups in total synthesis. Therefore, we designed a nitrile-based synthetic strategy for the ABC-ring system because of their following advantages and features [25, 26]:

(1) Minimal steric demand of the compact cyano group arising from the linear nature of the CN moiety with an A-value of 0.2 kcal mol⁻¹. In comparison, carbonyl and methyl groups have A-values of 0.6–2.0 and 1.74 kcal mol⁻¹, respectively [27].

(2) Compared to carbonyl analogs, α-cyano carbanions exhibit an exceptionally high nucleophilicity. This occurs because minimal delocalization into the nitrile group localizes the charge density on the adjacent carbon atom, which results in the enhancement of carbon nucleophilicity.

(3) Nitriles are useful and versatile synthetic intermediates for further functionalization and bond-forming reactions.

As a model study, we first investigated the construction of a B-ring bearing two adjacent quaternary carbon stereocenters, which was a central challenge in this journey, and established a synthetic route to the ABC-ring core 32 (Fig. 1.5a) [28]. Thus, α,β-unsaturated lactone 27 bearing an alkanenitrile moiety on the side chain was synthesized from racemic α-ionone (26). Upon treatment with sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (NaHMDS)/hexamethylphosphoric triamide (HMPA), 27 underwent intramolecular endocyclic conjugate addition (Michael addition) to afford the desired product 28 as the major isomer, along with its C8 epimer 29 (28:29 = 90:10). Notably, the cyclization proceeds smoothly even at −78 °C despite the low reactivities of the α-cyano carbanions generated from non-activated simple alkanenitriles as Michael donors [25]. The origin of the high stereocontrol is due to the conjugate addition of the α-cyano carbanion derived from 27 that preferentially proceeded via the transition state TS-A rather than the alternative transition state TS-B to avoid the 1,3-repulsion of the two methyl groups in TS-B (Fig. 1.5a). Then, cyclization product 28 was converted to the (E)-α,β-unsaturated ester 30 having a 1,1-dibromo alkene group. When 30 was exposed to lithium dimethylcopper (Me₂CuLi), stereoselective cyclization occurred, thus providing the tricyclic core 32 as a sole isomer.
A Journey to the Total Synthesis of Brasilicardins

This reaction appeared to proceed via the in situ generation of (Z)-vinyl copper intermediate 31 followed by the intramolecular conjugate addition of 31 [29]. Therefore, we developed a synthetic route to the anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton of BraA–D (1–4) using two sequential intramolecular conjugate additions as the key steps. In addition, we recognized the synthetic utility of the α-cyano carbanion for the construction of sterically demanding quaternary carbon stereocenters.

However, critical issues remain with this synthesis. Intermediate 33 showed extremely poor reactivity toward various transformations, because 33 exists in a stable lactol form with a diamond-like structure (Fig. 1.5b). Consequently, the cleavage of the carbon–oxygen bond between the C12 and O1 atoms was difficult. For example, homologation reactions, including the Corey–Fuchs reaction and hydride reduction, do not proceed at elevated temperatures. To overcome this difficulty, the alkynyl C2-unit was attached to 33 for the reductive cleavage of the C12–O1 bond (34 → 35). However, this C2-unit was not incorporated into the second cyclization precursor 30, which indicates that it is synthetically inefficient. Second, to overcome this issue, the conversion of the first cyclization product 28 to the second cyclization precursor 30 required 13 steps with a low overall yield (0.39%). These results led us to develop an alternative synthetic strategy, which is explained in the following section.

Fig. 1.5 Initial model study toward the ABC-ring system of brasilicardins. a Summary of the synthetic routes. b Serious issues in the synthesis
1.4 Strategy and Retrosynthesis

Because the intramolecular conjugate addition of alkanenitrile to $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated lactone serves as a powerful method for constructing a sterically congested quaternary stereocenter (Fig. 1.5, $27 \rightarrow 28 + 29$), we examined its substrate scope to evaluate its synthetic potential, in parallel with the total synthesis program. We found that this addition proceeded smoothly even in the unfused simple unsaturated lactones (e.g., $37$) with certain modifications, where adding a bulky silylating reagent triisopropylsilyl chloride (TIPSCI) for trapping the lactone enolate was required to prevent the unfavored reversible retro-addition (Fig. 1.6, $37 \rightarrow 38 \rightarrow 39$) [30]. By applying this methodology, we designed an intramolecular conjugate addition of an acyclic $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated ester bearing an alkanenitrile on the side chain as the key technology for this synthesis program ($40 \rightarrow 41 \rightarrow 42$). If this addition occurred with facial discrimination of the rotationally unsaturated ester, the compact cyano group would cause stereoselective cyclization, which would result in the formation of the contiguous quaternary and tertiary stereocenters simultaneously after the hydrolysis of the resulting ketene silyl acetal intermediate $41$. In addition, the potentially different reactivities of the sterically demanding cyano group at a quaternary stereocenter and monosubstituted ester group in product $42$ would enable their chemoselective transformations. We envisioned that this cyclization would fit into the construction of the A- and B-rings of brasilicardins.

With this strategy in mind, our retrosynthesis of BraA–D (1–4) is illustrated in Fig. 1.7. Aiming at the detailed structure–activity relationships for deeper understanding the mechanism of action of 1–4 in the future, we utilized strategies in which each ring of the carbocyclic core, amino acid and saccharide units, would be constructed in a stepwise manner. The labile sugar moiety was installed via the regioselective glycosylation of the $N$-Fmoc-protected aglycons $43$ (for BraA and BraC) or $44$ (for BraB and BraD) at the final stage of synthesis. These aglycons could be obtained from ester $45$ via the construction of the amino acid unit. Thus,
we identified that tricyclic core 45 could serve as a central intermediate for unified synthesis. The requisite core 45 was synthesized using an intramolecular conjugate addition-based strategy. Particularly, 45 can be accessed from (E)-α,β-unsaturated ester 46 via intramolecular conjugate addition promoted by Me₂CuLi, as described in Sect. 1.3. Dibromide 46 was synthesized from bicyclic cyano ester 47 via the carbon chain elongation of the substituents. The B-ring was constructed via the intramolecular nitrile conjugate addition of (Z)-α,β-unsaturated ester 48, which was derived from cyano ester 49. Subsequently, the formation of the A-ring was conducted by a similar conjugate addition of (E)-α,β-unsaturated ester 50. Therefore, this compound can be accessed in an enantiomerically pure form from commercially available 2,2-dimethylpropane-1,3-diol (51) via Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation.

### 1.5 Construction of the A-Ring via Intramolecular Conjugate Addition

For the asymmetric total synthesis of BraA–D (1–4), we initially focused on the synthesis and cyclization of chiral (E)-α,β-unsaturated ester 57 (Fig. 1.8). The mono-TBS protection of 2,2-dimethylpropane-1,3-diol (51) followed by the Swern oxidation of the remaining alcohol 52 afforded the corresponding aldehyde, which was subsequently converted to (E)-α,β-unsaturated ester 53 (E/Z > 99:1) through a one-pot Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (HWE) olefination [31]. The Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation of 53 using the monomeric ligand (DHQ)PHN [32] afforded optically active diol 54 with high enantiopurity (95% ee). The protection of the diol in 54 with methoxymethyl (MOM) groups followed by the LiAlH₄ reduction of the ethyl ester and iodination of the resulting alcohol gave primary iodide 55. The alkylation of 55 with carbanion derived from propanenitrile and subsequent removal of the TBS group afforded alcohol 56. This compound was subjected to oxidation using
tetrapropylammonium perruthenate and HWE olefination to afford 57 as a substrate for intramolecular conjugate addition.

With 57 available, the construction of the A-ring was examined (Fig. 1.8). The nitrile intramolecular conjugate addition of 57 occurred under similar conditions to 37 (i.e., TIPSCI/LiHMDS) to afford cyano ester 58 as a mixture of three isomers with acceptable diastereoselectivity (60% yield, dr = 82:11:7). Although the reduction of ester 58 with diisobutylaluminum hydride (DIBAL) gave the desired aldehyde 59 (36% yield), this conversion was accompanied by the formation of the over-reduced alcohol 60 as the major product. To access aldehyde 59 in a chemoselective manner, we planned to use an α,β-unsaturated N-methoxy-O-methylamide (commonly known as Weinreb amides) [33] as an alternative Michael acceptor.

The requisite (E)-α,β-unsaturated Weinreb amide 61 was prepared from 56 using a reaction sequence similar to that for 57 (Fig. 1.9). After screening the reaction conditions, when 61 was exposed to NaHMDS at −78 °C in THF, intramolecular conjugate addition proceeded smoothly with complete stereoselectivity, furnishing the desired product 62 in improved yield (93%). The complete stereocontrol of 62 was assumed to arise because of chelation control, where the nucleophilic keteniminate and electrophilic α,β-unsaturated amide were both oriented in the equatorial positions with an antiparallel dipolar arrangement in the transition state TS-C. Despite the known poor reactivity of α,β-unsaturated amides as Michael acceptors [34], the higher reactivity of the Weinreb amide in this Michael addition was suggested to arise from the
supposed and stable tetrahedral intermediate 63 formed upon the addition, which would prevent unfavorable reversible retro-conjugate addition. Thus, the Weinreb amide played two important roles in this addition: (1) enhancement of the stereoselectivity and (2) suppression of the retro-addition. Therefore, we unexpectedly found the superior reactivity of \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated Weinreb amides as Michael acceptors.

### 1.6 Construction of the B-Ring

Having realized the power of intramolecular nitrile conjugate addition, we moved on to the next phase of the synthesis, which was the construction of the B-ring (Fig. 1.10). Similar to the case of the A-ring, we decided to use an \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated Weinreb amide as the Michael acceptor for B-ring formation. As expected, the chemoselective reduction of the Weinreb amide in the presence of the cyano group in 62 was accomplished with DIBAL in THF, and the subsequent one-carbon elongation of the resulting aldehyde using Wittig’s reagent afforded enol ether 64. Compound 64 was subsequently converted to alkene 66 using a four-step reaction sequence. The regioselective introduction of a cyano group to 66 was achieved using Co-catalyzed hydrocyanation with TsCN \([35]\) to afford secondary nitrile 68. The oxidation of alcohol 68 gave the corresponding aldehyde, which was olefinated under Ando’s HWE reaction conditions \([36,37]\) to afford (Z)-\( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated ester 69 with exclusive Z-selectivity \((Z:E > 99:1)\). Ester 69 was successfully converted into O-methyl Weinreb amide 70 using magnesium amide \([38]\). Notably, the elongation of the C2-unit via stepwise Wittig reactions \((62 \rightarrow 65)\) was necessary, because substitution with various vinyl metal reagents was unsuccessful for 71 and 72.

Because the second intramolecular conjugate addition is another crucial step in the synthesis, we carefully investigated the reaction conditions (Fig. 1.11). Upon treatment with NaHMDS in the presence of TIPSCl and HMPA in THF at \(-78\) °C, unsaturated Weinreb amide 70 smoothly underwent the cyclization to in situ produce O-silyl
Fig. 1.10 Synthetic route of (Z)-α,β-unsaturated Weinreb amide 70

N,O-ketene acetal 73. Upon the addition of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF) to the reaction mixture in one pot, the desired product 74 and its C8,9-diastereomer 75 were quantitatively obtained as an inseparable mixture (74:75 = 45:55). While cyclization proceeded with the sole use of NaHMDS (89% yield, 74:75 = 50:50), the addition of TIPSCI improved the product yields. After exploring the solvents, additives, and reaction temperatures, using Et₂O as the solvent in the absence of HMPA resulted in better stereoselectivity (dr = 80:20). For comparison, the intramolecular conjugate addition of the corresponding (E)-isomer 76 afforded 75 under the same conditions, indicating that the alkene geometry affected the stereoselectivity of this process.

The presumed transition-state model for the intramolecular conjugate addition of 70 is shown in Fig. 1.12. The desired isomer 74 was probably obtained via transition state TS-D in which the nucleophilic keteniminate and electrophilic unsaturated Weinreb amide unit both occupied the axial direction. Conversely, diastereomer 75 was obtained via transition state TS-E in which both occupied the equatorial direction. Because the energy difference between the two transition states was small, a considerable quantity of 75 was formed. We envisioned that if the methoxy group on the Weinreb amide moiety was replaced with a sterically demanding tert-butoxy group [39], the transition state TS-F, which leads to the desired stereoisomer, would
be more favorable than the alternative transition state TS-G to avoid repulsive interaction between the two 1,3-diaxial methyl groups, as well as between the bulky tert-butoxy group of the Weinreb amide and methyl group next to the keteniminate.

As expected, under similar reaction conditions for the cyclization of 70 (i.e., NaHMDS/TIPSCl in Et₂O; TBAF), the intramolecular conjugate addition of O-tert-butyl Weinreb amide 77, which was synthesized from ester 69, resulted in the stereoselective formation of the desired product 79 as a 93:7 inseparable mixture with diastereomer 80 (Fig. 1.13). The two key nitrile conjugate additions (61 → 62 and 77 → 79) were performed reproducibly on a gram scale, thus demonstrating the high synthetic utility of this cyclization.

1.7 Stereoselective Synthesis of the ABC-Ring

Having developed a synthetic route to the AB-ring bearing two quarternary stereocenters based on strategic nitrile conjugate additions, our next objective was the third intramolecular conjugate addition, which resulted in the ABC-ring of brasiliocardins (Fig. 1.14). Thus, Weinreb amide 79 was converted into dibromoalkene 81 by reduction of the Weinreb amide moiety to an aldehyde followed by Corey–Fuchs olefination, after which the inseparable isomer 80 was separable. After reduction of the cyano group in 81, HWE olefination of the resulting aldehyde furnished the (E)-unsaturated ester 82.

The crucial third intramolecular conjugate addition to construct the C-ring was performed under the optimized reaction conditions. Thus, the exposure of 82 to Me₂CuLi in Et₂O at –78 °C generated (Z)-vinylcopper species 83 in situ. After
**Fig. 1.12** Plausible transition-state models for the intramolecular conjugate addition of 70

![Transition-state models](image)

**Fig. 1.13** Successful cyclization of O-tert-butyl Weinreb amide 77

![Cyclization reaction](image)
the reaction mixture was increased to $-40^\circ C$ and stirred, the subsequent conjugate addition of 83 proceeded to provide the tricyclic compound 84 by controlling the stereochemistry at the C14 position in 83% yield. The stereochemistry of 84 was confirmed by X-ray crystallographic analysis. Thus, we established a novel method for the stereoselective formation of an *anti-syn-anti*-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton (ABC-ring) using sequential triple intramolecular conjugate addition as the key step.

1.8 Construction of the Amino Acid Component of Brasilicardins A and C

After obtaining the tricyclic compound, we focused on the construction of an appropriate amino acid component for the tricyclic skeleton. First, we investigated the installation of an *anti*-β-methoxy-α-amino acid moiety for BraA (1) and BraC (3). Two possible plans were considered (Fig. 1.15). Although glycine aldol reactions between aldehydes and glycine derivatives or chiral glycine equivalents are an efficient and direct method for constructing such systems (plan A, $86 + 87 \rightarrow 85$), these methods were challenging to apply to the functionalized intermediates of Brasilicardins from our investigations using model compounds and advanced substrates. We encountered critical issues, including harsh conditions (6 M aq. HCl, 80 °C) for the removal of the camphor-derived chiral auxiliary in the use of 88 [40], and the requirement of excess aldehyde in the organocatalyzed asymmetric aldol reaction with 89 [41] that was not suitable for the late-stage installation using the precious aldehyde.
Therefore, we elected to build this amino acid moiety using indirect methods via the substitution of azide ions with chiral trans-epoxides 91 and 92 or hydroxy ester 93 (plan B) and first examined the route via trans-epoxy ester 91.

The attempted construction of the amino acid moiety using chiral epoxy ester 100 is shown in Fig. 1.16. Tricyclic aldehyde 94, derived from ABC-ring compound 84, was subjected to the aldol reaction using Bu₂BOTf/i-Pr₂NEt with Evans-type chiral oxazolidinone 95, affording syn-α-chloro-β-hydroxy adduct 96 as a sole isomer [42]. However, this reaction exhibited poor reproducibility and often afforded a considerable quantity of cyclic ether 97 as a side product. Exposure of 96 to NaOMe enabled epoxide formation and esterification to produce trans-epoxy ester 100, which involved the in-situ epimerization of syn-chlorohydrin 98 followed by ring closure of the resulting anti-chlorohydrin 99. When treating 100 with hydrogen azide, regio- and stereoselective substitution of azide ions occurred at the α-position of the ester, affording anti-α-azido-β-hydroxy ester 101. We examined another approach for synthesizing 100 via the asymmetric epoxidation of an (E)-α,β-unsaturated N-acylpyrrole [43] as well; however, the diastereomeric selectivity of this reaction varied between 10:1 and 1:1. Thus, owing to their irreproducibility, we abandoned these approaches and explored the route via the substitution of azide ions with epoxy alcohol 92 (plan B, Fig. 1.15).

The requisite chiral 2,3-trans-epoxy alcohol 102 was prepared from 84 in a four-step sequence, including Katsuki–Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation (Fig. 1.17). The C2-azide substitution reaction of 102 was accomplished using NaN₃ and B(OMe)₃, which were developed in our laboratory [44] to produce the C2-substitution product 104 with high regio- and stereoselectivity as an inseparable mixture with the C3-product 105 (dr > 91:9). The reaction is suggested to proceed via the endo-mode epoxide opening of an intramolecular boron chelate, such as 103. The subsequent treatment of the crude mixture with aqueous NaIO₄ affected the oxidative cleavage of 105 to the aldheyde (not shown), furnishing 104 in its pure form following purification using silica gel column chromatography. After a three-step conversion of 104 to mono-alcohol 106, including O-methylation with Meerwein reagent (Me₃OBF₄), oxidation of the primary alcohol in 106 to carboxylic acid, followed by esterification with HCl in MeOH afforded methyl ester 107 accompanied by the deprotection of
both MOM groups. Finally, the conversion of the azide in 107 to an amino group with SnCl₂ to afford compound 108, which is the methyl ester of the BraA (1) and BraC (3) aglycon. ¹H- and ¹³C-NMR spectra and optical rotations of 108 were identical to those derived from natural sources [4].

In this study, we also checked whether deprotection of the methyl ester in the functionalized substrate proceeded, because late-stage chemoselective deprotection would be required to achieve total synthesis. Therefore, we examined the deprotection of α-azido methyl ester 109 to carboxylic acid 110 (Fig. 1.17). However, this deprotection was problematic despite testing several methods. In addition, an inefficient 12-step sequence was necessary for the conversion from 84 to 108, primarily because of the oxidation-state adjustment of the amino acid moiety, which led us to investigate an alternative synthetic route via hydroxy ester 93 (cf., Fig. 1.15, plan B).

A successful approach using a hydroxy ester by applying Rama Rao’s procedure [45] is shown in Fig. 1.18. We chose tert-butyl ester as the protecting agent for the carboxylic acid instead of the methyl ester. The half-reduction of ester 84 using DIBAL and subsequent HWE reaction of the resulting aldehyde furnished (E)-unsaturated tert-butyl ester 111. The Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation of 111 using the (DHQ) PHN ligand [32] gave diol 112 as a sole diastereomer (dr > 99:1). After the regioselective mono-nosylation of the C17 alcohol in 112 with 4-nitrobenzenesulfonyl chloride (p-NsCl), treatment of the resulting nosylate 113 with NaN₃ afforded β-azide 114 with an inversion of the configuration. The O-methylation of the hydroxy group in 114 using Me₃OBF₄ followed by reduction of the azide and protection of the resulting free amine with a 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc) group in one pot, afforded the protected aglycon of BraA and BraC (i.e., 115). Lastly,
the removal of both MOM groups with HCl in methanol produced diol 116. The stereochirality of the amino acid moiety was unambiguously confirmed using X-ray crystallography after conversion to the p-bromobenzamide derivative 117. Although it might require more steps than the ideal glycine aldol-based approach, this route was robust and provided reproducibly sufficient material (> 100 mg in one batch) to accomplish the total synthesis.

1.9 Construction of the Amino Acid Component of Brasilicardins B and D

In contrast, the amino acid components of BraB (2) and BraD (4) were constructed via the Yamada’s asymmetric alkylation [46] as the key step (Fig. 1.19). Thus, ethyl ester 84 was transformed into iodide 118 via reduction of ester with LiAlH₄ and iodination of the resulting alcohol. Alkylation of the chiral Schiff base 119, prepared from α-pinene and glycine, with 118 proceeded uneventfully when KHMDS was used as a base, affording imino tert-butylester 120 as a single diastereomer. Contrary to the literature [46], the use of KHMDS as a base yielded superior results to those of LDA. Notably, the asymmetric alkylation of 118 using sultam-derived glycine
Fig. 1.18 Construction of the amino acid component of brasilicardins A and C

imine 123 [47] and organocatalytic asymmetric alkylation with 89 [48] afforded inferior results, including a low product yield (11%) in the former method and low diastereoselectivity (dr = 50:50) in the latter method. Compound 120 was converted into diol 122 in a sequential three-step process: (1) hydrolytic removal of the chiral auxiliary, (2) protection of the resulting free amine with a Fmoc group, and (3) removal of both MOM groups. Stereochemistry of the amino acid moiety was verified using a modified version of Mosher’s method [49]. The protected aglycons 116 and 122 were used in the following glycosylation studies.

1.10 Stereoselective Glycosylation of Disaccharides and Completion of the Total Synthesis of Brasilicardins A and B

The remaining task for completion of the total synthesis was the challenging regioslective glycosylation of aglycons 116 and 122. First, we explored the glycosylation of 116 with BraA (1) as the priority target for this project. Our glycosylation study commenced with the Schmidt trichloroacetimidate glycosylation protocol [50] because of its well-documented success in the synthesis of natural products (Fig. 1.20a). Because the most reliable method for controlling stereoselectivity in 1,2-trans glycosylation is based on neighboring group participation by a 2-O-acyl
functionality, we chose the acetyl group as the protecting and stereodirecting group at the C2'-alcohol of the glycosyl donor (cf., 24).

The treatment of aglycon 116 with peracetyl imidate 24 (2 equiv), which was prepared in nine steps from L-rhamnose [10] with BF3·OEt2 under the standard Schmidt procedure, afforded the desired C2-α-monoglycoside 124; however, significant quantities of the side products, such as C3-glycoside 125, C2-acetate 126, and C3-acetate 127, were also obtained. These side products are formed as follows (Fig. 1.20b). Upon activation of the glycosyl donor 24, a more stable transient acetoxonium ion 128 was formed. Alcohol 116 attacks the anomeric carbon atom, affording glycosides 124 and 125 (path A). In contrast, when 116 attacks the dioxolenium carbon atom of 128, C2- or C3-acetates (126 or 127) are formed via the isomerization of the resulting 1,2-orthoester intermediate 129 (path B) [51]. Thus, the acetyl group found in 126 and 127 was suggested to originate from the 2'-O-acetyl group in glycosyl donor 24. Such side reactions have also been observed in the total synthesis reported by Anada and Hashimoto [13], and acetylated trichloroacetimidate donors tend to promote orthoester formation, particularly in functionalized substrates or slow glycosylation reactions [52].

To suppress orthoester formation and achieve regio- and stereoselective glycosylation of diol 116, we investigated the coupling of 116 with other glycosyl donors, including glycosyl (N-phenyl)trifluoroacetimidate [53], glycosyl sulfide [54], and glycosyl sulfoxide [55], and their activation conditions. Among the various glycosylations that were examined, the less reactive glycosyl fluoride donor 130 afforded the best results (Fig. 1.21). The treatment of 116 and 130 (2 equiv) with Cp2HfCl2/AgOTf [56] afforded the desired C2-α-glycoside 124 (ca. 50%) without the formation of C3-glycoside 125 and acetates 126 and 127. Because the longer reaction time led to concurrent undesired glycosylation at the C3-alcohol, this reaction was stopped before the full consumption of 116, with the recovery of glucosyl acceptor.
Fig. 1.20 Glycosylation study toward brasilicardin A using the Schmidt protocol. a Attempts at Schmidt glycosylation. b Detectable side products and plausible reaction mechanism

116 (43%). The removal of tert-butyl group in 124 proceeded smoothly with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) without the formation of side products. Finally, subsequent treatment with 1,2-ethylenediamine induced simultaneous deprotection of the five O-acetyl and N-Fmoc groups to furnish BraA (1) (6.8% overall yield in 39 linear steps from 51).

 Unexpectedly, confirmation of the identity of the synthetic material was problematic because its $^1$H-NMR spectrum was strongly dependent on the pH and concentration of the solvent. However, its identification was confirmed by $^1$H-NMR measurements of a 1:1 mixture of synthetic and natural BraA (1) after both materials were purified using reverse-phase HPLC. Additionally, the fact that the spectral data ($^{13}$C-NMR, IR, and HRMS) and optical rotation value of the synthesized compound fully
matched those of the isolated natural sample supported the successful synthesis of BraA (1). BraB (2) was synthesized from 122 using the same reaction sequence as that used for 1 (6.5% overall yield in 37 linear steps).
1.11 Stereoselective Glycosylation of Monosaccharides and Completion of the Total Synthesis of Brasilicardins C and D

Encouraged by the successful total synthesis of BraA (1) and BraB (2), we next pursued the total synthesis of BraC (3) and BraD (4) bearing a monosaccharide unit. Contrary to our expectations, this was more difficult and we encountered several issues (Fig. 1.22). Although glycosyl fluoride 130 derived from a disaccharide was effective for the regioselective glycosylation with diol 116 for BraA (1) and BraB (2) (cf. Figure 1.21), a similar glycosylation of peracetylated glycosyl fluoride donor 131 derived from L-rhamnose produced the desired C2-α-glycoside 132 in a low yield. In this reaction, bis-glycosylated product 133 and C3-α-glycoside 134 were obtained as the major products. Although other types of glycosyl donors were examined to improve the C2-selectivity, we found that controlling the regioselectivity of the sterically less-hindered monosaccharide glycosyl donor was challenging. Therefore, we decided to temporarily protect the C3-alcohol in diol 116 as an acetate.

The required C3-protected glycosyl acceptor 136 was synthesized from diol 116 via regioselective silylation with TBSOTf/2,6-lutidine, acetylation of the resulting alcohol 135, and deprotection of the TBS group (Fig. 1.23). We found that the Au(I)-catalyzed glycosylation [57] between glycosyl o-cyclopropylethynylbenzoate donor 137 and acceptor 136 was the most effective protocol for the installation of L-rhamnose in a stereoselective manner, thereby affording α-glycoside 138 in good yield as a single isomer. Other glycosyl donors did not react with 136, probably due to the steric hindrance of the protected alcohol in 136. The final task to achieve

Fig. 1.22 Attempted glycosylation of monosaccharide fluoride toward brasilicardin C
Fig. 1.23  Au-catalyzed glycosylation toward brasilicardin C and the protecting group problem

the total synthesis was the deprotection of the protecting groups. We performed the conversion of 138 to BraC (3) using the same procedure (TFA; ethylenediamine) as for BraA (1). However, because the sterically demanding neopentyl C3-acetate remained intact under the abovementioned conditions, the resulting C3-acetate 139 was heated with NaOMe/MeOH at 60 °C, which induced the epimerization of the amino acid moiety to give an epimeric mixture of BraC (i.e., 140, dr = 55:45).

Among the several protecting groups tested for the C3-alcohol, the easily removable methoxyacetyl group [58] afforded the best results, resulting in the total synthesis of BraC (3) (Fig. 1.24). Thus, the requisite protected alcohol 142 was synthesized from 135 via a two-step reaction sequence, including the protection of the C3-alcohol with MeOCH 2COCl, followed by the removal of the C2-TBS group. The Au-catalyzed glycosylation of 142 with glycosyl donor 137 proceeded smoothly to afford α-glycoside 143 as a single isomer. Finally, glycosylation product 143 was successfully converted to BraC (3) via the removal of tert-butyl group with TFA and subsequent simultaneous deprotection of the remaining three O-acetyl, O-methoxyacetyl, and N-Fmoc groups using an aqueous lithium hydroxide (12% overall yield in 42 linear steps from 51).

BraD (4) was synthesized from 122 using the same sequence as that used for BraC (3) (14% overall yield in 40 linear steps) (Fig. 1.25).
Fig. 1.24  Total synthesis of brasilicardin C

Fig. 1.25  Total synthesis of brasilicardin D
1.12 Conclusions

The chemical syntheses of C(sp³)-rich natural products with intriguing three-dimensional structures have inspired a number of developments in novel synthetic strategies and organic transformations. In this chapter, we describe our 10-year synthetic efforts toward brasiliocardins, which are unique C(sp³)-rich natural products with a terpenoid–amino acid–saccharide(s) hybrid structure, resulting in the complete synthesis of BraA–D. Notable key features of our total synthesis are: (1) the development of a novel nitrile cyclization, i.e., the stereoselective intramolecular conjugate addition of an α,β-unsaturated Weinreb amide bearing an alkanenitrile unit as a nucleophilic site, which enables carbocycle formation and the construction of contiguous quaternary–tertiary carbon stereocenters simultaneously; (2) a conjugate addition-based synthetic strategy for the stereoselective formation of the highly strained anti-syn-anti-fused 6,6,6-tricyclic skeleton (ABC-ring system); (3) the stereoselective construction of the amino acid moiety to the tricyclic core; and (4) regio- and stereoselective formation of the 1,2-trans-glycosidic linkage to the functionalized aglycon using the appropriate glycosyl donors. In addition, we learned the synthetic utility of nitriles in complex natural product synthesis and the previously unknown but interesting high reactivity of α,β-unsaturated Weinreb amide as a Michael acceptor. We believe that the chemistry described here offers a solution to challenging synthetic problems. In addition, it opens a viable chemical avenue for brasiliocardin family natural products and their synthetic derivatives to aid the development of new immunosuppressive agents and to gain a fundamental and better understanding of the therapeutic potential of these compounds.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 2
Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin

Yasuhiro Meguro, Masaru Enomoto, and Shigefumi Kuwahara

Abstract Amycolamicin (also called kibdelomycin) produced by two species of soil actinomycetes is a potent antibiotic against a broad range of drug-resistant bacteria with a novel binding mode to bacterial type II DNA topoisomerases and with no cross-resistance to existing antibacterial agents. The unique hybrid molecular architecture of amycolamicin attracted interest of many synthetic organic chemists and three total syntheses have been reported so far. In this chapter, we describe our total synthesis of amycolamicin in detail, which features a nucleophilic addition of a vinyllithium reagent to an $\alpha$-siloxy-$\beta$-alkoxy ketone to afford a tertiary alcohol as a single diastereomer, a highly diastereoselective intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction of a tetraenal with an unprotected hydroxy group to construct a $\text{trans}$-decalin unit incorporated in amycolamicin, an exclusively stereoconvergent N-acylation of an anomeric N-glycoside mixture bearing a cis-fused bicyclic carbonate system, and the exploitation of the cyclic carbonate as a vicinal diol protecting group and also as a masked $\beta$-hydroxy carbamate structure. Additionally, two other total syntheses accomplished by the Li and Baran groups as well as syntheses of partial structures of amycolamicin hitherto reported are also outlined in brief.

Keywords Amycolamicin · Kibdelomycin · Intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction · Glycosylation · $N$-Glycoside

2.1 Introduction

Continuous emergence of drug-resistant bacteria is increasingly posing a serious threat to human health. According to a report by the UK government’s O’Neill Commission, the number of deaths attributable to antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is expected to rise from current 700,000 (low estimate) to 10 million by 2050 unless appropriate countermeasures to AMR are taken [1]. Iterative chemical modifications
of existing antibacterial agents have been continued to temporarily restore their activities against the bacteria that have acquired resistance, but such efforts to produce new-generation antibacterial agents have regrettably resulted in the appearance of more resistant and intractable strains of bacteria. To overcome such situations, natural product chemists have been seeking new antibiotic scaffolds with broad-spectrum antibacterial activity, novel modes of action, and low or no cross-resistance to existing antibacterial drugs [2, 3]. Amycolamicin described in this chapter is expected to become a promising bridgehead to tackle the antibiotic crisis.

Amycolamicin is an antibiotic isolated in 2009 from the culture of the soil actinomycete *Amycolatopsis* sp. MK575-fF5 by Igarashi and coworkers at BIKAKEN (Japan) [4]. Just after the discovery of amycolamicin, Singh et al. at Merck (USA) identified an antibacterial substance produced by the soil bacterium *Kibdelosporangium* sp. MA7385 and gave it the name of kibdelomycin [5]. Kibdelomycin had a surprisingly similar chemical structure and biological properties as amycolamicin, but from the distinct difference in their NMR spectra, the two natural products were considered to be different and probably diastereomeric to each other for a period of time. After some twists and turns in their structural determination [4–8], the structure of amycolamicin was finally assigned as 1 (Fig. 2.1) by the BIKAKEN group in 2012 through extensive spectroscopy combined with X-ray crystallographic analysis of its degradation product and some other synthetic and analytical methods [9] and that of kibdelomycin was unambiguously determined by the Merck group in 2014 to be the same as amycolamicin (1) on the basis of the cocrystal structures of kibdelomycin with its target proteins [10]. However, the question of why the NMR spectra of amycolamicin and kibdelomycin were different remained to be solved; this mystery was later settled by Li and coworkers’ synthetic study as described in Sect. 2.2.1.

This secondary metabolite produced by the actinomycetes exhibits potent antibacterial activity against an array of Gram-positive drug-resistant bacterial including methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) as well as against some Gram-negative bacteria such as drug-resistant strains of *Haemophilus influenzae* [9]. It is also reported that amycolamicin is a strong antibiotic against two important human pathogens, *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Clostridium difficile* [8, 11]. Amycolamicin selectively inhibits bacterial DNA synthesis through binding to bacterial type II DNA topoisomerases (DNA gyrase GyrB subunit and topoisomerase IV ParE subunit) in a unique multipoint U-shaped

![Structure of amycolamicin (also known as kibdelomycin)](image)
binding mode without affecting human topoisomerase IIα and with no apparent toxicity in mice [9–11]. Additionally, it does not show cross-resistance to various known DNA gyrase inhibitors such as novobiocin, coumermycin A1, and ciprofloxacin [11].

These pharmacological properties of amycolamicin (1) as a promising lead for an innovatively novel class of antibacterial agents and its unprecedented hybrid molecular architecture composed of two novel sugars [amykitanose (A) and amycolose (D)], a tetrac acid (B), a trans-decalin (C), and a dichloropyrrole carboxylic acid (E) prompted synthetic studies on this natural product, which recently culminated in the first total synthesis of 1 by Li and coworkers in 2021 [12]. Shortly after the first synthesis, two total syntheses of 1 by us [13] and by the Baran group [14] were successively disclosed in 2022. In this chapter, we first outline Li’s and Baran’s total synthesis of 1 in brief (Sect. 2.2), and then describe our total synthesis in detail (Sect. 2.3). Additionally, syntheses of the A, A/B, C, and D/E units of 1 implemented by other groups as well as by us are also presented shortly (Sect. 2.4).

2.2 Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin by the Li and Baran Groups

2.2.1 First Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin by the Li Group

The total synthesis of amycolamicin (1) by Li and coworkers is outlined in Scheme 2.1, where the carbon numbering follows that in ref 9. They first prepared N-acyl amycolose derivative 5 (D/E unit), trans-decalinoyl cyanide 6 (C unit), and N-ammykitanosyl tetracic acid 7 (A/B unit) from 2, 3, and L-rhamnose 4, respectively, via key reactions written in Scheme 2.1. β-Selective glycosylation of 6 with 5 under modified Yu’s gold(I)-catalyzed N-glycosylation conditions [15] followed by C-acylation of 7 with the resulting glycoside afforded 1a (triethyl amine salt of amycolamicin), whose NMR spectra were identical to those reported by the Merck group for kibdelomycin except for redundant triethylamine signals, along with a small amount of amycolamicin. Acidic treatment of 1a gave 1, the NMR spectra of which matched those reported by the BIKAKEN group for amycolamicin. Based on these results, Li et al. revealed that kibdelomycin was a salt form of amycolamicin, which was the reason why they displayed distinct NMR spectra [12].

2.2.2 Total Synthesis by the Baran Group

In the total synthesis of 1 by Baran and coworkers summarized in Scheme 2.2, three key intermediates 11 (D/E unit), 12 (C unit), and 13 (A unit with L-valine residue) were prepared from furan derivative 8, Weinreb amide 9, and L-fucose 10, respectively. The trans-decalin system of 12 was constructed by an exclusively
diastereoselective intramolecular Diels–Alder (IMDA) reaction. Glycosylation of 12 with 11 followed by one-carbon elongation of the resulting glycoside with \(S, S'\)-dimethyl dithiocarbonate provided a \(\beta\)-keto thioester. The thioester intermediate was condensed with the \(N\)-glycoside 13 and the resulting \(\beta\)-keto amide was transformed into 1b (1\textsuperscript{\text{*}}-\text{epi}-amycolamicin) via the Dieckmann cyclization to install the tetramic acid ring (B unit). Treatment of 1b with aqueous formic acid gave a 4:3 equilibrium mixture of 1b and 1, the HPLC separation of which provided 1b and 1 in isolated yields of 46\% and 32\%, respectively. They revealed that 1b had nearly identical antibacterial activity as amycolamicin (1) and that some truncated analogs of 1 exhibited little to no activity [14].
2.3 Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin by Our Group

2.3.1 Retrosynthetic Analysis of Amycolamicin

Our synthetic plan for amycolamicin (1) is depicted retrosynthetically in Scheme 2.3. Amycolamicin (1) would be obtained from methyl N-(β-ketoacyl)-N-glycosyl-L-valinate 14 via the Dieckmann condensation to construct the tetramic acid ring (B unit) and regioselective ring opening of the cyclic carbonate moiety with ammonia (or its appropriately protected derivative) leading eventually to the 3ʺ-acetoxy-4ʺ-carbamoyloxy portion of 1. The cyclic carbonate in 14 was expected to play not only as a protecting group of the 3ʺ, 4ʺ-diol system but also as a masked β-hydroxy carbamate structure. The N-glycosyl amide 14 was then dissected into thioester 15 and methyl N-glycosyl-L-valinate 16 with the intention of combining them by Ley’s N-acylation protocol. We envisaged that 16 might possibly be converted, regardless of its anomic nature, into the desired α-anomer 14 in a stereoconvergent manner based on the following considerations: (1) the α-anomer 14 with the nitrogen-containing substituent at C1ʺ on the convex side of the cis-fused bicyclic ring system would be
more stable than its β-anomer bearing the substituent on the concave side; and (2) the anomers of 14 would be inherently interconvertible under acidic conditions due to their N, O-acetalic nature. The N-glycoside 16 would readily be obtainable from L-fucose 10 via stereochemical inversion at the C2"-position. The thioester 15, on the other hand, would be prepared by β-selective glycosylation of trans-decalinol 18 with pyranose 17 followed by the attachment of an S-tert-butyl thioacetate unit. To create the tetrasubstituted C3ʹ-stereogenic center in 17, we planned the diastereoselective addition of β-alkoxy vinyllithium reagent 19 to α,β-bisalkoxy ketone 20, which in turn would be derived through oxidation of the double bond of 21, whose enantiomer had previously been reported in the literature. For the preparation of 18, it would be appropriate to utilize the IMDA reaction of tetraenal 22, which was traced back to 2,3-dibromopropene 23 with the use of the Heck coupling and CBS reduction in mind.

Scheme 2.3 Retrosynthetic analysis of amycolamicin (1)
2.3.2 Preparation of Cyclic Carbonate-Protected N-Glycosyl-L-Valine Methyl Ester 16

Initial Approach to 16

Methyl glycoside 25 (Scheme 2.4) was chosen as the key intermediate for the preparation of 16 since the glycoside had previously been synthesized from L-fucose 10 in 6 steps by Igarashi et al. in their structure determination studies on amycolamicin [9]. According to the literature, the pyranose 10 was converted into the corresponding methyl glycoside, which was then protected as its acetonide to give α-glycoside 24 in 59% yield after chromatographic purification (route A). The chemical yield of this two-step sequence was improved to 71% by using Amberlite IR-120(H) instead of HCl as the acid catalyst as well as by modifying the conditions for acetonide formation (route B) [16]. The stereochemical inversion at C2ʺ was performed by oxidation of 24 with PDC followed by reduction of the resulting ketone with LiAlH4 to give 2ʺ-epi-24 in 44% yield over two steps (route A). Utilization of DIBAL instead of LiAlH4 increased the two-step yield to 68% (route B). Methyl etherification of 2ʺ-epi-24 and subsequent acidic hydrolysis of the acetonide moiety delivered the known glycoside 25. Treatment of the diol 25 with 1,1ʹ-carbonyldiimidazole (CDI) and imidazole afforded cyclic carbonate 26 and hydrolysis of its glycosidic bond with TiBr4 in CH2Cl2/EtOAc [17] provided carbonate-protected bicyclic pyranose 27 as an anomeric mixture (α/β = 16:1). The conditions using TiBr4 for the hydrolysis of 26 was adopted based on our previous study on the hydrolysis of another methyl glycoside (see Sect. 2.4.4). Finally, N-glycosylation of methyl L-valinate with 27 under acidic conditions provided 16 as a 1:1.1 α/β anomeric mixture. The overall yield of 16 from L-fucose 10 via route B was 26% in 9 steps [18].

Improved Approach to 16

The above-described first approach to the N-glycoside 16 from L-fucose 10 required a considerably lengthy nine-step sequence due to the use of two different protecting groups (acetonide and cyclic carbonate) for the C3ʺ/C4ʺ vicinal diol moiety, which inevitably necessitated a roundabout deprotection/reprotection manipulation, causing a modest overall yield of 26%. In our second approach to 16 shown in Scheme 2.5, only the cyclic carbonate group was utilized for the protection of the diol unit and, in addition, two one-pot processes were incorporated to improve the efficiency of the synthetic pathway.

The new route commenced with direct β-selective glycosidation of the unprotected pyranose 10 with phenol in water using DMC (2-chloro-1,3-dimethylimidazolinium chloride) as a selective activator of the anomeric hydroxy group [19]. After considerable examination of reaction conditions, in which the amounts of reagents (DMC, 6 or 10 equiv; Et3N, 26 or 46 equiv), solvent (water or water/MeCN), and reaction temperature (0 or −10 °C) were varied, the best outcome was achieved when the
reaction was conducted using 10 equiv of DMC and 46 equiv of Et$_3$N in water at 
$-10 \, ^\circ C$, giving rise to phenyl $\beta$-glycoside $28$ in 81% isolated yield (crude $\beta/\alpha$ ratio 
$= 12:1$). Use of 6 equiv of DMC resulted in the recovery of considerable amounts 
of $22$ and the reactions in the mixed solvent (water/MeCM = 5:1 or 1:1) or at the 
higher temperature ($0 \, ^\circ C$) decreased the anomeric selectivity. Treatment of $28$ with 
CDI and imidazole in CH$_2$Cl$_2$ gave a 11:1 mixture of desired $3''$,4''-carbonate $29$ 
and its regioisomer $29'$, the former of which was isolated chromatographically in 
88% yield. In this cyclic carbonate formation, the use of triphosgene and Et$_3$N (or
pyridine) in CH₂Cl₂ at 0 °C drastically reduced the 29/29′ ratio to 2.5:1–1.5:1 and implementation of the reaction in MeCN (triphosgene, Et₃N, 0 °C) reversed the ratio to 1:1.5. Stereochemical inversion at C2” of 29 was performed in one pot by oxidation of 29 with IBX followed by reduction of the resulting ketone intermediate with NaBH₄, delivering 30 in 82% yield (dr > 99:1). The oxidation step in this one-pot operation was problematic; exposure of 29 to various conditions including those using AZADOL/NaClO, AZADOL/PhI(OAc)₂, Dess–Martin periodinane (DMP), SO₃·Py, DMSO/Ac₂O, PDC, sodium 2-iodobenzenesulfonate/Oxone [20], and so on resulted in the recovery of 29 or the formation of complex mixtures. The alcohol 30 was then O-methylated with MeI/Ag₂O in MeCN to give 31, which was subjected to a one-pot process comprising acid hydrolysis of the glycosidic linkage and in-situ N-glycosylation with methyl L-valinate to furnish 16. This new route from 10 to 16 with no use of acetonide protection brought an improved overall yield of 38% in only five operational steps [18].

2.3.3 Preparation of TBS-Protected N-Acyl Amycolose 17

Initial Approach to 17

The key step for the preparation of 17 is the nucleophilic addition of the vinyl-lithium reagent generated from β-alkoxy vinyl bromide 38 to α-siloxy-β-alkoxy ketone 20 to provide tertiary alcohol 39 in a diastereoselective manner (Scheme 2.6, 20 → 39). We first prepared 21 starting from PMB-protected methyl (R)-lactate 32 by slight modification of the reaction conditions previously reported for obtaining ent-21 from ent-32 [21]. The lactate 32 was one-carbon homologated with (dimethoxyphosphoryl)methyl lithium to give 33, which was then subjected to the Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (HWE) reaction with acetaldehyde under Masamune–Roush conditions to provide alkoxy enone 34. Chelation-controlled reduction of 34 with Zn(BH₄)₂ afforded the allylic alcohol 21 (77% isolated yield, crude dr = 11:1), the enantiomeric excess of which was determined to be > 99:1 by ¹H NMR analysis of its (R)- and (S)-MTPA esters. Contrary to our expectation based on literature precedents [22, 23], the Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation of 21 using (−)-diisopropyl tartrate (DIPT) was sluggish and delivered a mixture of desired epoxy alcohol 35 (erythro isomer) and its threo isomer in a modest diastereoselectivity of 4.8:1 probably due to an undesirable effect of the PMB-oxy substituent at the C5’ chiral center. The epoxy alcohol 35 was protected as TBS ether 36, which was then subjected to epoxide ring opening with sodium azide for its conversion into azido alcohol 37 using the following additives and solvents (at 100 °C, pressure bottle): (1) NH₄Cl/EtOH–H₂O (3:1, 18 h), (2) NH₄Cl/MeO(CH₂)₂OH–H₂O (8:1, 17 h), (3) NH₄Cl/DMSO–H₂O (8:1, 17 h), (4) PPTS/MeO(CH₂)₂OH–H₂O (3:1, 10 d), (5) PPTS/1,4-dioxane–H₂O (3:1, 10 d), and (6) LiClO₄/MeCN (9 d) [24]. All of these conditions, however, gave mixtures of 37 and its regioisomer 37’ in low selectivities of 1.1:1–2.5:1, providing 37 in unsatisfactory yields of up to 37% after
chromatographic purification. Use of Me$_3$N·HCl as the additive, however, considerably improved the 37/37’ ratio to 4.9:1, affording 37 in an acceptable isolated yield of 57%, although the reaction required 7 days at 100 °C to go to completion. The alcohol 37 was oxidized with DMP to give ketone 20, to which the lithium anion prepared by treatment of PMB-oxy-substituted Z-vinyl bromide 38 [25, 26] with t-butyllithium was added. The resulting addition product 39 was obtained as a single diastereomer in a good yield of 84%. This outcome dovetailed nicely with the results obtained in a systematic study by Evans et al., in which anti-substituted α-(TBS-oxy)-β-(PMB-oxy)aldehyde A was converted into B with $dr \geq 99:1$ upon exposure to some lithium enolates [27]. The azido alcohol 39 was transformed into 42 by the Staudinger reduction ($n$-Bu$_3$P, MeOH) followed by condensation of the resulting amine 40 with known pyrrole carboxylic acid 41 [28] in 96% yield over two steps. The Z-geometry of 42 was assigned based on the NOE between the two olefinic protons as well as from their coupling constant (7.2 Hz) close to those for Z-enol ethers [29]. It is worth mentioning that the reduction step did not proceed to completion even after 3 days when Ph$_3$P was used instead of $n$-Bu$_3$P. The bis-PMB ether 42 was treated with DDQ for the purpose of obtaining 17 by oxidative removal of the two PMB groups in a simultaneous manner, but the reaction stopped after only the C5’-PMB group was deprotected, affording diol 42’. Use of CAN was also fruitless, providing a complex mixture. Fortunately, exposure of 42 to TFA in CH$_2$Cl$_2$ gave a successful outcome, furnishing 17 in 83% yield via 43; the cyclic intermediate 43 could be isolated by quenching the reaction before completion. The overall yield of 17 from 32 was 14% through 11 steps [26]. Additionally, 17 was converted into N-acyl amycolose 17’ (α/β = ca 1:1) by treatment with TBAF and also into its methyl α- and β-glycosides (44α and 44β, respectively) by exposure to TMSCl/MeOH [30]. All of these three compounds (17’, 44α, and 44β) are known as cytotoxic degradation products of amycolamicin [7], and the structure of 44β was previously established unambiguously by X-ray crystallographic analysis [9].

Improved Approach to 17

Our initial approach to 17 described above left problems in two processes: (1) modest diastereoselectivity ($dr = 4.8:1$) and yield (56%) in the Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation (21 → 35); and (2) insufficient regioselectivity (4.9:1) and yield (57%) as well as the very long reaction time (7 days at 100 °C) in the epoxide ring opening with NaN$_3$ (36 → 37). To circumvent these issues, we modified the first approach as shown in Scheme 2.7. Protection of the allylic alcohol 21 followed by the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation of the resulting TBS ether 45 using AD-mix-β provided diol 46 (crude $dr = 98.5:1$) in an excellent yield of 94%. Regioselective mono-tosylation of 46 was first attempted by its treatment with TsCl (3 equiv) and Et$_3$N (5 equiv) in CH$_2$Cl$_2$ at 0 °C to room temperature. The reaction was, however, very sluggish and required 19 h to go to completion, during which the product 46’ gradually cyclized into tetrahydrofuran derivative 47, yielding a mixture of 46’ and 47 in a ratio of ca. 1:1. Upon use of pyridine instead of Et$_3$N, the reaction was much slower and
not completed even after 48 h of stirring at room temperature, delivering a mixture of 46, 46', and 47. Exposure of 46 to TsCl/\(\text{Bu}_{2}\text{SnO/} \text{Et}_{3} \text{Ni} \text{CH}_{2} \text{Cl}_{2} \text{rt, 12 h}) \text{[31]} \) or to TsCl/Ag_{2}O/KI in CH_{2}Cl_{2} (4 d) \text{[32]} was also unsuccessful, resulting in almost exclusive formation of 47 or in the recovery of 46, respectively. Furthermore, silica gel column chromatographic purification also induced the cyclization of 46' to 47. Fortunately, the troubles were overcome by conducting the mono-tosylation by Tanabe’s method using Me_{3}N·HCl as the additive \text{[33]} \) and by performing the next Dess–Martin oxidation of the resulting intermediate 46' as a one-pot operation. The reaction under Tanabe’s conditions was completed within 40 min at 0 °C (TLC monitoring) and subsequent direct addition of DMP to the reaction mixture furnished \(\alpha\)-tosyloxy ketone 48 in a good yield of 81%. The tosylate 48 was found to be well-suited for the S\text{N2} substitution with NaN\text{3}, providing the \(\alpha\)-azido ketone 20 nearly quantitatively, which was transformed into 17 by the same four-step sequence.
as depicted in Scheme 2.6. These modifications significantly improved the overall yield of 17 from 32 from 14 to 32% without changing the number of steps [13].

### 2.3.4 Preparation of Trans-Decalin Aldehyde 18

The preparation of the trans-decalin aldehyde 18 utilizing the IMDA reaction as the key step is shown in Scheme 2.8. Alkylation of the dianion of dimethyl (2-oxopropyl)phosphonate with allylic bromide 23 gave 49, which was then subjected to the HWE olefination with E-crotonaldehyde under Masamune–Roush conditions to provide 50 as a 19:1 E/Z mixture in 51% yield over two steps; the moderate yield (51%) is ascribable to the formation of unidentified byproducts in the alkylation step, which proceeded in ca. 57% yield. The Heck reaction of the vinyl bromide 50 with acrolein diethyl acetal 51 leading to 52 needed an examination of reaction conditions [34, 35]. When the reaction was conducted using Pd(OAc)$_2$ and K$_2$CO$_3$ in the presence of $n$-Bu$_4$NBr and ($o$-tolyl)$_3$P (DMF, 80 °C, 3 h), a mixture of 52 and undesired cyclopentenone derivative 53 (see the bottom of Scheme 2.8) was obtained in a ratio of ca. 1:2.2 (yield not determined), the latter of which would probably be formed through an intramolecular Heck reaction. Exposure of 50 and 51 to Pd(OAc)$_2$/K$_2$CO$_3$/n-Bu$_4$NOAc in the absence of the phosphine ligand (DMF, rt, 24 h) suppressed the formation of 53 completely, but the yield of 52 decreased to 18%. After some other experimentations, we found that the reaction performed without using any phase transfer catalyst and phosphine ligand (DMF, 40 °C, 72 h) successfully furnished 52 in a much better yield of 76% with no formation of 53. As a matter of fact, we first attempted the Heck reaction of the phosphonate 49 with the protected acrolein 51 to obtain 54, which would probably be convertible into 52 by the HWE reaction with E-crotonaldehyde. The Heck reaction between 49 and 51, however, gave a complex mixture, which prompted us to reverse the order of the two processes as described above. The CBS reduction of the ketone 52 proceeded uneventfully to give rise to 55 [36], the absolute configuration (R) and the enantiomeric excess (96%) of which were determined by the modified Mosher analysis. Since the ionic IMDA reaction of 55 in the presence of various Lewis acids (LiClO$_4$, 

![Scheme 2.7](image-url)
Total Synthesis of Amycolamicin

MgBr₂, I₂, InCl₃, Sc(OTf)₃, BF₃-OEt₂, Et₂AlCl, etc.) to hopefully construct acetal-protected trans-decalin 56 resulted only in partial deprotection of the acetal group or in the formation of complex mixtures [37, 38], we decided to conduct the cycloaddition of the corresponding aldehyde 57, which was prepared by acidic hydrolysis of 55. To our delight, the IMDA reaction of 57 in CH₂Cl₂ (–20 to 0 °C) in the presence of Et₂AlCl (2 equiv) furnished the desired cycloadduct 18 in 71% isolated yield over two steps with excellent diastereoselectivity [18/(18’ + 18” + 18”‘) = 96.4:3.6 (see Fig. 2.2)]. The highly preferential formation of the endo-equatorial product 18 means that this Et₂AlCl-promoted IMDA reaction proceeded nearly exclusively via the endo-equatorial transition state depicted in Fig. 2.2. We are considering that one of the two equiv of Et₂AlCl used should coordinate with the carbonyl oxygen and the remaining one equiv would react with the unprotected hydroxy group to form an O–Al bond [39]. The formation of the O–Al bond [probably RO–AlClEt or RO(H)–AlClEt₂] is presumed to have directed the reaction to go through the endo-equatorial transition state [13]. The importance of the state of protection of the hydroxy group in the stereochemical course of this cycloaddition is apparent from the results of the following comparative experiments: (1) exposure of the MOM-protected congener of 57 (MOM-57) to Et₂AlCl (1 equiv) gave a 1:2.8 mixture of MOM-18 (endo-equatorial product) and MOM-18’ (endo-axial product), modestly favoring the endo-axial product; and (2) treatment of the TBS-protected derivative of 57 (TBS-57) with Et₂AlCl (1 equiv) delivered endo-axial product TBS-18’ highly preferentially (TBS-18/TBS-18’ = 1:18). These results obtained for the MOM- and TBS-protected substrates were consistent with those of extensive studies on dialkylaluminum chloride-promoted IMDA reactions of protected trienals 58 by Marshall et al. They revealed that the IMDA reactions of the MOM- or alkyl-protected trienals 58 gave the corresponding endo-equatorial and endo-axial cycloadducts almost non-selectively, while those of their TBS-protected congeners afforded endo-axial products in a highly selective manner [40, 41]. In addition, it should be noted that this cycloaddition could be realized only by using Et₂AlCl among Lewis acids tested; the utilization of other acids (EtAlCl₂, LiClO₄, Me₃Al, or BF₃-OEt₂) resulted in the formation of complex mixtures or in the recovery of the starting material 57. The directing effect of a protecting group-free hydroxy group on the stereochemical course of a dialkylaluminum chloride-promoted IMDA reaction was also observed in the preparation of 12 by Baran et al. (see Scheme 2.2) [14].

2.3.5 Completion of the Total Synthesis of 1 Through Coupling of the Three Segments 16, 17, and 18.

Toward the completion of the total synthesis of amycolamicin (1), we first addressed the preparation of the thioester 15 via the β-selective glycosylation of the trans-decalinol 18 with the N-acyl amylolose 17 (Scheme 2.9). With the intention of
Scheme 2.8 Preparation of trans-decalin aldehyde 18

Fig. 2.2 Stereochemical course of the Et$_2$AlCl-promoted IMDA reaction of tetraenal 57
performing the glycosylation by the Schmidt protocol [42], the amycolose derivative 17 was exposed to trichloroacetonitrile and DBU in CH2Cl2 for preparing the corresponding acetimidate derivative. To our surprise, however, the product obtained in 86% yield was not the acetimidate, but instead bicyclic N,O-acetal 59 formed by nucleophilic attack of the amide nitrogen at C7’ to the activated anomeric carbon. To probe its possibility as a glycosyl donor, 59 and 18 were allowed to react in CH2Cl2 in the presence of MS 4 Å and various acid catalysts (BF3·OEt2, TiCl4, Cu(OTf)2, TBSOTf, PPTS, TsOH, and TfOH). Although the use of TiCl4 brought about the formation of a complex mixture, the desired glycosylation product 60 was obtained in varying yields by using the other catalysts, among which TfOH (1 equiv) gave the best result, delivering predominantly the β-anomer 60 in 67% isolated yield along with a small amount of its α-anomer (60/1’α-60 = 4.3:1). The stereochemistry of 60 was assigned based on the NOE between the 1’-H and 5’-H as well as the large J1’H,2’H and J4’H,5’H values. Recently, we achieved one-pot conversion of 17 into 60 in 64% yield via 59, which could be successfully prepared in situ by intramolecular dehydration of 17 mediated by DMC [19]. The aldehyde 60 was two-carbon elongated by its aldol reaction with S-tert-butyl thioacetate at –78 °C to afford aldol 61. In this reaction, raising the reaction temperature from –78 °C to room temperature caused partial dehydration of the aldol adduct, giving rise to a considerable amount of an α,β-unsaturated thioester. The Dess–Martin oxidation of 61 gave the β-keto thioester 15 (1.8:1 mixture of keto and enol forms), which set the stage for the pivotal step in our total synthesis of amycolamicin (1), i.e., the stereoconvergent N-acylation of the N-glycoside 16 (α-anomer/β-anomer = 1:1.1) with the thioester 15.

Our expectation that the N-acylation of the N-glycoside 16 incorporating a cis-fused bicyclic carbonate system might possibly take place in a stereoconvergent

Scheme 2.9 Preparation of thioester 15
manner is based on the following observations made by Sawa et al. during their structural determination of 1 (Fig. 2.3) [9]: (1) acidic methanolysis of amycolaminic (1, α-anomer) selectively cleaved the glycosidic bond between the amycolose and trans-decalin moieties to provide N-glycoside C as a 1:1 α/β anomeric mixture in 77% yield; and (2) acetonidation of the 3ʺ,4ʺ-vicinal diol portion of D (a degradation product of 1, α-anomer/β-anomer = 1.3:1) with 2,2-dimethoxypropane under acidic conditions gave acetonide E with the α/β ratio significantly increased to 11:1. We considered that the first observation by Sawa et al. indicated the presence of equilibrium between the two anomers of C under the acidic conditions and the second one would suggest that the cis-fused bicyclic nature of the sugar moiety in E might have driven the equilibrium toward the sterically less hindered α-anomer with the bulky substituent at C1ʺ on the convex side of the bicyclic ring system.

Beyond our expectation, the N-acylation of the anomeric mixture 16 (α/β = 1:1.1) having a cis-fused bicyclic carbonate system with the thioester 15 under modified Ley’s conditions (AgTFA, 2,6-di-tert-butylpyridine, MS 5 Å, THF, 0 °C, 45 min) [43] proceeded in an exclusively stereoconvergent manner to provide the α-anomer 14 (J1ʺH,2ʺH = 9.0 Hz) as a single anomer in 72% yield presumably via anomerization of the β-anomer of 14 to the thermodynamically more stable α-anomer 14 (Scheme 2.10). As to the stereoconvergency of this N-acylation reaction, however, there might be another possibility that the anomerization of the N-glycoside 16 preceded the N-acylation reaction, since we observed in NMR monitoring experiments that a 1:12 α/β mixture of 16 (obtained during its SiO2 chromatographic purification), on exposure to AgTFA in THF-d8 at 0 °C, changed quickly to a 1:1 α/β mixture of 16 after 20 min and reached an equilibrium (α/β = ca. 1.8:1) within 45 min regardless of the presence or absence of 2,6-di-tert-butylpyridine (see the bottom of Scheme 2.10). The α-anomer of 16 might be N-acylated quickly because its nitrogen substituent is situated on the convex side of the bicyclic ring system, while the β-anomer with the substituent on the concave side would resist the N-acylation due to
severe steric hindrance and therefore might be N-acylated after swift anomerization to its α-anomer, possibly providing the α-anomer 14 preferentially. Regardless of which pathway is more plausible, the stereoconvergent N-acylation strategy described here could be a suitable option for the diastereoselective synthesis of analogous N-acyl N-glycosides.

The Dieckmann condensation of the β-keto amide 14 provided 62 with a tetramic acid ring installed, the carbonate ring of which was opened with 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine 63 in one pot to give desired β-hydroxy carbamate 64 in 61% isolated yield from 14 along with 21% yield of its regioisomer possessing a

\[
\text{Scheme 2.10} \quad \text{Completion of the total synthesis of amycolamicin (1)}
\]
carbamate group at C3”, favoring the desired isomer 64 [44]. The stereochemistry of 64 was established based on the ROE correlations and coupling constant shown in Scheme 2.10. The N-arylmethyl group in 64 was removed by DDQ oxidation to afford \( \beta \)-hydroxy carbamate 65, which was acetylated in the presence of \( \text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3 \) to afford \( \beta \)-acetoxy carbamate 66 in 56% yield over two steps. The addition of \( \text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3 \) to the reaction mixture was essential for the successful outcome; without the salt, acetylation at the tetramic acid moiety also took place concomitantly. We also attempted direct ammonolysis of 62 into 65 by using ammonia instead of the amine 63, but the ammonolysis followed by acetylation of the resulting product gave 66’ (undesired regioisomer) predominantly (66/66’ = 1:10). Finally, removal of the TBS protecting group in 66 with TASF successfully finished the total synthesis of amycolamicin (1), the overall yield of which was 4.3% via a longest linear sequence of 19 steps from the PMB-protected methyl (R)-lactate 32.

2.4 Synthesis of Partial Structures of Amycolamicin

2.4.1 Synthesis of \( N \)-Acyl Amycolose 17’ by the Schobert Group

Schobert et al. reported the synthesis of \( N \)-acyl amycolose 17’, which was employed as an intermediate in Li’s total synthesis of 1, in 12 steps from benzyl \( \alpha \)-d-mannoside 67 (Scheme 2.11) [45]. The mannoside 67 was converted into 68 by a three-step sequence involving the Klemer–Rodemeyer fragmentation [46] to obtain a 2’-deoxy-3’-oxo intermediate. The vinyl group in 68 was utilized as a foothold to install the nitrogen functionality via epoxidation, and 6’-deoxyxygenation was achieved by the Dang protocol [47].
2.4.2 Synthesis of Trans-Decalinoyl Cyanide 6 by the Altmann and Schobert Groups

Altmann et al. synthesized Li’s trans-decalin intermediate 6 in 19 steps from chiral lactone 69 via the Me₂AlCl-promoted IMDA reaction of 70a using Davies’ SuperQuat chiral auxiliary to prepare trans-decalin derivative 71a [Scheme 2.12(a)] [48, 49]. Schobert et al., on the other hand, performed an analogous IMDA reaction without using Lewis acids (70b → 71b) [Scheme 2.12(b)]. Their synthesis of 6 was performed in 17 steps from ethyl 4-iodobutanoate 72 [45].

2.4.3 Synthesis of N-amykitanosyl Tetramic Acid 7 by Schobert Et Al. And by Us

The Schobert group also reported a formal synthesis of Li’s N-amykitanosyl tetramic acid intermediate 7 in 16 steps from L-rhamnose 4 [Scheme 2.13a] [45]. The 6-deoxypyranose 4 was converted into glycosyl α-hexylnlbenzoate 73 via stereocchemical inversion at C4" by an oxidation/reduction sequence. The benzoate 73 had been previously transformed into 7 by Li et al. via α-selective N-glycosylation of tetramic acid derivative 74 with 73 using Yu’s gold-catalyzed N-glycosylation protocol [12, 15]. We also performed a nine-step synthesis of 7 from L-fucose 10 [Scheme 2.13(b)]. Benzyl N-glycosyl-L-valinate 75 (α/β = 1.1:1) prepared in line with the procedures depicted in Scheme 2.5 was exposed to the ßestmann’s ylide [50] to afford α-N-glycosyl tetramic acid derivative 76 as a single anomer. In this case also, the reaction took place in a stereoconvergent manner thanks probably to the cis-bicyclic nature of 75 (cf. Scheme 2.10, 15 + 16 → 14).
2.4.4 Synthesis of Amykitanose 79 by Us

Since amykitanose 79 itself located at the rightmost end of 1 had not been synthesized, we implemented its synthesis for future biological studies [16] (Scheme 2.14). Cyclic orthoester 77 prepared from L-fucose 10 in five steps was subjected to hydrolysis with TsOH-H₂O in CHCl₃ to preferentially afford 78 as a thermodynamically more stable product along with a small amount of its regioisomer (3ʺ-hydroxy-4ʺ-acetoxy derivative) (78/regioisomer = 11.5:1). In this hydrolysis, the use of CHCl₃ as the solvent was essential to achieve the high regioselectivity; the reactions in THF, MeCN, AcOH/H₂O, EtOAc, and toluene instead of CHCl₃ resulted in low selectivity of 1.6:1, 1.6:1, 1.9:1, 3.6:1, and 3.9:1, respectively. The methyl glycoside 78 was converted into 79 by carbamoylation with trichloroacetyl isocyanate followed by hydrolysis using TiBr₄ [17]. The use of aqueous TsOH or TFA for the hydrolysis mainly brought about the removal of the acetyl group.

Scheme 2.14 Synthesis of amykitanose 79 by Kuwahara et al.
2.5 Conclusion

The total synthesis of amycolamicin 1 was achieved by combining three segments: cyclic carbonate-protected methyl N-glycosyl-L-valinate 16, TBS-protected N-acyl amycolose 17, and hydroxy trans-decalin aldehyde 18. The key steps for the preparation of 16, 17, and 18 were stereocemic inversion of a L-fucose derivative by a one-pot oxidation/reduction sequence (29 → 30), exclusively diastereoselective addition of a vinylithium reagent to an α-siloxy-β-alkoxy ketone (20 → 39), and Et2AlCl-promoted highly diastereoselective IMDA reaction of an unprotected hydroxy tetraenal (57 → 18), respectively. The assembly of the three segments was conducted as follows: (1) β-selective glycosylation of a trans-decalinol with an N,O-acetalic glycosyl donor derived from 17 (18 + 59 → 60); (2) two-carbon elongation of the resulting glycoside to form a β-keto thioester (60 → 15); and (3) exclusively stereoconvergent N-acylation of 16 with the thioester 15 to afford an N-acyl α-N-glycoside as a single anomer (15 + 16 → 14). The total synthesis was completed by four additional steps involving the Dieckmann condensation to construct a tetramic acid ring (14 → 62) and regioselective ring opening of a cyclic carbonate with an (arylmethyl)amine (62 → 64) leading eventually to the β-acetoxy carbamate moiety of amycolamicin. The overall yield of our total synthesis of 1 was 4.3% via a longest linear sequence of 19 steps from a known PMB-protected methyl (R)-lactate (32).

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 3
A Long Journey Toward Structure Revision and Total Synthesis of Amphidinol 3

Tohru Oishi

Abstract Amphidinol 3 (AM3) is a super-carbon-chain compound isolated from the dinoflagellate Amphidinium klebsii. Although the absolute configuration of AM3 was determined in 1999 by instrumental analysis in combination with degradation of the natural product, it was a daunting task because of its limited availability from natural sources and presence of around 70% of chiral centers on the acyclic carbon chain. During the course of our synthetic studies of AM3, the originally proposed structure was revised, which was confirmed by the first total synthesis of AM3 in 2020, more than 20 years since its first discovery. A highly convergent strategy via the fragment assembly using Suzuki–Miyaura coupling and Julia–Kocienski olefination led to the successful total synthesis; however, it was not an easy task to assemble large segments by the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling. A number of experiments optimizing the reaction conditions including model systems revealed that the concentration of the aqueous cesium carbonate is crucial for the key step Suzuki–Miyaura coupling to proceed effectively.

Keywords Structure revision · Convergent synthesis · Cross-metathesis · Regioselective dihydroxylation · Suzuki–Miyaura coupling · Julia–Kocienski olefination

3.1 Introduction

Amphidinol 3 (AM3, 1) is a super-carbon-chain compound produced by the dinoflagellate Amphidinium klebsii (Fig. 3.1) [1]. AM3 is known to induce not only antifungal activity but also hemolysis by increasing membrane permeability. Determination of the stereochemistry was carried out in 1999 [2] by extensive NMR analysis including the JBCA method [3], the modified Mosher method [4], and degradation of the...
natural product. However, it was a difficult challenge to determine the stereochemistry because of the scarcity from natural sources as well as around 70% of chiral centers located on the flexible carbon chain. HPLC on a chiral column with UV detection was utilized to assign the absolute configuration at C2 as $S$ by comparison of the retention times for the degradation product from 10 μg of AM3 with those for authentic samples. It is possible that the observed peak for the degradation product was that for an artifact. Both the relationship between C38–C39 and C50–C51 were assigned to be threo by the JBCA method, however, these are also ambiguous since some of the observed $J$ values were categorized in the “medium” range, and not the “large” or “small” range. In our synthetic studies on AM3, the stereochemistry at C2, C32–C36, C38, and C51 was corrected. Based on the revised structure, the first total synthesis of AM3 was accomplished in 2020. It took over two decades to confirm the correct stereochemistry after structure determination of AM3 in 1999. In this chapter, the long 15-year journey toward the structure revision and total synthesis of AM3 is described along with the difficulties encountered and the solutions to those problems [5–13].

3.2 Revision of the Absolute Configuration at C2: Synthesis of the C1–C14 Section

Due to the ambiguity of the stereochemistry at C2, we planned to synthesize the four possible diastereomers $2a$-$2d$ corresponding to the C1–C14 section and compare their $^1H$ and $^{13}C$ NMR data with those for AM3 (Fig. 3.2) [5]. For the efficient construction of the $E$-olefinic moieties, we envisaged extensive utilization of the cross-metathesis reaction. In this strategy, iodoolefin 3 [14] was utilized as the key intermediate in which the iodide moiety served as a masked terminal olefin in the first cross-metathesis with terminal olefin 4 to give 5 (Scheme 3.1). After reductive removal of the iodide moiety, the resulting terminal olefin 6 was subjected to the second cross-metathesis reaction with terminal olefin 7. Removal of the silyl groups afforded $2a$. In an analogous manner, $2b$-$2d$ were prepared by changing the substrates
to ent-3 and ent-7. However, the $^1$H NMR spectra of 2a-2d were completely identical, because the stereogenic centers are located 5 carbons apart. Differences in $^{13}$C NMR chemical shifts between AM3 and those of 2a-2d were also within the range of error, but those of 2b showed the smallest deviation from the natural product.

Therefore, for confirmation of the stereochemistry at C2, AM3 (ca. 50 μg) was subjected to degradation by cross-metathesis with ethylene to give 8, which was compared with authentic samples 9 and ent-9 by GC–MS analysis using a chiral column, revealing that the stereochemistry at C2 should be revised to be R (Scheme 3.2) [5].

![Fig. 3.2](image-url)  
**Fig. 3.2** Synthesis of four possible diastereomers at C2, C6, and C10 corresponding to the C1–C14 section

![Scheme 3.1](image-url)  
**Scheme 3.1** Synthesis of the C1–C14 section via cross-metathesis. Reprinted with permission from Ref. [5]. Copyright © 2008, American Chemical Society

![Scheme 3.2](image-url)  
**Scheme 3.2** Revision of the absolute configuration at C2 via degradation of natural product by cross-metathesis and comparison with authentic samples
3.3 Revision of the Absolute Configuration at C51: Synthesis of the C43–C67 Section

For confirmation of the ambiguous absolute configuration at C51 by comparison of NMR data for AM3, we planned to synthesize the model compound 10a corresponding to the C43–C67 section and its epimer at C51 (10b) via Julia–Kocienski olefination (Fig. 3.3) [8].

The B-ring 15 was synthesized from the building block 3 via chemoselective cross-metathesis to give 11, where the iodoolefin moiety was utilized as a protected terminal olefin (Scheme 3.3) [6]. Conversion of the diene 11 to 12 was achieved via chemo- and diastereoselective Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation (AD) of the diene 11 in which the iodoolefin moiety remained intact and was utilized for the next Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling with pinacol boronate 13. The resulting diene 14 was converted to the B-ring 15 via Katsuki–Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation (AE) and acid catalyzed 6-endo cyclization. In an analogous sequence, its enantiomer ent-15 was synthesized from ent-3 [11].

Sulfone 20 was synthesized based on a linchpin strategy via Negishi coupling of iodoolefin 16 and zinc reagent prepared from 17, followed by Migita–Kosugi–Stille coupling with iodoolefin 19 (Scheme 3.4) [10].

Coupling partners, aldehydes 21a and 21b corresponding to the diastereomer at C51, were prepared from the common intermediate 15 [8]. The aldehyde 21a was prepared via Sharpless AD of the olefin, whereas 21b was prepared via Katsuki–Sharpless AE, Payne and Pummerer rearrangements (cf. Scheme 3.9). The target

![Fig. 3.3 Synthesis of the two possible diastereomers at C51 corresponding to the C43–C67 section via Julia–Kocienski olefination](image)

![Scheme 3.3 Synthesis of the B-ring. Reprinted with permission from Ref. [6]. Copyright © 2009, American Chemical Society](image)
3.4 Synthetic Studies of AM3 Based on Structural Revisions in 2008 and 2013

3.4.1 Retrosynthetic Analysis

Based on the revised structure at C2 (2008) and C51 (2013), the total synthesis was envisaged as shown in the retroynthetic analysis in Scheme 3.5. The new target, AM3 (22) is to be synthesized via Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 23 and 24 and Julia–Kocienski olefination with 20. Intriguing molecular structure and biological activity attract much attention of synthetic community, and a lot of synthetic studies have been reported [15] by the Cossy [16–22], Roush [23–25], Rychnovsky [26–28], Paquette [29–31], Crimmins [32], Evans [33], and Yadav [34] groups.
3.4.2 Synthesis of the C1–C29 Section

Synthesis of the C1–C20 section is shown in Scheme 3.6 [9]. Coupling of lithium acetylide prepared from alkyne and bis-Weinreb amide and subsequent Noyori asymmetric hydrogen transfer reaction of the resulting ketone afforded. Reduction of the alkyne with Pd/C(en) to avoid hydrogenolysis of the PMB group and protection of the secondary alcohol gave Weinreb amide, which was coupled with the alkenyllithium prepared from iodoolefin to furnish. CBS reduction of the ketone and protection as a TBS ether afforded terminal olefin. The olefin was subjected to cross-metathesis with eq of ent-7 to minimize homocoupling to afford in 70% yield based on ent-7 with recovery of (75%). Protection of the secondary alcohol, removal of the PMB group, and Parikh–Doering oxidation of the resulting primary alcohol gave aldehyde (Dess–Martin oxidation gave 34% of with unidentified byproducts).

The C21–C29 section was synthesized from (R)-glycidol (Scheme 3.7) [9]. Cross-metathesis of derived from and acrolein with Hoveyda–Grubbs 2nd catalyst (that with Grubbs 2nd catalyst resulted in 19% yield) gave α,β unsaturated aldehyde, which was subjected to intramolecular oxa-Michael reaction via hemiacetal formation to furnish alcohol after reduction of the aldehyde as a single diastereomer. Protecting group manipulation and oxidation of the hydroxy group at C24 afforded aldehyde, which was subjected to Brown asymmetric crotylation with to furnish. Removal of the acetal in in the presence of 1,3-propanediol
and subsequent protection as a TBS ether yielded 42. Hydroboration of the terminal olefin gave primary alcohol 43, which was converted to sulfone 44 via Mitsunobu reaction and oxidation with MCPBA of the resulting sulfide.

The C1–C29 section was synthesized as shown in Scheme 3.8 [9]. Julia–Kocienski olefination of aldehyde 33 and sulfone 44 with KHMDS in THF resulted in the formation of olefin 45 (E:Z = 20:1). One of the crucial steps, regio- and diastereoselective dihydroxylation, was successfully achieved by Sharpless AD to furnish 46 (dr = 13:1). The dihydroxylation occurred at the less hindered C20–C21 olefin compared to the C4–C5 and C8–C9 olefins located at neighboring TBSO groups. Oxidative removal of the NAP (2-naphthylmethyl) group with DDQ giving the primary alcohol followed by dehydration using the Nishizawa–Grieco protocol afforded terminal olefin 23.

### 3.4.3 Synthesis of the C30–C52 Section

The precursors of the C30–C52 section 24, the A- and B-rings, were prepared from the common intermediate 47 as shown in Scheme 3.9 [11]. Synthesis of the A-ring commenced with Sharpless AD of 47 and subsequent protection of the hydroxy groups to give 48. Protecting group manipulation giving primary alcohol 49 followed by oxidation and Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction with phosphonate 50 under
Scheme 3.7  Synthesis of the C21–C29 section. Reprinted with permission from Ref. [9]. Copyright © 2015, American Chemical Society

Scheme 3.8  Synthesis of the C1–C29 section of AM3. Reprinted with permission from Ref. [9]. Copyright © 2015, American Chemical Society
Masamune–Roush conditions resulted in the formation of enone 51. After hydrogenation of the olefin, the resulting methyl ketone was converted to enol triflate 53 by treatment with KHMDS followed by Comins reagent 52. The enol triflate 53 was converted to iodide 54 via Stille reaction to give a stannane followed by treatment with iodine.

Synthesis of the B-ring commenced with Katsuki–Sharpless AE of the allylic alcohol derived from 47. Payne rearrangement of epoxy alcohol 55 gave the sulfide with inversion of stereochemistry at C51, and protection of the resulting secondary alcohol gave 56. Pummerer rearrangement by treatment with MCPBA followed by trifluoroacetic anhydride and base resulted in the formation of an aldehyde, which was reduced with NaBH₄ to furnish 57. After protection of the hydroxy group as a PMB ether, selective removal of the Bn group in the presence of the PMB group was achieved by treatment with Raney nickel under hydrogen, and oxidation of the resulting hydroxy group afforded aldehyde 58.

With the A- and B-rings in hand, coupling of these fragments was examined (Table 3.1). Tin-lithium exchange reaction of stannane 59 with n-BuLi (1 eq) in THF at −78 °C and subsequent addition of aldehyde 58 in THF at −78 °C afforded 60a in 33% yield accompanied by its diastereomer at C43 (60b) in 11% yield (entry 1).
When iodoolefin 54 was treated with t-BuLi (2 eq) in Et₂O at − 78 °C to generate the corresponding alkenyllithium followed by addition of aldehyde 58 in Et₂O at − 78 °C, the yields of 60a (37%) and 60b (19%) increased slightly (entry 2). Although total yields of the products were improved by raising the temperature of the solution of 58 in Et₂O to − 40 °C (entry 3), the ratio of the desired compound decreased, yielding 32% each of 60a and 60b. By changing the solvent of the aldehyde 58 to THF and lowering the temperature to − 78 °C, the desired 60a was obtained in 40% yield with 13% of 60b.

Attempts to improve the yield of the coupling product are shown in Scheme 3.10. Nozaki–Hiyama–Kishi coupling of aldehyde 58 and iodoolefin 54 or enol triflate 53 was unsuccessful via C42–C43 bond formation with recovery of 58 and terminal olefin derived form 54 or 53. Alternatively, cross-coupling reactions via C41–C42 bond formation by Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of iodoolefin 62 and alkylborane 64, Negishi coupling of iodoolefin 62 and alkylzinc reagent 65, or S_N2 reaction of cuprate 63 and iodide 66, were examined, but in vain with recovery of the starting materials or formation of complex mixtures.

Coupling product 60a was converted to trisubstituted iodoolefin 24 corresponding to the C30–C52 section (Scheme 3.11). Protection of the hydroxy group at C43, removal of the TES group with TBAF/AcOH, and oxidation of the primary hydroxy group gave aldehyde 67. Alkynylation with Ohira–Bestmann reagent 68 gave a terminal alkyne, which was methylated via generation of a lithium acetylide with n-BuLi, followed by addition of MeI to furnish 69. Hydrozirconation of 69 with Schwartz reagent followed by treatment with iodine afforded the trisubstituted iodoolefin 24 corresponding to the C30–C52 section.

### 3.4.4 Suzuki–Miyaura Coupling

With the essential intermediates in hand, we investigated the key Suzuki–Miyaura coupling step. First, a model experiment using terminal olefin 70 and iodoolefin 72 was examined (Scheme 3.12). Hydroboration of 70 with 9-BBN to generate alkylborane 71, followed by successive addition of aq Cs₂CO₃, iodoolefin 72, and palladium catalyst, afforded 73 in 75% yield. Encouraged by these results, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of the C21–C29 section (23) and the C30–C52 section (24) was examined (Scheme 3.13). However, under identical conditions as those for the successful model study, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling did not proceed and no desired coupling product 74 was obtained. To investigate the scope and limitation of the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling, iodoolefin 72 corresponding to the C30–C40 section was utilized instead of 24 (Scheme 3.14). However, no coupling product was obtained under various conditions, e.g., AsPh₃ added as an accelerating ligand, or TIOEt as a base as referenced in synthetic studies of palytoxin reported by Kishi [36]. As byproducts, olefin 75 or allene 76 was obtained. Alternatively, the C21–C29 section (77) was prepared by changing the protecting groups at C20, C21, C25, and C7 from...
Table 3.1 Coupling of the A- and B-rings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>X</th>
<th>Lithiation</th>
<th>Addition of Aldehyde</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SnMe₃</td>
<td>BuLi, THF, −78 °C</td>
<td>THF, −78 °C</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>t-BuLi, Et₂O, −78 °C</td>
<td>Et₂O, −78 °C</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>t-BuLi, Et₂O, −78 °C</td>
<td>Et₂O, −40 °C</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>t-BuLi, Et₂O, −78 °C</td>
<td>THF, −78 °C</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TBS groups to cyclopentylidene acetals. However, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 77 did not proceed with iodoolefin 72.

Finally, the C21–C29 section 70 was utilized (Scheme 3.15). In this combination, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 70 and 24 proceeded to afford 78 but in moderate yield (51%). Since the coupling product 78 corresponding to the C21–C52 section was obtained, we proceeded to the synthesis of AM3. The TES group was selectively removed with TBAF/AcOH. Oxidation giving aldehyde, followed by Julia–Kocienski olefination with sulfone 79 afforded olefin 80 ($E:Z = 11:1$). The next step,
Scheme 3.12  Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of the C21–C29 and C30–C40 sections. Reprinted with permission from Ref. [10]. Copyright © 2017, Chemical Society of Japan

Scheme 3.13  Unsuccessful Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of the C1–C29 and C30–C52 sections

regio- and diastereoselective dihydroxylation, was anticipated to be more difficult than that for 45 (Scheme 3.8) due to the presence of the additional trisubstituted and exo-olefins. As anticipated, Sharpless AD of 80 resulted in a low yield of diol 81 (28%), but the byproducts could not be identified.
3.5 Revision of the Absolute Configurations at C32–C36 and C38

In 2010, the similar compound to AM3, karlotoxin 2 (KmTx2, 82) was identified (Fig. 3.4) [37, 38]. However, the absolute configuration of the A- and B-rings was antipodal to that of AM3. Although the stereochemistry at C39 of AM3 was elucidated by the modified Mosher method, it was difficult to determine the relationship between C38 and C39 by the JBCA method. Therefore, there is a possibility that the relationship between C38 and C39 is not threo but erythro, namely the stereochemistry at C32–C36 and C38 of AM3 are antipodal (83).

The absolute configurations around the bis-THP moiety of AM3 were determined by the modified Mosher method through degradation of the natural product via glycol cleavage with sodium metaperiodate and subsequent reduction, and esterification of the polyol as MTPA esters [2]. Therefore, we envisaged that it is possible to elucidate the stereochemistry around the bis-THP moiety by comparing the degradation product, (S)-MTPA ester 84 derived from AM3, with those from authentic samples, (S)-MTPA esters 86 and 88 derived from 85 and 87, respectively (Scheme 3.16).

A precursor of 85, the C31–C52 section 60a corresponding to the revised structure in 2013 (22), has already been synthesized (Table 3.1) [11]. As a precursor of 87, the C31–C52 section 96a corresponding to the plausible structure 83 was synthesized as shown in Scheme 3.17 [11]. The A-ring ent-15 was prepared from ent-3 in a similar manner to that shown in Scheme 3.3. Protection of the 1,2-diol moiety of ent-15 as
a cyclopentylidene acetal followed by Sharpless AD of the olefin gave diol $89$. The resulting 1,2-diol was also protected as a cyclopentylidene acetal, and the remaining secondary alcohol was converted to mesylate $90$. Selective removal of the Bn group in the presence of the PMB group was achieved with Raney nickel under hydrogen, and subsequent treatment of the resulting primary alcohol with base furnished terminal epoxide $91$ via inversion of the absolute configuration at C39. Epoxide opening of $91$ with dilithium reagent $92$ followed by protection as a TBS ether gave $93$. Nickel catalyzed hydroalumination of the terminal alkyne $93$ followed by addition of iodine furnished iodoolefin $94$. After conversion of the protecting group from PMB to TES, treatment of the iodoolefin $95$ with $t$-BuLi to generate an alkenyllithium, followed by addition of aldehyde $58$, afforded coupling product $96a$ and its diastereomer $96b$ at C43 in 71% yield in a 1.7:1 ratio. The epimer was removed by silica gel column chromatography.
Fig. 3.4 Structure of karlotoxin 2, revised structure at C2 (2008) and C51 of AM3 (2013) and plausible structure of AM3

Scheme 3.16 Strategy for structure determination of the bis-THP moiety
Having synthesized the precursors of the authentic samples, degradation of 60a and 96a was carried out through (1) deprotection with HF•Py, (2) glycol cleavage with HIO₄ and subsequent reduction with NaBH₄, and (3) esterification with (R)-MTPACl to give (S)-MTPA esters 86 and 88, respectively (Scheme 3.18) [11]. The ¹H NMR data for the degradation product derived from AM3 (84) matched those for the authentic sample 88 (38S, 39R) but not 86 (38R, 39R). Therefore, the relative configuration between C38 and C39 is not threo but erythro, and the absolute configurations were revised to be 32S, 33R, 34S, 35S, 36S, and 38S.
We moved on to total synthesis of AM3 (83) to verify the structure revised in 2018 (Scheme 3.19) [13]. In an analogous retrosynthetic analysis as shown in Scheme 3.5, 83 is to be synthesized via Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 23 and 97, and Julia–Kocienski olefination with 20. However, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 23 and 97 might be problematic as mentioned in Sect. 3.4.4.

Therefore, model experiments were carried out to optimize the reaction conditions. In place of the polyol segment 23, a simple terminal olefin with a linear 15-carbon chain (98) was used (Scheme 3.20). However, even in this simple substrate, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling with iodoolefin 72 did not give desired product 99 under the standard conditions for coupling of small molecules. After considerable experimentation, we found that the concentration of aq Cs2CO3 had a strong effect on this reaction. When the concentration of aq Cs2CO3 was changed from 3 to 1 M, 99 was formed in 60% yield.

We then moved on to the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 70 and 97 as a model study (Scheme 3.21) [13]. Synthesis of 97 commenced with protection of the secondary alcohol at C43 of 96a as a TBS ether. The TES group was selectively removed and the resulting hydroxy group was oxidized to an aldehyde. Alkynylation with Ohira–Bestmann reagent 68 furnished terminal alkyne 100. Methylation of 100 with LHMDS and MeI, followed by palladium catalyzed hydrostannylation and iodination, afforded trisubstituted iodoolefin 97. Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 70 with a shorter polyol moiety was examined. Hydroboration of 70 with 9-BBN, and successive addition of 3 M Cs2CO3, 70 in DMF, and Pd(PPh3) at room temperature furnished
coupling product 101 but in low yield (29%). When the concentration of aq Cs$_2$CO$_3$ was changed from 3 to 1 M, the yield of 101 was improved to 45%, which was lower than that with its counterpart 24 (51%) (Scheme 3.15). The reaction was carried out with 3 M Cs$_2$CO$_3$, and after the addition of 70 and Pd(PPh$_3$)$_4$, H$_2$O was added to the reaction mixture, diluting the concentration of aq Cs$_2$CO$_3$ from 3 to 1 M. As a result, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling proceeded rapidly and was completed in 10 min, affording 101 in high yield (80%).
Finally, Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 23 and 97 was carried out (Scheme 3.22) [13]. Although the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling with 3 M Cs₂CO₃ gave the coupling product 102 in 42% yield, that with 1 M Cs₂CO₃ improved the yield to 77%. Thus, connection of the large segments, terminal olefin 23 (MW 1844) and iodoolefin 97 (MW 1747) was successfully achieved by Suzuki–Miyaura coupling under the optimized conditions to afford the long-cherished compound 102 (MW 3396).

The results of the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling can be rationalized as shown in Fig. 3.5, while the reaction mechanism is still controversial. Hydroboration of 23 or 70 with 9-BBN affords alkylborane A. Oxidative addition of Pd(0) catalyst to iodoolefin 97 furnished Pd(II) iodide complex C. It is reported that ligand exchange from I⁻ to OH⁻ generates highly reactive hydroxo Pd(II) complex D, which reacts with alkylborane A via coordination of the oxygen atom to the borane to give the coupling products 102 or 101 via transition state E, respectively. It is reported that the reaction rate for D is to be 10⁴ times faster than that for C (k₄ ≫ k₂) [39]. The complex D would be formed at the interfacial surface of the organic (ORG) and aqueous (AQ) phases, or AQ. Therefore, formation of D might be retarded due to the low accessibility of C in AQ (conditions a). This salting out effect due to the size and hydrophobicity of C results in the low yield of the coupling products 102 (42%) and 101 (29%). Formation of D might be accelerated by diluting the aq Cs₂CO₃ available to react with A giving 102 in 77% yield (conditions b). However, in the
case of A generated from 70, formation of borate B would be accelerated under conditions b to inhibit the reaction with D, giving 101 in 45% yield. Dilution of aq Cs₂CO₃ (3M to 1 M) by adding water was carried out at the final step (conditions c). Therefore, A could react with D prior to the formation of B (k₃ > k₁) to afford 101 in 80% yield.

**Fig. 3.5** Plausible reaction process for Suzuki–Miyaura coupling
On the other hand, it is reported that B is more reactive with C than A to give E via elimination of I− [40]. However, the present results suggest that the reaction proceeds via D, which reacts with A directly. If B is more reactive than A, coupling with 70 could afford better yields than 23 under both conditions a and b. Because it is more favorable to form B from A for 70 possessing a shorter carbon chain than 23 due to its higher accessibility in AQ.

Having succeeded in the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of 23 and 97 giving 102, we approached the endgame of the total synthesis (Scheme 3.23) [13]. The PMB group of 102 was removed with DDQ (75%) and the resulting primary alcohol was subjected to Swern oxidation to furnish 103 (quant). Coupling of aldehyde 103 and sulfone 20 by Julia–Kocienski olefination. KHMDS was added to a mixture of 103 and 20 in a mixed solvent (THF: toluene = 7.5:1) at −78 °C and warmed up to room temperature to afford the olefin 104 in 67% yield (E:Z = 2:1). Use of THF as a single solvent improved both the yield to 79% and the E:Z ratio to 4:1. The E:Z ratio was improved to 10:1 when the solvent was changed to THF/HMPA = 4:1 (79% yield). Presumably, the polar solvents prevent coordination of K+ in the intermediate. Removal of all silyl groups and acetals was carefully carried out due to the labile nature of the product, which is prone to decomposition under acidic conditions. Thus, treatment of 104 with HF·Py in THF to remove silyl groups, and subsequent addition of (CH2OH)2 and MeOH to accelerate the removal of acetals afforded a mixture of AM3 (83) and mono-acetal 105 and/or 106. The mixture was subjected again to the same conditions to afford 83 in 58% (purified by HPLC). The 1H and 13C NMR data including the specific rotation for the synthetic sample were in good accordance with those for AM3; therefore, the structure of AM3 revised in 2018 was confirmed.

3.7 Synthetic Efficiency

The first and highly convergent total synthesis of AM3 (83) has been accomplished through the assemblage of the polyol (23), bis-THP (97), and polyene (20) segments in only 5 steps. Generally, in the case of total syntheses of natural products, the efficiency is evaluated by the longest linear sequence (LLS). The LLS was 40 steps in the synthesis of 83. Although recent progress on short-step total syntheses of diterpenoids is remarkable, the number of steps might be highly dependent on the MW of the target molecules, making it difficult to evaluate the synthetic efficiency (SE) based simply on this parameter. Therefore, we proposed a new concept to evaluate the efficiency in the synthesis of medium molecular-weight molecules such as AM3 (Fig. 3.6) [41]. We defined an index SE_{LLS} which is calculated as MW divided by LLS, meaning how MW increases on average per single step. The LLS synthetic efficiency for AM3 is calculated to be SE_{LLS}(AM3) = 1328/40 = 33.2. This value is comparable to that for synthesis of a small molecule (MW 332) in 10 steps. On the other hand, another important factor for evaluating the total SE is the total steps (TS), because a number of total syntheses of natural products have been
executed in a convergent manner. To evaluate the total efficiency, we defined another index \( \text{SE}_{\text{TS}} \), which is calculated as MW divided by TS, meaning how MW increases per single step on average in total. Since TS of the total synthesis is 112 steps [13], the TS synthetic efficiency of AM3 is calculated to be \( \text{SE}_{\text{TS}}(\text{AM3}) = \frac{1328}{112} = 11.9 \). These parameters, \( \text{SE}_{\text{LLS}} \) and \( \text{SE}_{\text{TS}} \), might be useful indices to assess the synthetic efficiency in the total syntheses of medium molecular-weight molecules.
3.8 Conclusion

It was a long 15-year journey to reveal the correct structure of AM3 and to achieve its first total synthesis, which was accomplished by the power of synthetic organic chemistry. Although progress on computational chemistry and data science is remarkable and they have been applied to structure determination, total synthesis is indisputable approach to determine and verify structures including absolute configurations, particularly in the case of complex and large natural products that are only available in small quantities from natural sources. Comparison of $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR data for the natural product with those for the synthetic samples apparently proves the structure. During our synthetic studies of AM3, a new aspect in Suzuki–Miyaura coupling was discovered in the case of medium-sized molecules, and a new parameter to evaluate synthetic efficiency (SE) that is suitable for total syntheses of medium-sized molecules was proposed.

References


Chapter 4
Total Synthesis of (+)-Siladenoserinol A

Masahito Yoshida, Koya Saito, and Takayuki Doi

Abstract  The total synthesis of (+)-siladenoserinol A (1) was accomplished. The bicyclic acetal core, a 6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane skeleton, was constructed by Au(III)-catalyzed cycloisomerization of 6,7-dihydroxy-2-alkynoate. A serinol side chain was introduced by the Julia–Kocienski olefination and the other side chain was efficiently introduced by the Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction with glycerophosphocholine-containing phosphonoacetate, and selective sulfamation of the serinol moiety yielded (+)-1. The synthetic (+)-1 exhibited potent inhibitory activity against p53–Hdm2 interaction comparable to that of the natural product. In contrast, the desulfamate derivative did not show the inhibitory activity. Notably, its benzoyl analog exhibited more potent activity than (+)-1.

Keywords  Au catalyst · Bicyclic acetal · Glycerophosphocholine · Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction · Protein–protein interaction

4.1 Introduction

(+)-Siladenoserinol A (1) is a marine natural product extracted from a tunicate of the family Didemnidae sampled from North Sulawesi in Indonesia. It contains a 6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane skeleton and two long side chains, one of which terminates in sulfamated serinol, and the other terminates in a glycerophosphocholine moiety [1]. Siladenoserinol A inhibits the protein–protein interaction (PPI) between p53 and Hdm2 that downregulates p53. As the upregulation of Hdm2 in cancer cells induces the inhibition of cancer suppressive p53, this PPI inhibitor is expected to be a tumor suppressive agent [2–4]. The study of the total synthesis of siladenoserinol

M. Yoshida · K. Saito · T. Doi (✉)
Graduate School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Tohoku University, 6-3 Aramaki, Aza-Aoba, Aoba-Ku, Sendai 980-8578, Japan
e-mail: doi_taka@mail.pharm.tohoku.ac.jp

M. Yoshida
Department of Chemistry, Faculty of Pure and Applied Sciences, University of Tsukuba, 1-1-1 Tennodai, Tsukuba 305-8571, Ibaraki, Japan

© The Author(s) 2024
M. Nakada et al. (eds.), Modern Natural Product Synthesis, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-97-1619-7_4

83
A can be applied to its derivatives. It may also contribute to the elucidation of its mechanism of action and structure–activity relationship (SAR) and hence may lead to the discovery of a new anticancer drug. This chapter describes a new method for synthesizing the 6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane skeleton using the Au(III)-catalyzed cycloisomerization of dihydroxyalkynoate and its application in the total synthesis of siladenoserinol A [5].

4.2 Synthetic Plan of (+)-Siladenoserinol A (1)

The SAR of twelve siladenoserinols A–L has been previously reported. Based on this previous study, three substructures, namely the 6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane skeleton, sulfamated serinol, and glycerophosphocholine, are expected to play a major role in the biological activity of the siladenoserinols (Tables 4.1 and 4.2) [1]. Therefore, a convergent synthetic approach combining these three substructures was planned.

The initial synthetic plan is as follows. The glycerophosphocholine-containing side chain of 1 can be constructed by the esterification of α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acid 2 with glycerophosphocholine 3. The selective formation of the sulfamate group in the serinol moiety can be carried out in the final step. Acid 2 can be synthesized via the Julia–Kocienski olefination of aldehyde 4 with 1-phenyl-1H-tetrazole sulfone (PT-sulfone) 5, followed by the Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (HWE) reaction with

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4.1 Structures of siladenoserinols A–G and their IC50 values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compound</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The concentration at 50% inhibition of p53–Hdm2 interaction
Table 4.2 Structures of siladenoserinols H–L and their IC$_{50}$ values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>R$^1$</th>
<th>R$^2$</th>
<th>R$^3$</th>
<th>R$^4$</th>
<th>IC$_{50}$ (µM)$^a$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol H</td>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>SO$_3$H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>$^+$NMe$_3$</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol I</td>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>SO$_3$H</td>
<td>$^+$NMe$_3$</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol J</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>SO$_3$H</td>
<td>$^+$NH$_3$</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol K</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>SO$_3$H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>$^+$NMe$_3$</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladenoserinol L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>SO$_3$H</td>
<td>$^+$NMe$_3$</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$a$ The concentration at 50% inhibition of p53–Hdm2 interaction

phosphonoacetate 6 after the conversion of the benzyloxyalkyl group into an aldehyde. This strategy involves stepwise side chain elongation in the late stage of the synthesis and could be suitable for the synthesis of the analogs of 1. As the formation of the bicyclic acetal moiety in 4 is challenging, we planned the Lewis acid-catalyzed cyclization of 7,8-dihydroxytetradec-2-ynoate 7 (Fig. 4.1).

4.3 Model Study for the Synthesis of a 6,8-Dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane Skeleton

To synthesize the above bicyclic acetal, the cycloisomerization of 7,8-dihydroxy-2-alkynoate 8 was investigated (Table 4.3). Initially, 5 mol% of PdCl$_2$(MeCN)$_2$, which is often used for the hydroalkoxylation of alkynes [6], was used in MeCN to obtain the desired bicyclic acetal 9 in 52% yield (entry 1); however, this reaction required 12 h to complete. To improve the yield, a gold catalyst was used as a soft Lewis acid. Gold catalysts are not only capable of coordinating alkynes but also of catalyzing the intramolecular hydroalkoxylation of electron-deficient alkynes [7]. When AuClPPh$_3$ was used as the catalyst, the reaction did not proceed, and the starting material was recovered (entry 2). However, when a cationic Au(I) complex prepared from AuClPPh$_3$/AgOTf was used, the reaction was completed in 9 h, and 9 was obtained in 69% yield (entry 3). Surprisingly, when Au(III) chloride was used as the catalyst, the reaction was completed in 5 min, and the desired compound 9 was obtained in the highest yield of 79% (entry 4). When the amount of the catalyst was reduced to 1 mol%, 9 was obtained in almost the same yield; however, the reaction
Fig. 4.1 Retrosynthesis of (+)-siladenoserinol (1)

required 45 min to complete (entry 5). Both Au(III) and Au(I) can activate alkynes as soft Lewis acids, but Au(III) is known to exhibit a higher oxygen affinity than Au(I) [8]. Therefore, it is conceivable that Au(III) can activate both the alkyne and the carbonyl group as a Lewis acid and can increase the electrophilicity of the β-position of the alkyne, thereby forming the desired bicyclic acetal 9 (Fig. 4.2). In contrast, the reaction did not proceed when AgOTf, AlCl₃, p-TsOH, and HCl/dioxane were used (entries 6–9, respectively).

4.4 Synthesis of Aldehyde 4 and PT-Sulfone 5

The preparation of 7 was carried out as follows. After the lithiation of terminal alkyne 11 prepared from D-malic acid (10) through a four-step transformation, its alkylation with benzyl 6-bromohexyl ether afforded 12 in 88% yield. Subsequently, 12 was converted into a trans-alkenediol by removing the benzylidene acetal moiety under acidic conditions and reduction with Red-Al® [9]. The free diol was then converted into benzylidene acetal again, and its regioselective cleavage using DIBAL afforded
Table 4.3 Investigation of bicyclic acetal formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Catalyst (mol%)</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Yield of 9 (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>PdCl₂(MeCN)₂ (5)</td>
<td>12 h</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>AuCl₃PPh₃ (5)</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>AuCl₃PPh₃/AgOTf (5)</td>
<td>9 h</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>AuCl₃ (5)</td>
<td>5 min</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>AuCl₃ (1)</td>
<td>45 min</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>AgOTf (5)</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>AlCl₃ (5)</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>p-TsOH (7.5)</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>HCl-dioxane (7.5)</td>
<td>10 h</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 4.2 Mechanism for the formation of bicyclic acetal 9

13 [10]. The Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation of trans-alkene 13 [11] was followed by acetonide formation, which yielded 14 as a single diastereomer. Next, the primary hydroxy group in 14 was tosylated, and its alkylation was performed using lithium acetylide-ethylenediamine; this reaction afforded 15 in 95% yield. Subsequently, 15 was lithiated and added to methyl chloroformate. The removal of
the acetonide under acidic conditions afforded the desired cyclization precursor 7 (Scheme 4.1).

Aldehyde 4 was then synthesized from 7. Cycloisomerization of 7 proceeded rapidly in the presence of 5 mol% of AuCl₃ in MeCN at 30 °C leading to the desired product 16 in 83% yield. The stereochemical configuration of 16 was determined by the NOE correlation between the two hydrogen atoms, Hₐ and Hₐ, in the 6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane skeleton. Partial reduction of ester 16 using DIBAL was performed at −78 °C to provide aldehyde 4 in quantitative yield (Scheme 4.2).

After the successful synthesis of aldehyde 4, PT-sulfone 5 was prepared as follows: L-Serine was converted into 17 in four steps using a previously reported method [12]. Etherification of primary alcohol 17 with 12-bromododecyl benzyl ether afforded 18 in 60% yield. The benzyl group in 18 was removed by hydrogenolysis, and its Mitsunobu reaction with 1-phenyl-1H-tetrazole-5-thiol (PT-SH, 19) was performed [13]. The ammonium molybdate-catalyzed oxidation of the resultant sulfide furnished PT-sulfone 5 in a good yield [14] (Scheme 4.3).
4.5 Total Synthesis of (+)-Siladenoserinol (1)

4.5.1 Approach to 1 via Esterification of 2 with 3

A serinol moiety was introduced by the Julia–Kocienski olefination of aldehyde 4 with PT-sulfone 5 [15, 16]. Removal of the two benzyl groups and concomitant hydrogenation of the alkene moiety produced diol 20. Selective oxidation of the primary hydroxy group in 20 with TEMPO/Phl(OAc)_2 yielded aldehyde 21. The HWE reaction of 21 using phosphonoacetate 6 [17], acetylation of the free secondary hydroxy group, and removal of the allyl group using Pd(PPh_3)_4/phenylsilane [18] afforded carboxylic acid 2 (Scheme 4.4).

Next, the esterification of the obtained α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acid 2 with the pre-prepared glycerophosphocholine 3 [19] was attempted. However, the desired
esterification did not proceed under any of the following conditions: (a) DIC, DMAP, DMF; (b) PyBroP, DIEA, DMAP, DMF [20]; (c) triphosgene, DIEA, DMAP, 2,4,6-collidine, DMF [21]. A few studies have reported on the esterification of α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acids with glycerophosphocholine; the yields of these reactions were poor, and the isomerization of the alkene moiety was observed [22, 23]. In addition to the low reactivity of α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acid 2 in the condensation, the low solubility of glycerophosphocholine 3 made it difficult to synthesize 22a by esterification (Scheme 4.5).

4.5.2 Next Approach to 1

As the condensation of 2 and 3 did not proceed, we next focused on the introduction of a glycerophosphocholine precursor by the HWE reaction. Based on a previous study [24], phosphonoacetate 23 could be used as a precursor of glycerophosphocholine. After the HWE reaction of aldehyde 24a with 23, the bromine atom can be replaced with trimethylamine to afford the desired glycerophosphocholine 22a (Fig. 4.3).

Phosphonoacetate 23 was prepared as follows. Selective acetylation of the primary hydroxy group in 25 using dibutyltin oxide/AcCl afforded 26 in 58% yield [25]. Acylation of the secondary hydroxy group in 26 with diethylphosphonoacetic acid
Scheme 4.5 Attempted coupling of carboxylic acid 2 with glycerophosphocholine 3

(27) using DCC/DMAP furnished phosphonoacetate 28 in quantitative yield. The benzyl group in 28 was then removed using hydrogenolysis. Next, the coupling of the resulting primary alcohol 29 with phosphoramidite 30 and subsequent oxidation by tert-butyl hydroperoxide afforded 23 (Scheme 4.6).

Fig. 4.3 Plan for the stepwise synthesis of 22a from aldehyde 24a
the reaction was carried out in MeCN, the starting material was consumed within 30 min; however, the yield of 31 decreased to 59% (entry 4). The use of a polar solvent, such as MeCN, may accelerate the HWE reaction; however, it may also lead to the undesired nucleophilic substitution with DIEA. Based on the above results, we decided to use the conditions shown in entry 2 as the optimal conditions for the HWE reaction.

The conversion of the glycerophosphocholine precursor 31 into glycerophosphocholine using trimethylamine was examined (Table 4.5). Nucleophilic substitution of compound 31 with trimethylamine was performed in THF and the concomitant removal of the tert-butyl group afforded glycerophosphocholine 22a in low yield (30%, entry 1). As some of the starting material remained unreacted, MeCN was added to accelerate the reaction. As expected, the reaction time decreased and the yield increased (55%, entry 2). At 80 °C, the reaction was complete in 12 h to afford 22a in 59% yield (entry 3). Thus, we succeeded in synthesizing 22a in a moderate yield through the HWE reaction of aldehyde 24a with phosphonoacetate 23, followed by its nucleophilic substitution with trimethylamine. This method could be applied to the synthesis of glycerophosphocholine derivatives containing an α,β-unsaturated ester.

Compound 1 was synthesized from 22a as follows. The Boc group and acetonide were removed by treating 22a with 3 M HCl in dioxane. Next, the nitrogen atom-selective sulfamate formation of amino alcohol 32 using SO₃ pyridine in the presence of triethylamine in THF—water furnished 1. The ¹H and ¹³C NMR
Table 4.4 Investigation of the HWE reaction of aldehyde 24a with phosphonoacetate 23

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Base (equiv)</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield of 31 (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>Et3N (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>DIEA (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>DIEA (5)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>DIEA (10)</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.5 Investigation of the formation of glycerophosphocholine 22a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Temp (°C)</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield of 22a (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>THF–MeCN</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>THF–MeCN</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spectra and the specific rotation of 1 were in good agreement with those of (+)-siladenoserinol A. Hence, the total synthesis of (+)-siladenoserinol A (1) was accomplished (Scheme 4.7).

4.5.3 Convergent Approach to 1 via the HWE Reaction Using Glycerophosphocholine-Containing Phosphonoacetate 33

We then considered a unique and further convergent approach to 22a through the simultaneous construction of the α,β-unsaturated ester and the introduction of the glycerophosphocholine moiety through the HWE reaction of aldehyde 24a with phosphonoacetate 33, which contained a glycerophosphocholine moiety (Fig. 4.4).

Although the coupling of α,β-unsaturated acid 2 and alcohol 3 did not proceed (Scheme 4.5), the simpler phosphonoacetic acid 27 reacted with 3 using DCC/DMAP in refluxing CH₂Cl₂ to afford 33 in moderate yield (Scheme 4.8).

To investigate the optimal reaction conditions for the HWE reaction using glycerophosphocholine-containing phosphonoacetate 33, the reaction with benzaldehyde was investigated (Table 4.6). When NaH was used as a base, only a trace amount of the desired α,β-unsaturated ester 34 was obtained (entry 1). This probably
Total Synthesis of (+)-Siladenoserinol A

(+)-siladenoserinol A (1)

\[
\text{AcO} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{P} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{P} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N} \\
\text{AcO} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{P} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{P} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N}
\]

Scheme 4.7 Total synthesis of (+)-siladenoserinol A (1)

Fig. 4.4 Plan for the one-step synthesis of 22a by the HWE reaction using 33

occurred because of the decomposition of phosphonoacetate 33 under strongly basic conditions. In contrast, the Masamune–Roush method [27] afforded the desired \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated ester 34 in moderate yield (entries 2–5). Especially, the use of LiBr/DBU in THF produced the best result (entry 4).

The optimal reaction conditions were applied to the coupling of 33 with aldehyde 24a and its benzoyl analog 24b. To our delight, the HWE reactions afforded 22a and 22b in 64% and 51% yields, respectively. Subsequently, acetonide and
the Boc group were removed, and the selective sulfamate formation described in Scheme 4.7 furnished (+)-siladenoserinol A (1) and its benzoyl analog 35 in moderate yields (Scheme 4.9). Thus, the convergent synthesis of siladenoserinol A and its analogs was accomplished [5]. In addition to our synthesis, the Tong group succeeded in the total synthesis of siladenoserinols A and H [28]. Moreover, the Liu and Du group achieved the total synthesis of siladenoserinols A and D [29].

4.6 Biological Evaluation

The inhibitory activities of siladenoserinol A, synthetic compounds 1, 32, and 35 against p53–Hdm2 interaction were evaluated by the Tsukamoto group, who had isolated siladenoserinols [1]. The synthetic compound 1 exhibited potent inhibitory activity comparable to that of the natural product (Table 4.7, entries 1 and 2). The desulfamate derivative 32 did not exhibit potent activity (entry 3). Therefore, either a sulfamate or a sulfate group in the serinol moiety is crucial for p53–Hdm2 inhibition (see Tables 4.1 and 4.2). Notably, the benzoyl analog 35 was found to be more potent than 1 (entry 4) [5].
Table 4.6 Investigation of the HWE reaction of benzaldehyde and phosphonoacetate 33

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Reagent</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield of 34 (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>NaH</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>LiCl, DBU(^a)</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LiBr, DBU(^b)</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LiBr, DBU(^b)</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>LiBr, DIEA(^b)</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)2 equiv
\(^b\)5 equiv
Scheme 4.9  Convergent synthesis of 1 and its benzoyl analog 35

Table 4.7  Inhibitory activity of siladenoserinol and its derivatives against p53-Hdm2 interaction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>R&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>R&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>IC&lt;sub&gt;50&lt;/sub&gt; (μM)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Siladenoserinol A</td>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>SO&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;H</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Synthetic (+)-1</td>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>SO&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;H</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>&gt;50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Bz</td>
<td>SO&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;H</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The concentration at 50% inhibition of p53–Hdm2 interaction
4.7 Conclusion

The total synthesis of (+)-siladenoserinol A (1) was accomplished. The bicyclic acetal skeleton of siladenoserinol A was synthesized by the Au(III)-catalyzed cycloisomerization of 7,8-dihydroxy-2-alkynoate. The serinol moiety was introduced via the Julia–Kocienski reaction. Although the condensation reaction of the glycerophosphocholine moiety with the α,β-unsaturated acid did not proceed, an α,β-unsaturated ester containing the glycerophosphocholine moiety was successfully synthesized by the HWE reaction using an originally developed glycerophosphocholine-containing phosphonoacetate. Deprotection and selective sulfamate formation furnished 1. Using this method, a benzoyl analog 35 was also synthesized. Their inhibitory activities against the p53–Hdm2 interaction were evaluated. Compound 1 exhibited comparable activity to siladenoserinol A, but the desulfamate derivative 32 showed lower activity. Therefore, the presence of sulfamate or sulfate in the serinol moiety is essential for p53–Hdm2 inhibition. Notably, the p53–Hdm2 inhibitory activity of the benzoyl analog 35 was better than that of 1, which indicates that its analogs have high potential for this PPI inhibition.

Acknowledgements The authors thank Prof. Sachiko Tsukamoto and Dr. Hikaru Kato in Kumamoto University for biological evaluation and helpful discussion. This work was supported by grants from JSPS KAKENHI (No. JP15H05837), a Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research on Innovative Areas: Middle Molecular Strategy and from the Japan Agency for Medical Research and Development (AMED), the Platform Project for Supporting Drug Discovery and Life Science Research.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 5
The Asymmetric Total Synthesis of Discorhabdin B, H, K, and Aleutianamine

Juri Sakata, Masashi Shimomura, and Hidetoshi Tokuyama

Abstract This review article summarizes the general introduction of discorhabdin marine alkaloids and the synthetic efforts in developing congeners with a hexacyclic N, S-acetal structure, which are major constituents of discorhabdin. Our total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin B is discussed in detail following the introduction of the biosynthetic pathway and early synthetic studies, which include the landmark first total synthesis of discorhabdin A. Furthermore, previous synthetic studies on more structurally complex congeners with C6–N15 bonds are introduced, followed by the first total synthesis of (–)-discorhabdin H and (+)-discorhabdin K, which are achieved by our research group. Finally, the isolation, structure determination, and proposed biosynthesis of the structurally intriguing congener aleutianamine are summarized. Then, the first total synthesis of aleutianamine, which involves an unprecedented reductive skeletal rearrangement of N-Ts-(+)discorhabdin B to N-Ts-aleutianamine, is discussed.

Keywords Discorhdbinds · Marine alkaloid · Total synthesis · Pyrroloiminoquinone · Aleutianamine · Oxidation · Michael addition · Rearrangement

5.1 Introduction

Discorhabdins are structurally divergent marine alkaloids [1–15] primarily found in sponges, Latrunculia. These compounds have demonstrated significant biological activities such as antiviral [16], antitumor [16, 17], antimalarial [18], and antimicrobial [18] activities. Discorhabdins exhibit high structural diversity, comprising

J. Sakata · M. Shimomura · H. Tokuyama (✉)
Graduate School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Tohoku University, Aoba 6-3, Aramaki, Aoba-Ku, Sendai 980-8578, Japan
e-mail: tokuyama@mail.pharm.tohoku.ac.jp
approximately 50 congeners of different ring systems fused on a common pentacyclic skeleton containing a spirocyclic hexadienone fused with the pyrroloiminoquinone skeleton. The ring systems of structurally divergent discorhabdin can be classified into four classes based on structural complexity (Fig. 5.1). Class 1 congeners, such as discorhabdin C and E, have a common pentacyclic skeleton. Class 2 compounds, such as discorhabdin V and Z, have C2–N18 bonds in their E/F-rings. Class 3 congeners, such as discorhabdin A and B, have strained D/G rings containing an N,S-acetal moiety, which constitute the majority of congeners (34 compounds). Class 4 compounds, such as discorhabdin H and N, have a D/E/F/G ring system and are the most complicated congeners. In addition, a unique congener called aleutianamine, which was proposed to be biosynthetically derived from a Class 3 congener through skeletal rearrangement, was isolated from a deep-sea sponge in 2019. This compound has shown selective and potent activity against solid tumors, such as pancreatic cancer cell lines [19].

Discorhabdins have attracted considerable attention from synthetic chemists as attractive synthetic targets and drug candidates because of their promising biological activities and structurally intriguing complex molecular architectures [20–44]. Early-stage synthetic studies and total synthesis have mainly focused on simple Class 1 congeners such as discorhabdin C by Yamamura [21], Kita [22], Heathcock [23] and discorhabdin E by Heathcock [23]. Regarding Class 2 congeners, Heathcock’s and our groups have reported model studies on congeners categorized as Class 2 [23,41]. More recently, the first total synthesis of the Class 2 congener (+)-discorhabdin V was reported by Burns and co-workers [42]. Regarding Class 3 congeners, Kita and co-workers disclosed the landmark total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin A in 2003 [24,25]. After two decades, our group reported the first total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin B, as extensively discussed in this review article [43]. Based on the seminal synthetic studies on Class 4 congeners using natural discorhabdin B by Copp and co-workers, we completed the total synthesis of Class 4 congeners, (–)-discorhabdin H, in 2023 [43]. Since the isolation and structural determination of (–)-aleutianamine, this compound has attracted considerable attention as a synthetic target because of its highly fused heptacyclic structure and significant biological activities. In 2023, our group found a biomimetic synthetic route from a derivative of (+)-discorhabdin B to (–)-aleutianamine [43]. Shortly after our synthesis, Stoltz’s group reported the second example of its total synthesis [44]. As part of our ongoing project on pyrroloiminoquinoline marine natural products [45,46], we conducted research to establish synthetic routes for discorhabdin congeners with various framework classes. As a result, we developed a divergent route to (+)-discorhabdin B, (–)-discorhabdin H, (–)-discorhabdin K, and (–)-aleutianamine via discorhabdin B, which are discussed in this review article, with the relevant background and related studies.
Fig. 5.1 Structurally divergent discorhabdin alkaloids and classification based on skeleton
5.2 Biosynthetic Proposal and Previous Total Synthesis of $N$, $S$-Acetal-Containing Discorhabdins

The biosynthetic pathway of $N$, $S$-acetal-containing discorhabdins remains unclear. Scheme 5.1 shows Munro’s proposal for the biosynthesis of discorhabdin B [47]. According to this proposal, makaluvamine D was first synthesized from tyramine and tryptamine. Then, two routes were proposed for the conversion of makaluvamine D to discorhabdin B. The first route involves the formation of discorhabdin C from makaluvamine D via oxidative spirocyclization, followed by the introduction of a sulfur atom to convert discorhabdin C to B. The second route involves an early-stage introduction of sulfur atom to makaluvamine D, resulting in the formation of makaluvamine F, followed by oxidative spirocyclization to form discorhabdin B.

Based on the two biosynthetic pathways proposed by Munro, Kita and co-workers conducted synthetic studies on $N$, $S$-acetal-containing discorhabdins, discorhabdins A and B [24, 25]. Scheme 5.2 shows the synthetic route to discorhabdin B from makaluvamine F by Kita and co-workers [48, 49]. The synthesis started with the preparation of the 2-aminodihydrobenzothiophene derivative 3. The direct introduction of nitrogen functionality at the C2 position of dihydrobenzothiophene derivative 1 was achieved through a Pummerer-type C2 azidation using a combination of iodosobenzene and TMSN$_3$. After reducing the azide to an amine, the total synthesis of makaluvamine F was accomplished by a condensation of amine 3 with pyrroloiminoquinone 4 through an addition–elimination reaction [48, 49]. Finally, Kita and co-workers attempted the transformation of makaluvamine F into discorhabdin B under several oxidative conditions, such as PIFA or CuCl$_2$ and H$_2$O, as previously reported by Heathcock. However, the desired reactions did not provide discorhabdin B, which could be due to the high sensitivity of the $N’S$-acetal moiety toward oxidants.

Scheme 5.1 Proposed biosynthetic pathways for discorhabdin B
Scheme 5.2 Total synthesis of makaluvamine F by Kita and co-workers

Scheme 5.3 depicts the total synthesis of discorhabdin A developed by Kita and co-workers, where the introduction of a sulfur atom was conducted at a later stage of the synthesis [24, 25]. The coupling reaction of amino alcohol 7, derived from L-tyrosine methyl ester (6), and pyrroloiminoquinone 5, followed by the PIFA-mediated diastereoselective oxidative cyclization of 8, provided spirodienones 9 in moderate yield and selectivity (49%, dr = 4.8:1). After cleavage of hydroxymethyl side chain in two steps, the introduction of sulfur on hemiaminal 10 was conducted by treatment with p-methoxybenzyl mercaptan under acidic conditions, which promoted N, O- to N, S-acetal exchange reaction to provide 11. Subsequently, the PMB group was removed using MeNH2 to generate free thiol 12. However, intramolecular thia-Michel reaction of 12 provided desired compound 13 in low yield; instead, a debrominated structural isomer 14 was obtained as the major product because of the low stereoselectivity of the N, S-acetal forming step. Finally, the first total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin A was completed by deprotection of Ts group from 13.

5.3 Synthetic Plan

Inspired by Munro’s biosynthetic proposal, which suggested makaluvamine F as a precursor of discorhabdin B and Kita’s pioneering work (Scheme 5.2), we synthesized makaluvamine F and N-Ts-makaluvamine. We then examined oxidative spirocyclization by subjecting these compounds to various oxidation conditions. However, all attempted conditions failed to provide discorhabdin B or N-Ts-discorhabdin B and instead resulted in the formation of complex mixtures. Because of these setbacks, we abandoned the biomimetic synthetic route and investigated a nonbiomimetic synthetic strategy. Copp and co-workers reported the semi-synthesis of discorhabdin B from natural discorhabdin W by reductive cleavage of disulfide bond with dithiothreitol, followed by the final N, S-acetalization of free thiol 15 [6] (Scheme 5.4).
to yield discorhabdin B. They observed that free thiol 15 was unstable and spontaneously underwent $N, S$-acetal formation at the C8 position, leading to the formation of discorhabdin B. Based on these observations, we speculated that $N, S$-acetal formation could occur if free thiol 15 could be generated from a precursor such as secondary amine 16 through a chemoselective oxidation of the secondary amine to imine, followed by the removal of a thiol-protecting group. We planned to construct spirodienone structure 16 through the PIFA-mediated oxidative spirocyclization of pyrroloiminoquinone 17, bearing a properly protected tyramine segment. Compound 17 can be easily prepared by condensation of pyrroloiminoquinone 5 with phenethylamine 18 using an addition/elimination reaction. Phenethylamine 18, containing a sulfur functionality, can be accessed through the reductive ring opening of 2-aminodihydrobenzothiophene 20, as described in Scheme 5.2, which can be readily prepared from the corresponding dihydrobenzothiophene.

### 5.4 The First Racemic Total Synthesis of Discorhabdin B

Our synthesis of discorhabdin B started with the preparation of 2-aminobenzothiophene 25 using an alternative method of the protocol established in Kita’s total synthesis of makaluvamine F (Scheme 5.2) [49]. To achieve
Copp’s semi synthesis of discorhabdin B from natural discorhabdin W

Our Synthetic strategy

Scheme 5.4 Synthetic strategy for discorhabdin B by Tokuyama and co-workers

this, 2-methoxycarbonyl benzothiophene 23 [50] was synthesized from 2-fluorobenzaldehyde 21 and methyl 2-mercaptoacetate 22 via a S_NAr reaction and intramolecular aldol condensation. Subsequently, it was reduced to dihydrobenzothiophene 24 using Mg metal under acidic conditions (Scheme 5.5) [51, 52]. After hydrolysis of the methyl ester in 24, the generated carboxylic acid was subjected to the Curtius rearrangement using DPPA and t-butanol to provide Boc-protected 2-aminodihydrobenzothiophene 25 with good yield and scalability (10 g) [53, 54].

Then, the chemoselective cleavage of the C1–S4 bond under the Birch reduction conditions yielded free thiol 26, [55–57] which was then converted to hydrochloride 27 via protection of the free thiol and removal of the Boc group in HCl in dioxane. Hydrochloride 27 and 5 were condensed to produce pyrroloiminoquinone 28 in good yield. Finally, the PIFA-mediated oxidative spirocyclization of 28 resulted in the formation of spirodienone 29 in excellent yield [24, 25].

With spirodienone 29 in hand, we studied its oxidation to enamine 30 under several oxidation conditions using MnO_2 and PdCl_2 (Table 5.1). However, these conditions only yielded a trace amount of enamine 30 with recovery of a considerable amount of 29 (entries 1 and 2). Surprisingly, treatment of 29 with excess CuBr_2 in MeCN at 80 °C did not yield the expected enamine 30; instead, it led to the formation of compound 31, which possessed an N, S-acetal structure and two bromo groups at the C4 and C2 positions (entry 3). This result indicated that CuBr_2 promoted the...
chemoselective oxidation of secondary amine (29 to I), deacylation (I to II) [58, 59], formation of N, S-acetal moiety (II to 33), and sequential dibromination at the C4 and C2 positions (33 to 31) (Scheme 5.6). To mitigate excess bromination at the C4 position, we examined conditions with decreased amounts of CuBr₂ (entry 4). However, only the C4 brominated product 32 was obtained as the major product, indicating that bromination at the C4 position proceeded faster than that at the C2 position. However, when THF was used as the solvent instead of MeCN, the undesired C4 bromination was suppressed, leading to the formation of product 33 (entry 5). Notably, a comparable yield of 33 was obtained using a catalytic amount of CuBr₂ (30 mol%) in air (entry 6).
Although we successfully developed a CuBr₂-catalyzed oxidative N, S-acetal formation cascade involving the oxidation of secondary amine to enamine, deacylation, and N, S-acetal formation, we failed to achieve regioselective bromination at the C2 position of compound 33. Instead, only decomposition was observed, possibly due to the sensitivity of the N, S-acetal structure to brominating agents (Scheme 5.7). Therefore, we abandoned the synthetic route from 33 to discorhabdin B and examined bromination before the oxidative N, S-acetalization cascade.

Table 5.2 summarizes the reaction of spirorenone 29 under various bromination conditions. Reaction using a combination of AIBN and NBS, DBDMH (1,3-Dibromo-5,5-dimethylhydantoin), NBS, and TBCO resulted in the decomposition

Table 5.1 Oxidative N’S-acetal formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Temp. (°C)</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Results (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>MnO₂</td>
<td>DCE</td>
<td>Rt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N.D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PdCl₂</td>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>30: trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CuBr₂ (excess)</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>31: 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CuBr₂ (1 eq)</td>
<td>MeCN</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>32: 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>CuBr₂ (1 eq)</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>33: 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>CuBr₂ (30 mol%)</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>33: 52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scheme 5.6  Proposed reaction mechanism for CuBr₂-mediated cascade reaction

Scheme 5.7  Unsuccessful bromination of 33
of substrate 29 (entry 1–4). However, the use of PyHBr₃ in a mixed solvent system (CHCl₃/MeCN) effectively facilitated regioselective bromination at the C2 position, yielding the desired compound 35 in good yield (69%).

After successfully establishing the C2-selective bromination reaction, we examined the CuBr₂-catalyzed oxidative N, S-acetal formation cascade using brominated compound 35 (Scheme 5.8). However, the reaction of 35 under the established conditions resulted in a complex mixture. Alternatively, when THF was used as the solvent instead of CHCl₃, the desired N, S-acetal 34 was obtained with a yield of 51%. Finally, the first racemic total synthesis of discorhabdin B was completed by removal of the Ts group [24, 25].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 5.2</th>
<th>Exploration of the C2-selective bromination condition for 29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entry</td>
<td>Reagents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>AIBN, NBS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>DBDMH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>NBS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>TBCO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>n-Bu₄NBr₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Py·HBr₃</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scheme 5.8 Endgame of the first total synthesis of (±)-discorhabdin B
5.5 The First Asymmetric Total Synthesis of (+)-Discorhabdin B

Achieving the asymmetric total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin B required the stereoselective construction of the C6 spirocenter. To accomplish this, we devised two strategies, as depicted in Scheme 5.9. The first strategy involved the reagent-controlled asymmetric oxidative spirocyclization of pyrroloiminoquinone 36 using a combination of chiral iodine catalyst and co-oxidants based on the protocol reported by Ishihara and co-workers [60, 61]. The second method relied on substrate-controlled PIFA-promoted diastereoselective oxidative spirocyclization of pyrroloiminoquinone 38 bearing chiral thioesters at the C5 position.

Table 5.3 summarizes the results of the oxidative spirocyclization of pyrroloiminoquinone 36 using various chiral aryl iodides. The reactions were conducted according to the protocol developed by Ishihara and co-workers using catalytic amount of chiral aryl iodides 37a–c and mCPBA as the cooxidant [60]. Reactions using chiral aryl iodides 37a–c resulted in the formation of compound 29 with low-to-moderate yields (12–43%) and poor enantioselectivities (entries 1–3). The reaction of phenol 36b was tested to facilitate oxidative spirocyclization. However, the desired compound was not obtained (entry 4).

![Scheme 5.9](image-url)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Iodobenzene derivative</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>37a</td>
<td>25%, &lt; 7% ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>37b</td>
<td>43%, &lt; 2% ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>37c</td>
<td>12%, &lt; 4% ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>37a</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Having found that the reagent-controlled asymmetric oxidative spirocyclization approach was ineffective, we investigated substrate-controlled diastereoselective spirocyclization using pyrroloiminoquinone 38 bearing chiral thioesters (Table 5.4.). Although the chemical yields were relatively improved compared with the reagent-controlled enantioselective oxidative spirocyclization approach (Table 5.3) [24, 25], the diastereoselectivity remained unsatisfactory. Among the optically active thioesters prepared from N-protected amino acids (38a–38f), the tert-leucine substrate provided the corresponding spirocyclic compound with the highest chemical yield (92%) and diastereoselectivity (21% de). Subsequently, we examined a series of chiral thioesters 38 g–n derived from mandelic acid and its derivatives. The chemical yields and diastereoselectivity varied depending on the protective group on the hydroxyl group and the substituent on the benzene ring. Among the series of chiral thioesters derived from mandelic acid derivatives, we selected the TBS-protected chloromandelic acid derivative 38 h as the optimal substrate for oxidative spirocyclization. It provided 39 h almost quantitative yield with moderate diastereoselectivity (97%, 31% de). The MTPA (38o) derivative and the methoxynaphthalenyl propanoic acid derivative (38p) were not effective in the reaction. The absolute configuration of the spirocenter in product 39 h was not determined at this stage but was later determined via a few additional step transformations to discorhabdin B (Scheme 5.10).

Although the diastereoselectivity of the oxidative spirocyclization in Table 5.4 could be improved, we transformed spirodienone 39 h to (+)-discorhabdin B (Scheme 5.10) according to the protocol established in our racemic total synthesis (Scheme 5.8). Thus, treatment of a diastereomeric mixture of spirodienones 39 ha and 39hb (65.5:34.5) with PyHBr₃ yielded a mixture of 40a and 40b (67.5: 32:5) in
Table 5.4  Results of diastereoselective oxidative spirocyclization using various chiral thioesters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chiral Thioester</th>
<th>Diastereoselectivity (%)</th>
<th>De Selectivity (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39a</td>
<td>92% (21%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39b</td>
<td>86% (16%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39c</td>
<td>76% (4%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39d</td>
<td>87% (0%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39e</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39f</td>
<td>&lt;27% (0%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39g</td>
<td>quant. (18%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39h</td>
<td>97% (31%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39i</td>
<td>36% (19%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39j</td>
<td>69% (2%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39k</td>
<td>64% (18%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39l</td>
<td>61% (19%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39m</td>
<td>50% (12%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39n</td>
<td>41% (9%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39o</td>
<td>84% (2%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39p</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scheme 5.10  First asymmetric total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin B
moderate yield. After separation, the major diastereomer 40a was subjected to CuBr$_2$-catalyzed oxidative spirocyclization, followed by deprotection of the Ts group using NaOMe, thereby completing the asymmetric total synthesis of (+)-discorhabdin B for the first time [24, 25].

5.6 The First Asymmetric Total Synthesis of Discorhabdins H and K

The construction of F-ring by the formation of C2–N18 bond presents a synthetic challenge for Class 4 discorhabdin congeners. Before describing our first total synthesis of discorhabdin H, synthetic studies on Class 4 discorhabdin congeners focusing on F-ring construction are briefly discussed (Scheme 5.11). Heathcock and co-workers constructed the F-ring in 43 via partial reduction of spirodienone 41 to provide spiroenone 42, followed by bromination at the C2 position and intramolecular N-alkylation (Scheme 5.10a) [23]. Our group conducted model studies to demonstrate the F-ring construction through a Pd-catalyzed intramolecular Heck cyclization of halogenated pyrroloiminoquinone 44 (Scheme 5.10b) [41]. Based on our Heck-cyclization strategy, Burns and co-workers accomplished the first asymmetric total synthesis of discorhabdin V (Scheme 5.10c) [42]. The biosynthetic pathway for the construction of the F-ring was supported by Copp’s seminal model experiment (Scheme 5.10d) [10]. Copp and co-workers treated natural (+)-discorhabdin B with N-Ac-L-cysteine in the presence of Et$_3$N to facilitate a thia-Michael reaction at the C1 position, followed by formation of a C2–N18 bond from 50 to yield 51 in low yield. These transformations are widely accepted as a plausible biosynthetic pathway for Class 4 discorhabdin congeners.

Inspired by the Copp’s model studies, we prepared L-ovothiol A according to reported procedures [61–65] and examined the thia-Michael reaction with N-Ts discorhabdin B (34). Initially, we attempted the thia-Michael reaction using L-ovothiol A under Copp’s conditions with triethylamine, but the desired reaction did not proceed (Scheme 5.12). After extensive studies using various combinations of bases and solvent systems, we eventually found that the thia-Michael reaction proceeded by simply mixing 34 with L-ovothiol A in DMSO/H$_2$O (3:1) to furnish the desired N-Ts-discorhabdin H (52) along with N-Ts-discorhabdin K (53) in 65% combined yield. The generation of the major side product disulfide of L-ovothiol A was suppressed by Ar bubbling during the reaction. The first total syntheses of discorhabdin H and K were accomplished [7, 8] using high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) separation of 52 and 53, followed by deprotection of the Ts group [24, 25].

Scheme 5.13 outlines the proposed mechanism for the generation of 52 and 53 through the thia-Michael reaction of L-ovothiol A to 34, followed by the formation of the C2–N18 bond. The initial thia-Michael addition proceeded in a highly stereoselective manner from the less hindered side, avoiding the pyrroloiminoquinone skeleton.
Scheme 5.11 Synthetic approaches for the construction of the F-ring in class 4 congeners

to generate enol 54. The protonation of enol 54 is expected to proceed without steric repulsion of the ovothiol segment to furnish 55. Finally, intermediate 55 underwent an intramolecular S_N2 reaction to form the C2–N18 bond, leading to the formation of N-Ts-discorhabdin H (52). Alternatively, the anti-elimination of HBr can proceed to produce N-Ts-discorhabdin K (53).

5.7 Total Synthesis of (−)-Aleutianamine

Aleutianamine is a new class of pyrroloiminoquinone alkaloids. This compound was isolated from a marine sponge, *Latrunculia (Latrunculia) austini* Samaai, Kelly & Gibbons, 2006 by Hamann and co-workers in 2019 [19]. Note that this compound
Scheme 5.12 First asymmetric total synthesis of (–)-discorhabdin H and (+)-discorhabdin K

Scheme 5.13 Proposed reaction mechanism of the thia-Michel addition of L-ovothiol A to 34 to furnish 52 and 53

exhibits potent and selective cytotoxicity against a pancreatic cancer cell line (PANC-1) at an IC₅₀ of 25 nM (Scheme 5.14) [19]. In addition to its fascinating biological properties as a candidate for a new anticancer drug, aleutianamine possesses a highly complicated seven-membered ring system containing a tertiary sulfide moiety, which was elucidated through extensive spectroscopic analysis combined with computational studies [19]. Regarding the biosynthetic hypothesis of aleutianamine, Hamann and co-workers proposed two routes [19]. Route A involves the oxidation of the phenolic moiety makaluvamine F to quinone methide I, followed by the intramolecular Michael addition of the enamine moiety to quinone methide to form hexacyclic intermediate II. Then, C3–N18 bond formation gives intermediate III and finally...
Scheme 5.14 Proposed biosynthetic pathway for aleutianamine

reduction of \(N'O\)-acetal to provide aleutianamine. Route B involves the skeletal rearrangement of discorhabdin B to provide intermediate II, followed by the generation of \(N, O\)-acetal III and subsequent reduction to yield aleutianamine.

During synthetic studies on the transformation of \(N\)-Ts-discorhandin B (34) to 3-dihydrodiscorhabdin [65], we found a similar skeletal rearrangement that involved in Route B, which allowed us to establish the first asymmetric total synthesis of aleutianamine. Thus, to establish the total synthesis of 3-dihydrodiscorhabdin via the reduction of the C3 ketone of 34, we examined various 1,2-reductions. Among them, we found that Luche reduction [66] promoted the chemoselective 1,2-reduction of the C3 ketone to form diallyl alcohol 56 (Scheme 5.15a). However, 56 was too unstable to isolate and was spontaneously converted into a structurally unidentified product during the purification process using reverse-phase HPLC (0.1% TFA in MeCN/H\(_2\)O). Surprisingly, extensive NMR studies revealed that the structure of the unidentified product was \(N\)-Ts-aleutianamine (57). Finally, the Ts group of 56 was removed by treatment with NaOMe in THF/MeOH, completing the first total synthesis of (−)-aleutianamine [19, 43].

A plausible reaction mechanism for the rearrangement of 56–57 is depicted in Scheme 5.15b [67]. Under the acidic conditions of HPLC purification, the C3 secondary alcohol of 56 was protonated to promote the dehydration reaction to generate diallyl cation species II, which then underwent skeletal rearrangement via an intercept of the allyl cation moiety with enamine to form fused cyclopropane III, followed by ring opening of the cyclopropane ring to generate a sulfur-bridged azepine derivative IV. Finally, a C3–N18 bond formed to furnish \(N\)-Ts-aleutianamine (57).

A few months after the disclosure of our asymmetric total synthesis of (−)-aleutianamine, Stoltz and co-workers also accomplished a racemic total synthesis of aleutianamine using a completely different synthetic approach involving an
Scheme 5.15  Total syntheses of aleutianamine by the Tokuyama and Stoltz groups
elegant intramolecular Heck-type reaction (Scheme 5.15c) [44]. They constructed densely fused indole scaffold 59 with a tertiary sulfide at the C5 position through a Pd-catalyzed dearomative intramolecular Heck-type reaction of bromopyrroloiminoquinone 58 with 2-amino tetrahydrobenzo thiophene segment. The racemic total synthesis of aleutianamine was then achieved via the introduction of a Br group at the C2 position, oxidative pyrrolo iminoquinone formation, and N,S-acetal formation.

5.8 Conclusion

We have accomplished total syntheses of a series of discorhabdin alkaloids including (+)-discorhabdin B, (–)-H, (+)-K, and (–)-aleutianamine based on the development of the substrate-controlled diastereoselective spirocyclization using chiral thioester and CuBr₂-catalyzed late-stage oxidative N,S-acetalization as two key processes. Establishment of these syntheses would pave the way to divergent synthesis of all different classes of discorhabdins including hitherto not synthesized Class 2 and Class 4 congeners. Furthermore, successful syntheses should be helpful to understand biosynthesis of discorhabdin congeners including the unique skeletal rearranged congener, aleutianamine.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 6
Convergent Total Synthesis of Hikizimycin: Development of New Radical-Based and Protective Group Strategies

Haruka Fujino and Masayuki Inoue

Abstract Hikizimycin (1) is an architecturally complex nucleoside antibiotic with potent anthelmintic and antibacterial activities. Its unique 4-amino-4-deoxyundecose core (hikosamine) includes a C1–C11 linear chain with ten contiguous stereocenters flanked with nucleobase (cytosine) and 3-amino-3-deoxyglucose (kanosamine) at the C1 and C6O positions, respectively. These structural features make its chemical construction exceptionally challenging. This chapter describes our successful efforts leading to convergent total synthesis of 1 from three hexose derivatives (5b, 11-β, and 12) and bis-TMS-cytosine 6. First, efficient one-step construction of hikosamine core 7-α was achieved by devising a novel radical coupling reaction between α-alkoxy telluride 10d-α and aldehyde 8c, which were derivatized from 11-β and 12, respectively. At this stage, the importance of the specific protective group pattern of 10d-α and 8c was revealed for stereoselective C5(sp3)–C6(sp3) coupling. By taking advantage of strategically introduced protective groups, 6 and 5b were regio- and stereoselectively installed on 7-α to produce protected hikizimycin 36b. Finally, the three amino and ten hydroxy groups of 36b were detached in a single step to furnish 1. Consequently, the newly developed radical-based and protective group strategies allowed us to achieve total synthesis of 1 from 11-β in 17 steps.

Keywords Convergent synthesis · Natural products · Nucleoside antibiotics · Protective groups · Radicals · Total synthesis
6.1 Introduction

Hikizimycin (1, also known as anthelmycin, Scheme 6.1), a highly oxygenated nucleoside natural product isolated from *Streptomyces A-5* and *Streptomyces longisimius* [1, 2], displays potent anthelmintic activity against various common parasites and modest antibacterial properties. These biological activities originate from its inhibitory effects against pro- and eukaryotic ribosomal peptidyl transferase, which is essential for protein biosynthesis [3, 4]. Many nucleoside antibiotics are known to have a wide range of pharmacologically useful biological activities [5–8], suggesting that 1 may serve as a promising drug lead in the development of therapeutic agents [9–12].

The unique 4-amino-4-deoxyundecose sugar (hikosamine) of 1 contains one amino and ten hydroxy groups on its C1–C11 linear carbon chain [13]. Nucleobase (cytosine) and 3-amino-3-deoxyglucose (kanosamine) are appended to the hikosamine structure at the C1 and C6O positions, respectively, through glycosidic linkages [14, 15]. The densely functionalized C(sp³)-rich structure of 1 with its

![Scheme 6.1 Structure of hikizimycin (1), Schreiber and Ikemoto’s total synthesis, and our synthetic plan](image-url)
multiple stereocenters significantly heightens the synthetic challenge, which has been tackled by many research groups over the last half-century since its first isolation. Specifically, two major problems arise in the synthesis of 1: (1) stereoselective introduction of the ten contiguous stereocenters of the hikosamine structure and (2) site- and stereoselective attachment of the cytosine and kanosamine moieties to hikosamine. The first problem was solved by Secrist and Barnes \[16\], Danishefsky and Maring \[17, 18\], and Fürstner and Wuchrer \[19\], as well as by our group \[20\], culminating in four distinct syntheses of the hikosamine structure. However, none of these approaches addresses the second problem to complete the total synthesis of 1, thereby highlighting the associated difficulties. The second problem requires differentiation of the C6O group from the surrounding oxygen functionalities in order to attach kanosamine and activation of the C1 anomeric position in order to introduce cytosine. Schreiber and Ikemoto accomplished the first total synthesis of 1 by designing a differentially protected hikosamine intermediate \[21, 22\]. Remarkably, the team exploited the latent C_2-symmetry embedded in the hikosamine structure, using pairwise functionalizations via iterative C–C and C–O bond formations to achieve total synthesis of 1 from L-diisopropyl tartrate (3) in 27 steps.

In 2020, we reported the convergent total synthesis of 1 from bis-TMS-cytosine (6) and three hexose derivatives (5, 11, and 12) \[23\]. We selected starting materials with preinstalled oxygen functional groups \[24, 25\] and increased the molecular complexity upon single coupling reaction \[26–28\], thereby minimizing the number of functional group manipulations and drastically shortening the synthetic route to 1 (longest linear sequence: 17 steps). To directly couple densely functionalized fragments derived from two hexoses 11 and 12, we devised a novel radical addition to an aldehyde \[23, 29, 30\]. We found that the specific protective group pattern of the synthetic intermediates facilitated key radical coupling in a stereoselective manner while also securing regio- and stereoselective introduction of the cytosine and kanosamine moieties. In this chapter, we detail the development of the radical-based and protective group strategies that enabled the total synthesis of 1. Interested readers can consult our review of total syntheses of hikosamine and 1 from our and other groups \[31\].

### 6.2 Synthetic Plan for Hikizimycin

We planned to assemble hikizimycin (1) from three components: bis-TMS-cytosine 6, kanosamine derivative 5, and differentially protected hikosamine 7-α (Scheme 6.1). The C1 acetal carbon center and C6 oxygen atom of 7-α were discriminated from other hetero functionalities to allow for selective appending of 6 and 5 by the two glycosylation reactions. In these reactions, neighboring participation from the proximal C2O and C13O benzoyl groups of 7-α and 5 would control the stereochemistry of the C1 and C12 positions. In principle, C6 alcohol 7-α would be directly coupled by an anionic reaction between anion A and aldehyde 8 or by a radical reaction
between radical B and 8 [32]. The β-elimination propensity of the C4 nitrogen functional group from anion A and presence of electrophilic ester groups impeded us from adopting the anion-based approach [33]. Hence, we selected the radical-based approach [34].

Radical reactions serve as powerful tools for forging congested C(sp³)–C(sp³) bonds without affecting diverse oxygen and nitrogen functionalities. Therefore, they have been extensively utilized in the total synthesis of densely functionalized C(sp³)-rich natural products [28, 35–40]. We previously developed a decarbonylative radical reaction of α-alkoxyacyl telluride under Et₃B/O₂-mediated conditions and incorporated this powerful reaction into the synthesis of diverse densely oxygenated natural products [41, 42].

To date, intermolecular radical coupling reactions with aldehydes have been underexplored [43–45]. We recently realized Et₃B/O₂-mediated coupling between α-alkoxyacyl telluride 13 and aldehyde 14 [23] (Scheme 6.2). The reaction mechanism responsible for this unusual coupling was rationalized as follows. First, an Et radical was produced from Et₃B and O₂ [46], leading to C–Te bond cleavage, formation of acyl radical C, and decarbonylation to generate α-alkoxy radical D [47–49]. The polarity-matched intermolecular coupling between nucleophilic radical D and electrophilic aldehyde 14 was a fast but endergonic process [50, 51], generating oxyl radical E, which was higher in energy than D and generally underwent β-scission to readily reverse the process. However, the present reaction system overrode this energetically unfavorable step by capturing unstable E with Et₃B to afford stable borinate F, the hydrolysis of which led to alcohol 16 in 40% yield. Consequently, Et₃B played two important roles in this transformation: initiating and terminating the radical reaction. The unwanted compound 15 (47%) was also generated presumably through direct hydrogen atom abstraction by D [52]. The formation of D was suppressed by the addition of Lewis acid BF₃·OEt₂ to afford 16 (46%) and 15 (23%) [53].

![Scheme 6.2](image-url)
This outcome prompted us to select the Et$_3$B/O$_2$ reagent system and α-alkoxyacyl telluride 10 as a precursor of radical B (Scheme 6.1). The C5 and C6 stereochemistries of 7-α needed to be controlled in the coupling reaction with 8. We envisioned to install the requisite stereocenters through strategic placement of the protective groups (PGs) of both 8 and 10 [20, 42]. To enable this challenging task, we decided to specify the appropriate protective group patterns by screening the substrates. Compounds 8 and 10 would be prepared from D-mannose (12) and D-galactose derivative 11, respectively, which together carried the six stereocenters of 1 (C2, C3, C7, C8, C9, and C10). Maximum use of the intrinsic chiralities of the two hexoses would streamline the route to 1 [24, 25]. Overall, our strategy was designed to maximize convergency and minimize the number of functional group transformations toward 1.

6.3 Protective Group Optimization of Aldehyde 8

We set out to optimize the protective groups of the right-half aldehyde 8 using readily available 13 [54] as a model acyl telluride (Table 6.1). In doing so, penta-benzoate 8a and bis-acetonide 8b were prepared and submitted to Et$_3$B/O$_2$-mediated radical reactions. The radical coupling reaction between 13 and 8a afforded the mixture of C6 alcohol 17a and C7 alcohol 18, which was generated via 1,2-benzoyl migration from 17a (entry 1). Despite the modest yield (17a: 36% and 18: 5.5%) and low C6 diastereoselectivity (α/β = 1:1.1 for 17a), a densely oxygenated carbon chain with nine consecutive stereogenic centers was notably generated by this single transformation. The yield and C6 stereoselectivity were improved by altering the substrate from 8a to 8b (entry 2). Submission of 13 and 8b to Et$_3$B and air at $-30\,^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ produced a 2.1:1 diastereomeric mixture of 17b in 66% yield. In contrast to coupling of the simple aldehyde 14 (Scheme 6.2), the addition of BF$_3\cdot$OEt$_2$ to aldehyde 8b had a negative effect on the reaction efficiency and the yield of 17b was negligible (2.5%), presumably due to the acid-labile protective groups of 8 and 17b. Hence, neutral conditions omitting Lewis acids were to be applied for the total synthesis of 1.

The model radical reactions shown in Table 6.1 simultaneously installed C5 and C6 stereocenters. The stereochemical outcomes were attributable to the three-dimensional (3D) shapes of the radical donor (13) and acceptors (8a/8b) with the protective groups (Scheme 6.3). C–C bond formation proceeded from the convex face of the acetonide-protected 5/5-cis-fused ring system of α-alkoxy radical D, thereby establishing the C5 stereocenter [54]. Meanwhile, introduction of the C6 stereogenic center was attributed to the preferred conformations of acceptors 8a and 8b. The Felkin–Ahn transition states 8a-α and 8a-β were energetically similar, and both accepted the radical to lead to comparable amounts of C6 diastereomers 17a-α and 17a-β. In contrast, severe steric interaction occurred with transition state 8b-β between D and the methyl group of the 6/6-cis-fused ring system (highlighted in


Table 6.1  Intermolecular radical coupling of $\alpha$-alkoxy carbon radicals with the right-half aldehyde 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>entry 1</th>
<th>entry 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$17a$ (36%, $\alpha/\beta = 1.1:1$) + $18$ (5.5%)</td>
<td>$17b$ (66%, $\alpha/\beta = 2.1:1$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$17b$ (2.5%, $\alpha/\beta = n/d$)</td>
<td>$17b$ (2.5%, $\alpha/\beta = n/d$)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$C6 stereochemistry of 18 was not determined
$^b$BF$_3\cdot$OEt$_2$ (0.3 equiv) was added

Scheme 6.3  Rationale for the stereochemical outcomes of the coupling reactions between radical D and aldehydes 8a/8b

gray), resulting in higher energy than 8b-$\alpha$, which led to the requisite C6$\alpha$ stereochemistry. Therefore, the unique 3D structure of 8b forced by the two acetonide groups was likely to induce the desired C6$\alpha$ selectivity of 17b-$\alpha$.

6.4 Protective Group Optimization of Acyl Telluride 10

Next, we systematically altered the structure of the left-half acyl telluride 10 to attain the requisite C5 stereochemistry upon radical reaction. Namely, four substrates, 10a-$\alpha$, 10b-$\alpha$, 10b-$\beta$, and 10c-$\beta$, possessing distinct C4-substituted nitrogen functionalities (trifluoroacetamide, phthalimide, and azide) and different C1 stereochemistries were prepared as radical precursors (Scheme 6.4). To investigate C5 stereoselectivity,
methyl vinyl ketone \((19)\) was employed as an acceptor \([54]\). When C4 trifluoroacetamide \(10a-\alpha\) with C1\(\alpha\) stereochemistry was utilized in the presence of Et3B in air, only the undesired C5\(\beta\) stereoisomer \(20a-\alpha\) was produced (Scheme 6.4a). Simply altering the C4 substituent from the trifluoroacetamide of \(10a-\alpha\) to the phthalimide of \(10b-\beta\) exclusively generated the desired C5\(\alpha\) stereoisomer \(21b-\alpha\) in high yield (76%, Scheme 6.4b) \([20]\). Intriguingly, the C1 stereochemistry affected the reaction efficiency and stereoselectivity. The reaction of C1 epimeric C4 phthalimide \(10b-\beta\) provided the desired adduct \(21b-\beta\) (25%) along with ketone \(22b-\beta\) (38%), generated through direct addition of the acyl radical intermediate (Scheme 6.4c). The application of C4 azide \(10c-\beta\) with the C1\(\beta\) stereocenter resulted in the formation of ketone \(22c-\beta\) (30%) and radical elimination of the azide group to produce 3,4-dihydro-2\(\text{H}\)-pyran \(23c-\beta\) (58%) \([55, 56]\) (Scheme 6.4d). Accordingly, we selected \(10b-\alpha\) as the optimal radical donor for the total synthesis of \(1\).

These disparate radical reaction results can be rationalized by analyzing the 3D shapes of the radical intermediates (Scheme 6.5). First, Et3B/O2-induced homolysis of the weak C–Te bonds of \(10a-\alpha/10b-\alpha/10b-\beta\) gave rise to acyl radicals with chair conformations \(Ga-\alpha'/Gb-\alpha'/Gb-\beta'\) and equilibrating boat conformations \(Ga-\alpha/Gb-\alpha/Gb-\beta\). In the case of the C1\(\alpha\) isomers, boat forms \(Ga-\alpha\) and \(Gb-\alpha\) had stabilizing secondary orbital interactions between the C5–CO \(\sigma^*\)-orbital and the antiperiplanar

![Scheme 6.4 Decarbonylative radical coupling of the left-half glucosamine-derived \(\alpha\)-alkoxyacyl telluride \(10\) with distinct C4N protective group and C1 stereochemistry](image.png)
oxygen lone pair and were thus more energetically preferred over Ga-α and Gb-α (Scheme 6.5a, b). The same orbital interaction between the C5–CO σ*-orbital and the oxygen lone pair also facilitated C5–CO scission via decarbonylation to generate α-alkoxy C5 radicals Ba-α and Bb-α [47–49]. The boat conformations of Ba-α and Bb-α were stabilized because the C5 radical interacted with the parallel oxygen lone pair and C4–N σ*-orbital [57, 58]. Enone 19 approached the upper face of Ba-α with the assistance of an intermolecular hydrogen bond between the C4 trifluoroacetamide of Ba-α and the carbonyl group of 19 to establish the unwanted C5β stereochemistry of 20a-α [59] (Scheme 6.5a). In contrast, the bulky C4 phthalimide of Bb-α shielded the top face of Bb-α, forcing coupling with 19 from the opposite face to establish the desired C5α stereocenter of 21b-α (Scheme 6.5b). Alternatively, acyl radical Gb-β with C1β stereochemistry was an unstable conformer due to steric repulsion between the C1 methoxy and C4 phthalimide substituents (Scheme 6.5c). The preferable chair conformer Gb-β’ lacked the parallel relationship between the C5–CO σ*-bond and the oxygen lone pair. Due to slow C5–CO cleavage, decarbonylation toward C5 radical Bb-β competed with direct interception of Gb-β’ with 19, providing a mixture of 21b-β and ketone 22b-β. Thus, the C1α stereochemistry of 10b-α contributed to accelerate α-alkoxy C5 radical formation and stabilize the boat conformation, while the C4 phthalimide group controlled the desired C5α stereoselectivity.

6.5 Synthesis of Protected Hikizimycin

Having clarified the significance of the C1α methoxy and C4 phthalimide groups of 10b-α and the bis-acetonide structure of 8b in stereoselective radical coupling, we turned our attention to the synthesis of protected hikizimycin 36. In addressing this task, the chemical structures of the radical donor and acceptor needed further modification. To enable C1 cytosine introduction in the last synthetic stage, radical donor 10d-α was designed to have a more activated C1α acetoxy group instead of the C1α methoxy group of 10b-α (Scheme 6.6). Moreover, the tert-butyldiphenylsilyl group of radical acceptor 8b was replaced with the benzoyl group of 8c, which would be removed together with other nucleophile-sensitive protective groups such as the C2O and C3O benzoyl and C4 phthalimide groups.

The left-hand fragment 10d-α was prepared from commercially available d-galactose derivative 11-β in nine steps (Scheme 6.6). First, benzylation of triol 11-β protected the equatorial C2 and C3 alcohols and left the axial C4 alcohol untouched to afford bis-benzoate 24. Triflation of alcohol 24 and subsequent C4 stereo-inversion using KNPhth installed the C4 phthalimide group of 25. Acidic treatment of 25 with Ac2O exchanged the methyl and trityl groups with acetyl groups, producing a 1:8.3 mixture of 26-α and 26-β. The obtained C1 diastereomeric mixture was subjected to MeOCHCl2 and ZnCl2 [60] to introduce the β-oriented chloride of 27. Hg(OAc)2 in AcOH then promoted replacement of the C1β chloride of 27 with the equatorial C1α acetoxy group of 26-α [61]. Site-selective i-Bu2AlH reduction of the least-hindered
C6 acetoxy group of 26-α and subsequent AZADOL-catalyzed oxidation of the liberated primary alcohol of 28 furnished carboxylic acid 29 [62]. The requisite radical donor 10d-α was derivatized from 29 in a one-pot procedure through activation of the ester, followed by addition of i-Bu₂AlTePh derived in situ from (PhTe)_2 and i-Bu₂AlH [63].

The right-hand fragment 8c was prepared from d-mannose (12) in six steps. The known three-step sequence converted 12 to dithioacetal 30 [64]. The TBDPS group of 30 was detached using TBAF to generate the primary alcohol, which was benzyolated with BzCl and pyridine to form benzoate 31. The dithioacetal of 31 was in turn hydrolyzed by the action of mercury salts, giving rise to aldehyde 8c.

Next, we turned our attention to the unprecedented and challenging radical coupling of the two densely oxygenated fragments 10d-α and 8c (Scheme 6.7), which involved individual optimization of many parameters, such as reagent amounts, order
of reagent addition, method of oxygen addition, concentration, and temperature. Ultimately, 7-α and the minor C6 epimer 7-β were obtained in 65% combined yield (7-α/7-β = 2.2:1) when air was slowly introduced into a mixture of α-alkoxyacyl telluride 10d-α (1.0 equiv), aldehyde 8c (3.0 equiv), and Et₃B (5.0 equiv) in CH₂Cl₂ (0.1 M) at −30 °C. Hence, the desired 7-α with its ten contiguous stereocenters was constructed by forging the hindered C(sp³)–C(sp³) bond under simple and mild conditions with C5 and C6 stereoselectivities. The observed C5 and C6 stereochemical outcomes were in accordance with those of the aforementioned preliminary investigations (Sects. 6.3 and 6.4).

C6 alcohol 7-α was then elaborated into protected hikizimycin 36 through stepwise attachment of bis-TMS-cytosine 6 and kanosamine derivative 5. Prior to these two glycosylation reactions, the protective groups of 7-α were manipulated in the ensuing three steps. First, the C6 alcohol was capped as the benzyl ether by the action of N-phenyl-2,2,2-trifluoroacetimidate and catalytic TfOH, yielding 32 [65]. Second, the two acid-labile acetonide groups of 32 were detached using BF₃·OEt₂ and 1,3-propane dithiol without damaging the potentially reactive C1 acetal structure [66]. Third, the resultant tetraol was peracetylated to produce pentaacetate 33. C1α acetate 33 and bis-TMS-cytosine 5 were subjected to TMSOTf to produce C1α benzoyl cytosine 34 as a single isomer after in situ N-benzyolation. Complete C1α stereoselectivity was attributable to neighboring participation of the β-oriented C2O benzoyl group to form the stabilized intermediate H.
To prepare for the second glycosylation, the C6 hydroxy group of 35 was liberated in a site-selective manner by DDQ-induced oxidation of the C6O benzyl group of 34. Then, we investigated the reactivity of the differentially N-protected glycosyl donors 5a and 5b [67]. Treatment of C14 phthalimide 5a with TMSOTf in the presence of 35 merely led to decomposition. In contrast, TMSOTf-promoted glycosylation of 35 with C4 azide 5b smoothly afforded protected hikizimycin 36b with the C12β kanosamine moiety as the major isomer (36b/12-epi-36b = 1.8:1) [68]. The requisite C12β stereoselectivity would be controlled by neighboring participation of the α-oriented C13O benzoyl group, while the different reactivities of 5a and 5b were explained by the boat-like 3D structures of cationic intermediates Ia and Ib, respectively. Whereas the axially oriented bulky phthalimide of Ia impeded intermolecular attack of 35, the smaller azide group of Ib accepted hindered C6 secondary alcohol 35 upon glycosylation. Therefore, the requisite C1α–N and C12β–O glycosidic bonds were stereoselectively constructed via the strategically placed protective groups.
6.6 Total Synthesis of Hikizimycin

The last task of the total synthesis of hikizimycin (1) from 36b was removal of the seven benzoyl, four acetyl, and one phthaloyl groups and hydrogenolysis of the C14 azide moiety. Because of the nucleophilic and electrophilic sites of the highly complex structure of 36b, the reaction order and conditions needed to be carefully tuned. Our preliminary model experiment revealed sluggish hydrogenolysis of the sterically cumbersome C4 azide of des-cytosine derivative 37 (Scheme 6.8). Even when C4 amine was generated, the nucleophilic nitrogen atom of 38 attacked the C=O bond of the proximal benzoyl group to induce 1,2-benzoyl migration, generating N-benzoylated products 39 and 40. The resistance of the amide bonds of 39 and 40 to basic hydrolysis required suppression of ester–amide exchange. This reaction indicated that removal of all acyl protective groups must precede azide hydrogenolysis.

Next, we investigated simultaneous hydrolysis of multiple acyl groups of 36b (Scheme 6.9a). When n-Bu₄NOH was employed, the seven benzoyl and four acetyl groups were completely removed from 36b, but phthalimide hydrolysis only partially afforded phthalamic acid 41 in 96% yield after HPLC purification. To avoid unwanted hydrogenation of the cytosine ring, a Lindlar catalyst was utilized for the subsequent hydrogenolysis of azide 41, leading to amine 42. The remaining phthalamic acid of 42 was detached using a large excess amount of ethylenediamine in refluxing t-BuOH (boiling point: 82 °C) [69]. These harsh conditions of the last reaction caused partial decomposition of the electrophilic cytosine moiety, leading to pure hikizimycin (1) only being obtained in low yield from 41 (21% over two steps) after the crude mixture was purified with HPLC.

To develop a more efficient protocol, the phthalimide needed to be converted to the corresponding amine during the first hydrolysis step. Ultimately, we established a one-pot procedure to generate 1 (Scheme 6.9b). n-BuNH₂ was expected to detach the phthaloyl group of 36b via the formation of phthalamic acid, following facile 5-exo cyclization of 43, with N-butyl phthalimide expelled [70]. Indeed, the addition of n-BuNH₂ to refluxing MeOH (boiling point: 65 °C) removed all 12 protective groups to form primary amine 44. In the same pot, reduction of the C14 azide substituent

Scheme 6.8 Azide hydrogenolysis of des-cytosine model compound 37
Scheme 6.9  

a. Three-pot protocol for converting protected hikizimycin 36b to hikizimycin (1).
b. One-pot protocol for converting protected hikizimycin 36b to hikizimycin (1)
of 44 was realized under an H2 atmosphere in H2O in the presence of the Lindlar catalyst. This optimized protocol improved reaction efficiency and delivered 1 from 36b in 50% yield after HPLC purification. Thus, the total synthesis of 1 from 11-β was completed in 17 steps.

6.7 Conclusion

In summary, we accomplished highly efficient total synthesis of hikizimycin (1) from 11-β (longest linear sequence: 17 steps). The exceptionally complex structure of 1 was constructed from three hexose derivatives and one cytosine structure (5b, 6, 11-β, and 12), without extra carbon extension or oxygen atom introduction. The radical-based and protective group strategies were specifically devised to enable the present novel convergent route to 1. First, highly oxygenated α-alkoxyacyl telluride 10d-α and aldehyde 8c were derivatized from hexose structures 11-β and 12, respectively, and then combined under newly developed Et3B/O2-mediated conditions for radical addition to the aldehyde. The mild, yet robust reaction linked two hindered trisubstituted carbons and installed the desired C5α and C6α stereocenters, thereby assembling the protected hikosamine structure 7-α with ten contiguous stereocenters. Notably, these stereochemical outcomes were controlled by the strategically placed C4 phthalimide and bis-acetonide groups. Subsequently, the cysteine moiety and kanosamine with the small C14 azide were attached by two TMSOTf-promoted reactions in a C1 and C12 stereoselective manner. Remarkably, the proximal benzoyl groups stereoselectively forged the C1α and C12β glycosidic bonds. Lastly, protected hikizimycin 36b was achieved in a one-pot by the removal of the 12 acyl protective groups and reduction of the one azide functionality, affording 1.

The present data corroborate the importance of radical coupling reactions for convergent assembly of two densely oxygenated fragments and the significance of strategically placed protective groups for precise control of reactivity and stereo- and site-selectivity. It is our hope that further application and improvement of the radical-based convergent synthetic approach will benefit advances in both chemical and pharmaceutical sciences.

Acknowledgements We gratefully acknowledge an inspiring and dedicated group of past and present coworkers, the names and contributions of whom appear in the cited references. This research was financially supported by JSPS with Grants-in-Aid for Scientific Research (S) (JP17H06110 and JP22H04970) to M.I. and for Early Career Scientists (JP21K14745 and JP23K13740) to H.F.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 7
A Chemo-enzymatic Approach for the Rapid Assembly of Tetrahydroisoquinoline Alkaloids and Their Analogs

Ryo Tanifuji and Hiroki Oguri

Abstract  The utilization of enzymes that catalyze sequential reactions to construct highly functionalized skeletons in a single step could expedite the total synthesis of natural products and allow more precise control of chemo-, regio-, stereo- and enantio-selectivity while minimizing the use of protecting groups. In this chapter, we describe the development of a chemo-enzymatic hybrid synthetic process for a series of complex antitumor natural products, the bis-tetrahydroisoquinoline (THIQ) alkaloids. The approach integrates the precise chemical synthesis of hypothetical biosynthetic intermediates with an enzymatic one-pot conversion to assemble the intricate pentacyclic scaffold, enabling the efficient total synthesis of saframycin A, jorunnamycin A, and N-protected saframycin Y3. We exploited synthetic substrate analogs to implement a versatile chemo-enzymatic synthetic approach to generate variants of THIQ alkaloids, by systematic modification of the substituents and functional groups. Subsequent chemical manipulation allowed the expeditious total synthesis of THIQ alkaloids. Section 7.2 discusses the biosynthesis of THIQ alkaloids, while Sect. 7.3 shifts the focus to chemo-enzymatic hybrid synthesis. Section 7.3.1 examines the impact of long-chain fatty acid side chains on enzymatic conversions by SfmC. In Sect. 7.3.2, the conversion efficiencies of substrates with ester or allyl carbamate linkages replacing amide bonds are sequentially addressed. Sections 7.3.3 and 7.3.4 delve into the chemo-enzymatic total synthesis of THIQ alkaloids. Finally, Sect. 7.3.5 discusses prospective expansion of the substrate scope for broader synthetic applications.

Keywords  Tetrahydroisoquinoline alkaloids · Chemo-enzymatic synthesis · Non-ribosomal peptide synthetase · Antitumor activities · Synthetic substrates
7.1 Introduction

Chemical and biological synthetic approaches for producing natural products with complex structures and intriguing biological properties have largely progressed as separate fields, each aiming to efficiently access the target compounds [1–4]. Both approaches have distinct advantages and challenges, with limited exploration of their combined potential for the total synthesis of natural products and their analogues. Several robust enzymes, such as lipases and alcohol dehydrogenases, have traditionally been employed for optical resolution and enantioselective reduction [5–7]. Recent advances in gene analysis, gene synthesis, and genetic databases have propelled late-stage functionalization using enzymes such as P450s for site- and stereoselective oxidation of natural product scaffolds [8]. Concurrently, non-natural reactions through directed evolution techniques have progressed rapidly [9]. The complex skeletons of natural products are constructed by enzymes, typically non-ribosomal peptide synthetases, polyketide synthases, and terpene cyclases. However, the generally large size and unfavorable physical characteristics of these enzymes make them challenging to manipulate, even using current heterologous expression techniques, resulting in their infrequent use in synthetic applications.

Fig. 7.1 The THIQ alkaloidal family and a synthetic derivative (6)
The bis-tetrahydroisoquinoline (THIQ) alkaloids, which include saframycins (1), safracins (2), jorunnamycins (3), and renieramycins (4), are important families of antitumor antibiotics [10] (Fig. 7.1). These natural products are characterized by a complex, densely functionalized pentacyclic framework constructed by non-ribosomal peptide synthetases (NRPS) that can alkylate DNA via electrophilic iminium species generated from an aminonitrile or a hemiaminal group at C21 [11–15]. Representative THIQ alkaloid ecteinascidin 743 (5) which has a macro lactone and an additional THIQ system shows exceptional antitumor activity. It has been approved for treating ovarian neoplasms and sarcoma [16]. Additionally, in 2020, the U.S. FDA sanctioned the use of a semi-synthetic compound, lurbinectedin (6), to treat small cell lung cancer [17, 18]. This semi-synthetic analog is distinguished by its spiro-fused β-tetrahydrocarboline unit, which replaces the THIQ unit of the macrolactone of 5. These anticancer agents are prepared semi-synthetically in more than 20 chemical steps from fermentation-derived cyanosafracin B (2) [19, 20]. The significant therapeutic potential of these alkaloids, coupled with increasing demand for their synthetic production, highlights the importance of the THIQ scaffold as a key target for both chemical synthesis and engineered biosynthesis [21, 22].

7.2 Biosynthetic Machinery of THIQ Alkaloids

The biosynthesis of saframycin A (1) involves the modification of L-tyrosine to generate 7, catalyzed by SfmD/M2/M3, followed by construction of a complex pentacyclic bis-THIQ scaffold originating from L-Ala, Gly, and two molecules of 7 [11, 23, 24] (Fig. 7.2). This latter process is orchestrated by three modules of non-ribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS), SfmA–C, which assemble the amino acids and a fatty acid [12, 13]. This biosynthetic assembly line for 1 is characterized by three distinct phases. First, the incorporation and subsequent removal of a fatty acid moiety are involved in both the pre- and post-assembly stages of the pentacyclic scaffold. Second, the unique PS domain responsible for the Pictet–Spengler (PS) reaction in the N-terminal of SfmC plays an important role in forming the THIQ rings, replacing the typical peptide condensation reaction commonly observed in the NRPS machinery. Lastly, the Red domain is crucial for reducing three thioesters tethered on the PCP (peptidyl carrier protein) domain to release the resultant aldehyde intermediates. This SfmC module is pivotal to the process, enabling the sequential assembly of two tyrosine-derived molecules with two aldehyde intermediates generated by reduction of their corresponding thioesters.

Even though saframycin A (1) lacks fatty acyl chains, the SfmA–C-catalyzed biosynthetic process begins by incorporating a long fatty acyl unit, like myristic acid. This step is facilitated by the enzyme SfmA, which contains an acyl ligation (AL) domain. Subsequent amide bond formation with L-Ala and Gly is catalyzed by SfmA and SfmB, respectively, to form an N-myristoyl alanyl-glycidyl thioester, intermediate A (Fig. 7.2). The crucial module in this pathway, SfmC, is equipped with a reduction (Red) domain that uniquely reduces thioester A to aldehyde 8,
Fig. 7.2 Proposed biosynthetic machinery of saframycin A (1)
bypassing traditional amide bond formation. The subsequent imine formation and Pictet–Spengler (PS) reaction of the resultant aldehyde 8 and the primary amine in 7, which is tethered on the PCP domain, yields a bicyclic THIQ thioester B. This PS reaction incorporates an sp³ chiral center at C1 and completes the first stage of reactions facilitated by SfmC. The second stage of the sequential assembly process begins with the Red domain-catalyzed thioester reduction of intermediate B to liberate aldehyde intermediate 9. Reloading of 7 onto the PCP domain followed by PS cyclization forms intermediate C with a stereocenter at C11. Intermediate C is characterized by two THIQ segments connected with adjacent chiral centers (C3 and C11). The final transformation of intermediate C involves thioester reduction to release aldehyde 10, and subsequent spontaneous ring closure through intramolecular nucleophilic addition of the secondary amine. This leads to formation of the penta-cyclic bis-tetrahydroisoquinoline core scaffold 11 containing a hemiaminal group at C21.

The next steps involve N-methylation at the N12 position of the secondary amine 11 and oxidation of two phenol rings on both wings (ring-A and E), leading to bis-quinone 12 [25]. Biosynthetic intermediate 12 then undergoes further modification by SfmE, a membrane-bound peptidase, which liberates the fatty acid moiety from the side chain at C1 [26]. The primary amine 13 is then secreted by transmembrane efflux protein SfmG. The final stages include oxidative deamination catalyzed by SfmCy2, the FAD-binding oxidoreductase, in extracellular region that installs a carbonyl group at the C25 position, thus producing saframycin S (14) [26]. Saframycin A (1) is then obtained through the cyanation of saframycin S using KCN.

The biosynthesis of saframycins, which uniquely involves the incorporation and subsequent removal of long fatty acyl chain, utilizes a mechanism also found in the NRPS biosynthetic machinery of other relevant THIQ alkaloids such as SF-1739/quinocarcin [27], naphthyridinomycin [28, 29], safracin [30], and ecteinascidin [31, 32]. This process, particularly the installation of fatty acid moieties, is believed to protect the terminal primary amine of the l-Ala component throughout the sequential transformations conducted by three NRPS modules SfmA–C. Furthermore, the enhanced lipophilicity is believed to play several roles. Firstly, it likely prevents the diffusion of aldehyde intermediates (8 and 9) away from the enzymatic machinery. These intermediates are released through the reduction of the corresponding thioesters tethered to PCP domains of SfmB and SfmC. Secondly, the enhanced lipophilicity may play a key role in the substrate recognition at presumably hydrophobic active sites within the SfmB–SfmC protein complexes. The fatty acid moiety on the C1 position also reduces the DNA alkylating capability of the resulting bis-THIQ scaffolds [33]. NRPS machineries responsible for the biosynthesis of saframycin, safracin, and naphthyridinomycin are thus believed to facilitate the production of less toxic prodrugs within cells. These antibiotics are then released into the extracellular space after the fatty acyl chains are cleaved off.
7.3 Integrating SfmC-Catalyzed Enzymatic Processes with Chemical Syntheses: Chemo-enzymatic Total Synthesis of THIQ Alkaloids

7.3.1 Impact of Fatty Acyl Chain Length on SfmC-Catalyzed Enzymatic Conversions

To develop a chemo-enzymatic hybrid process aimed at the total synthesis of THIQ alkaloidal natural products using the unique enzyme SfmC, we initially varied the chain length of fatty acid moiety to assess the effect of the substrate structure on its enzymatic conversion efficiency [12, 15, 34]. A series of peptidyl aldehydes was synthesized, each featuring a hydrophobic acyl chain with a different length. Specifically, we synthesized three kinds of aldehyde substrates, denoted as 15, 8, and 16, each carrying a fatty acid moiety consisting of twelve, fourteen, and sixteen carbon atoms, respectively. The aldehydes were subjected to SfmC-mediated transformations with chemically synthesized tyrosine derivative 7 [35]. To prepare an active holo-form SfmC equipped with a phosphopantetheinyl arm, phosphopantetheinyl transferase Sfp was co-expressed.

We evaluated the conversion rate of the three synthetic substrates, 15, 8, and 16, by comparing the UV absorbance peak areas of corresponding products 17–19 possessing the pentacyclic scaffolds as chromophores. Substrate 8, with a C14 lipophilic chain derived from myristic acid, demonstrated the best conversion efficiency among the tested aldehydes. The relative conversion rates of 15 and 16 bearing C12 and C16 fatty acyl chain, having just two less or two more methylene groups than substrate 8, resulted in markedly lower at 27% and 17%, respectively. These results underscore the critical importance of attaching fatty acyl moieties like myristic acid (C14) in the biosynthetic construction of bis-THIQ scaffolds. Recent gene deletion studies in Pseudomonas fluorescens A2-2 indicated the attachment of palmitic acid (C16) on intermediates is indispensable in the safracin B biosynthetic pathway [30], despite notable differences between the Streptomyces and Pseudomonas species. Our findings to date also underscore the critical importance of attaching fatty acid moieties involving myristic (C14) and palmitic (C16) acid in the NRPS biosynthetic machinery for bis-THIQ scaffolds [12]. Given the substantially hydrophobic character of peptidyl aldehydes, aldehyde substrate analog 8 with a C14 chain was selected as being optimal for maximizing conversion efficiency in subsequent in vitro chemo-enzymatic reactions (Fig. 7.3).
7.3.2 Chemo-enzymatic Transformation of Substrate Analogs with Cleavable Linkages

In our efforts to broaden the range of substrates used and to facilitate additional chemical modifications at the substituent at the C1 position, a series of peptidyl aldehydes (20–22) were designed and chemically synthesized. These aldehydes incorporate a chemically cleavable functional group, including ester or allylic carbamate, substituting the peptide linkage found in the biosynthetic intermediate 8. Although SfmE, a membrane-associated peptidase, selectively hydrolyzes the peptide bond connecting the fatty acid segment [26], it is still challenging to achieve chemoselective cleavage of one of the several peptide bonds in the intricate intermediate 18. We therefore incorporated a chemically cleavable ester or an allylic carbamate moiety, instead...
of the peptide linkage in the biosynthetic intermediate 8 [36]. Although altering amide bonds reduced the efficiency of the SfmC-catalyzed conversions, aldehyde 20 having an ester group close to the aldehyde moiety, nonetheless demonstrated a high conversion rate [34]. This led to the formation of compound 23, with about 55% efficiency as compared with the transformation of 8 to 18. Meanwhile, other synthetic substrates 21 and 22, which involve an ester or an allylic carbamate group substituting the peptide linkage near the fatty acid moiety, were transformed into the pentacyclic scaffolds 24 and 25, each with conversion rates of 14% in comparison to the transformation of 8 into 18. These findings suggest that the two peptide linkages in substrate 8 significantly influence the sequential reactions catalyzed by SfmC, especially the peptide linkage connecting the fatty acid moiety, which appears to be more critical than the peptide bond in the vicinity of the aldehyde moiety (Fig. 7.4).

### 7.3.3 Chemo-enzymatic Total Syntheses of Saframycin A and Jorunnamycin A

The total synthesis of bis-THIQ alkaloids were carried out after establishing the SfmC-catalyzed chemo-enzymatic conversion of substrate analogs bearing cleavable linkers into pentacyclic scaffolds. We first applied the chemo-enzymatic strategy to saframycin A (1), demonstrating the flexibility of this approach to access to various bis-THIQ alkaloids [36] (Fig. 7.5). The methyl ketone moiety at the terminal of 1 was designed to be installed through a simple basic hydrolysis of the ester linkage using substrate analog 21 followed by oxidation of the resulting secondary alcohol. Merging enzymatic sequential assembly of synthetic substrates (21, 7) and chemical installation of an aminonitrile and N-Me group led to the formation of pentacyclic 24 with 13% isolated yield. Due to the instability of the intermediate 26, the extracive work up of 26 was followed immediately by its conversion into stable tertiary amine 24 using 2-picolineborane [37]. While the overall conversion efficiency for 21 was less than half that for 20 in analytical scale, we nonetheless achieved a semi-preparative scale synthesis to obtain 12.2 mg of the desired bis-THIQ core scaffold 24 by repeating the optimal in vitro chemo-enzymatic conversions three times. The combined yield for the pentacyclic 24 at this semi-preparative scale exceeded that achieved at an analytical scale. Unlike conventional multi-step syntheses, this method does not require the isolation of intermediates, significantly reducing the number of labor-intensive steps and enabling rapid production. Basic hydrolysis of 24 removed the fatty acyl chain, producing 27 in 91% yield. Subsequent oxidative conversions, including the Salcomine-mediated conversion of the two phenols followed by Swern oxidation of the resultant secondary hydroxyl group on the C1 side chain, enabled the five-pot chemo-enzymatic total synthesis of saframycin A (1) starting from two simple synthetic substrates, 7 and 21. Compared to the previously reported total
Fig. 7.4 Comparative conversion rates for synthetic substrates (8, 20–22) in SfmC-catalyzed conversions with tyrosine derivative 7, followed by cyanation and N-methylation, to yield the respective bis-THIQ scaffolds (18, 23–25). *Quantitative analysis derived from UV absorbance peak area of the bis-THIQ scaffold chromophores. **Error bars show calculated standard error of the mean (SEM) based on three replicates.

Next, we focused on the expeditious chemo-enzymatic total synthesis of jorunnamycin A [36] (Fig. 7.6, 3). By treatment with SfmC, synthetic substrates 7 and 20 were enzymatically converted to pentacyclic scaffold 29. This intermediate was then subjected to cyanation in a single-pot reaction to form aminonitrile 30. After removing the enzyme through centrifugation, further N-methylation of 30 was achieved using formaldehyde and 2-picolineborane, giving rise to 23 in just 30 min. This chemo-enzymatic process produced the pentacyclic intermediate 23 (6.5 mg) as a yield of 18% in a single day with the precise installation of multiple functional
Chemo-enzymatic total synthesis of saframycin A (1) groups. Subsequent two-pot chemical conversions, including basic hydrolysis of the ester linkage in 23 followed by Salcomine-catalyzed oxidation of two phenols in 31 to their corresponding bis-quinones, allowed the chemo-enzymatic total synthesis of jorunnamycin A (3) using only four reaction vessels, starting from the synthetic substrates 7 and 20. While Zhu, Chen, Stoltz, and Yang previously achieved elegant total synthesis of 3, our chemo-enzymatic method offers an alternative approach to accessing this naturally occurring alkaloid [44–48].
7.3.4 **Chemo-enzymatic Synthesis of N-Fmoc Saframycin Y3**

We further adapted our chemo-enzymatic method to synthesize a variant of saframycin A (1), known as saframycin Y3, which features a free primary amine moiety in its L-Ala unit [36] (Fig. 7.7). To this end, we employed substrate analog 22 possessing an allylic carbamate moiety instead of the amide linkage found in substrate 8. Designed substrate 22 allowed the site-selective removal of the fatty acid moiety under mild conditions while forming the primary amine in the saframycin Y3 structure. Conducting a chemo-enzymatic process in two pots using both 22 and 7 two-times provided more than 12 mg of compound 25 through 32. Efficient palladium-catalyzed scission of the allylic carbamate linker in 25 was achieved using a catalytic amount of Pd(PPh₃)₄ in dichloromethane. Phenylsilane was employed as a reductant for the resulting π-allyl palladium intermediate [49]. We anticipated that Salcomine-catalyzed oxidative conversions of 33 to bis-quinones would enable rapid access to saframycin Y3. However, our attempts to isolate saframycin Y3, which has a primary amine proximal to a quinone ring, were found to be challenging due to its instability. Therefore, the primary amino group was protected prior to oxidation in order to isolate N-Fmoc saframycin Y3 (35). The two-step conversions, including the palladium-catalyzed cleavage of allyl carbamate to remove the acyl chain followed by Fmoc protection, afforded intermediate 34 in 80% yield for the two steps. Subsequent oxidation of phenols in A and E-rings yielded N-Fmoc saframycin Y3 (35) with a yield of 59%. This chemo-enzymatic approach enabled the concise syntheses of 33 and 34, which have lower A-ring oxidation states compared to naturally occurring THIQ alkaloids. Interestingly, synthetic variant 33, lacking the C5 oxygen functional group exhibited higher DNA alkylating ability toward various double stranded DNAs bearing 5'-GGG-3', 5'-GGC-3', 5'-CGG-3', 5'-AGC-3', and 5'-AGT-3' sequences in comparison to the commercially available natural product, cyanosafracin B (2), produced through fermentation of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* [33].

7.3.5 **Chemo-enzymatic Assembly of bis-THIQ Scaffolds Incorporating Diverse Amino Acid Derivatives**

To expand the range of artificial substrates suitable for the established chemo-enzymatic transformations, we explored eight kinds of synthetic substrates [34] (Fig. 7.8a, 36a–h). These synthetic substrates featured a series L- or D-amino acids replacing the L-Ala in the biosynthetic intermediate 8. Analog 36a, which incorporates an L-Leu residue, exhibited the highest enzymatic conversion efficiency, reaching 91% relative to the biosynthetic intermediate 8 despite the increased steric bulk of the isopropyl sidechain in L-Leu than the methyl group in 8. The relative conversion rates for 36b and 36c, containing L-Met and L-Phe, were 33% and 25%, respectively, compared to 8. These experimental results suggested that SfmC can
accommodate additional (methylthio)methyl or phenyl groups on the methyl group in 8.

Conversely, 36d and 36e, which respectively have L-Val and L-Ile, showed diminished conversion efficiencies of 23% and 6%, indicating that branched substituents on the L-Ala side chain in 8 substantially impede enzymatic conversion. While an increase in steric hindrance generally had a detrimental effect, we unexpectedly discovered that SfmC tolerated the installation of L-Pro in place of L-Ala, as evidenced by the modest conversion (12%) of 36f to pentacyclic 37f. Furthermore, SfmC could accommodate the reversal of the stereogenic center: substrates 36g and 36h bearing either a D-Ala or D-Val component, were transformed into the corresponding bis-THIQ scaffolds 37g and 37h, respectively, albeit with lower efficiencies (2% and 13%). Our findings imply that SfmC is somewhat flexible, allowing for the incorporation of amino acids, such as L-Leu, L-Met, or L-Phe, with additional substituents on the methylene moiety adjacent to the alpha carbon of L-Ala. However, changing to L-Val or L-Ile components bearing branched substituents, resulted in a significant drop in conversion efficiency. The feasibility of incorporating L-Pro, D-Ala, and D-Val was also demonstrated, albeit with modest conversion efficiency.

Notably, two-pot semi-preparative scale conversions of 7 and 36b allowed rapid generation of greater than 2 mg of pentacyclic 37b (2.16 mg) by utilizing a synthetic substrate with the replacement of L-Ala with L-Met [34] (Fig. 7.8b). This semi-preparative hybrid synthetic method provides a rapid and convenient means to secure the minimum amount of sample (approximately 1–2 mg) necessary for structural analysis and in vitro assays of novel compounds closely relevant to natural products that are otherwise challenging to access. Therefore, this chemoenzymatic approach offers a rapid synthetic platform for accelerating the discovery of drug leads from natural products and their analogs.
7.4 Conclusion

In this chapter, we paid attention to the NRPS biosynthetic assembly line for artificial biosynthesis of bis-THIQ alkaloids and their analogs. We developed a chemo-enzymatic hybrid process that integrates enzymatic sequential one-pot conversions with the precise chemical synthesis of designed substrates and functional group
manipulation of the products of the enzymatic conversions. We confirmed the previously cryptic roles of long-chain fatty acyl groups, especially the C₁₄-chain, in streamlining the cascade one-pot enzymatic transformations. Furthermore, we demonstrated that SfmC possesses a relatively wide substrate tolerance and can assemble the tyrosine derivative and various synthetic peptidyl aldehydes into the corresponding pentacyclic scaffolds of bis-THIQ alkaloids. Our approach enabled the expeditious total synthesis of saframycin A and jorunnamycin A, demonstrating the effectiveness and flexibility of this chemo-enzymatic hybrid synthetic platform. These relatively unexplored approaches, featuring integration of enzymatic and chemical synthesis, could facilitate further development of hybrid processes to gain rapid, robust, and customizable access to therapeutically valuable natural products-based molecules.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 8
Fluoroarene Strategy in Total Synthesis of Natural Flavonoids

Ken Ohmori and Keisuke Suzuki

Abstract  Vicenin-2, a naturally occurring bis-C-glucosyl flavonoid, was synthesized by exploiting a sequential C-glycoside formation and aromatic nucleophilic substitution (SNAr reaction) of the fluoroarene derivative, i.e., 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene, converting fluorine atoms to oxygen function.

Keywords  C-glycoside · Flavonoid · Fluoroarene · Polyphenol · SNAr reaction

8.1 Introduction

Flavonoids are ubiquitously distributed in the plant kingdom and typically feature a 2-aryl 4H-chromen-4-one that could be expressed as a flavone skeleton [1]. They are frequently found in the form of a C-glycosylated derivative, where the anomeric position is directly connected to the C6 and/or C8 position(s) of a flavone skeleton [2]. Their unique structures and promising biological activities of these compounds make them attractive targets for synthetic chemists aiming to supply valuable, homogeneous samples for bioassays.

Vicenin-2 (1), a bis-C-glycoside of apigenin, was isolated from an annual plant native to Argentina, Urtica circularis [3], and other plant species [4–8] (Fig. 8.1). It has been reported to exhibit a broad spectrum of bioactivities, such as, anti-cancer, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and anti-diabetic effects [9–13].

This compound shares the bis-C-glycosylated flavone skeleton, of which the benzene core (A-ring) is fully substituted by carbon or oxygen atoms.
8.2 Strategic Analysis

8.2.1 Previous Studies

Among many studies focusing on the synthesis of C-glycosides, most have concentrated on the assembly of mono-C-glycosides. As a facile approach to a C-glycosyl flavonoid, the Friedel–Crafts reaction of a glycosyl donor with a phenol derivatives was investigated well [14]. Nevertheless, the synthesis of vicenin-2 and other bis-C-glycosyl flavonoids remains have been underexplored to date. Sato and co-workers explored scandium triflate-promoted bis-C-glycosylation of 2,4,6-trihydroxyacetophenone [15, 16] or naringenin [17] with unprotected monosaccharides, directly yielding the corresponding bis-C-glycosides, albeit in low yields and requiring tedious purification procedures. Furthermore, a late-stage modification by Shie [18], involving tandem C-glycosylation of flavan derivatives, necessitates multiple manipulation steps to complete the synthesis.

8.2.2 Fluoroarene Strategy

In order to achieve a high-yield C-glycoside formation, we focused on a two-step conversion protocol originally developed by Kraus and Molina, converting from a glucono lactone with an aryl anion (Fig. 8.2) [19].
The method performs the nucleophilic addition of an aryl anion to the lactone ring followed by the reductive deoxygenation of the resulting lactol, readily forming an aryl C-glycoside structure. In 1990, Tatsuta applied this method to the synthesis of medermycin and successfully achieved its total synthesis [20].

The question here was whether this method could be applied repeatedly, in particular, for constructing a densely functionalized and sterically hindered multi-substituted benzene unit.

To realize this approach, we came up with an idea to use 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene (2) as a synthetic platform. An alternate latent polarity pattern on the benzene ring (Fig. 8.3) could be considered based on two key reactivities induced by fluorine atoms on a benzene ring (Fig. 8.4): (1) nucleophilic aromatic substitution (S_NAr) by oxygen atom nucleophiles, i.e., alkoxides [21] and (2) electrophilic substitution via lithiation followed by alkylation, where a fluorine atom substituted at the ortho position of the reaction site acts as a strong directing group for ortho-metallation [22–25]. In particular, the pKa value of 2 is ca. 31.5 [26], which is very low compared to common benzene derivatives, therefore allowing for deprotonation easily. We envisioned that combining these methods would enable a facile and regioselective access to multi-functionalized benzene skeleton [27].

An illustrative demonstration of the viability of this synthetic approach is evident in the subsequent experimental findings. In this study, we investigated the stepwise conversion of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene (2) into the hexa-substituted benzene derivative 4 (Fig. 8.5) [28]. The synthesis initiated with S_NAr reaction, replacing one of three fluorine atom. Subsequently, a regioselective ortho-lithiation/sulfur-atom incorporation protocol was executed, yielding 3. The second S_NAr reaction with a nitrogen nucleophile, followed by the step-wise halogenation resulted in the formation of 4,

![Fig. 8.3](image_url) Alternate latent polarity pattern of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene

![Fig. 8.4](image_url) Two characteristic reactivities of a fluoroarene
Fig. 8.5 Step-wise conversion of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene to the hexa-substituted benzene derivative, bearing six different hetero-atom substituents

Notably, this represents the first instance of synthesizing hexa-substituted benzene derivative with six distinct heteroatom substituents.

8.3 Retrosynthesis

Figure 8.6 delineates our synthetic strategy en route to vicenin-2. The C-ring pyrone unit in 1 could be constructed at a late stage by conducting an intramolecular oxidative oxa-Michael addition of the phenol in 1 to the enone moiety. The three oxygen substituents on the benzene ring (A-ring) would be incorporated by substituting fluorine atoms with oxygen-atom nucleophiles via $S_N$Ar reaction. Subsequently, two C-glucosyl units and the coumaroyl unit would be introduced electrophilically via the iterative reaction with aryl anions, generated via ortho-metalation, with the corresponding carbonyl derivatives II and III.

8.4 First C-glycosylation Stage

According to the strategy, our synthesis started with the synthesis of bis-C-glycosylated benzene core. Scheme 8.1 shows the synthesis of the mono-C-glycoside 7 from 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene (2). Upon treatment of 2 with n-BuLi in Et$_2$O (–78 °C, 1 h), the ortho-lithiation proceeded smoothly, and the nucleophilic attack of resulting aryl lithium species to lactone 5 [29] gave the corresponding lactol 6 quantitatively. Subsequent treatment of 6 with Et$_3$SiH in the presence of BF$_3$·OEt$_2$ [30, 31] afforded mono-C-glycoside 7 in high yield with co-production of the corresponding $\alpha$ anomer (10% yield), which could be separated by silica gel column chromatography. It is worth mentioning that when 1,3,5-trimethoxy benzene was employed as an aryl anion precursor instead of 1,3,5-trifluoro benzene, no formation of the desired C-glycosidic
product was observed, and a sizable amount of an unexpected α,β-unsaturated lactone 9 was obtained by β-elimination of benzyl alcohol from 5. This result implies a steric repulsion between the nucleophilic species and the lactone ring in 5.

### 8.5 Second C-glycosylation Stage

Next, we addressed the introduction of the second sugar unit. However, the second deprotonation reaction proved more challenging than the first, presumably due to steric hindrance around the reaction site caused by the buttressing effect of the sugar moiety. The ortho-lithiation of C-glycosyl trifluorobenzene 7 using n-BuLi, followed by the reaction with gluconolactone 5, resulted in only an 18% yield of lactol 10 with a sizable recovery of 6 (81%). Note that the reaction proceeded with partial epimerization at the C2 position.

In pursuit of more suitable deprotonation conditions, we carried out the deuterium incorporation experiment using mono-C-glycosyl trifluoro benzene 7 (Scheme 8.3). Upon treatment of 7 with n-BuLi (1 equiv) at −78 °C in Et₂O (1 h), methanol-\(^d_1\) was added to incorporate a deuterium into the benzene ring. The rate of deuterium
Scheme 8.1 Assembly of mono-C-glycoside

Scheme 8.2 Initial attempt to bis-C-glycosylation

incorporation (D%) was assessed by $^1$H-NMR to be 34% with 95% yield of 7-$d_1$. When $N$, $N$, $N'$, $N'$-tetramethylethylene diamine (TMEDA) was used as an additive (1 equiv), the value of D% was increased to 50%. Using THF instead of Et$_2$O as a solvent, it showed no any noticeable effect. In the end, we found that the use of a more strong base, i.e., $t$-BuLi, led to the optimal incorporation of a deuterium (84%) into 7 with a high yield.
With successfully finding the optimal conditions, we re-examined the reaction of 7 and lactone 5 (Scheme 8.4). The reaction via the ortho-lithiation (Et₂O, –78 °C, 1 h) followed by the nucleophilic attacking to lactone 5 smoothly proceeded to give 10 in 83% yield. Subsequently, the Lewis-acid promoted reduction of lactol 10 yielded C₂-symmetrical bis-β-C-glycoside 11 in high yield (82%).
8.6 Introduction of the Side Chain Unit

Next, we investigated the introduction of the side chain, constructing the fully substituted (hexa-substituted) benzene ring. To evaluate the reactivity, we examined model reactions of bis-C-glycoside 11 with various electrophiles (Fig. 8.7). First, the deuterium incorporation experiment was conducted. Treatment of 11 with t-BuLi (–78 °C, 1 h) followed by adding methanol-d$_1$ resulted in a complete incorporation of deuterium. As a comparison experiment, we also attempted the reaction with ortho-dimethoxybenzene derivative 13, resulting in a poor incorporation of deuterium (15%). Comparing these two results proves that fluorobenzene is particularly effective in generating the corresponding aryl lithium species. We next attempted the reaction of the bis-C-glycosyl trifluorobenzene derivative 11 with various carbon electrophilic units. The use of N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) as an electrophile gave the corresponding aldehyde 12 (R = CHO) in 80% yield, while the reaction with N,N-dimethylacetamide (DMA) led to no reaction. Using acetic anhydride (Ac$_2$O) also showed poor reactivity, recovering 11. In contrast, ethyl acetate as an electrophile gave the acetylated product 12 (R = Ac) in 31% albeit with 50% recovery of the starting material 11. These results suggested that the competitive deprotonation inevitably occurred at a $\alpha$-position of the carbonyl group in the electrophile or the C-acylated product.

Based on these results, we then attempted to react with the $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated amide with the carbon units necessary for the total synthesis of 1 (Scheme 8.5). Pleasingly, generation of the lithiated species from 11 followed by in situ trapping with Weinreb amide 14 [32, 33], which has no acidic $\alpha$-proton of the carbonyl group, led to the acylated product 15 in 80% yield along with a partial recovery of 11 (15%). This reaction serves as an effective approach for building chalcone skeletons that were once accessed primarily by Claisen–Schmidt condensation between benzaldehyde derivatives and acetophenones [34].

8.7 Substitution of Fluorine Atoms to Oxygen Atoms on the Benzene Ring

Having prepared a key synthetic intermediate 15 possessing all the carbon chains necessary for the synthesis of the target natural product, we next investigated S$_N$Ar reactions to replace three fluorine atoms into three oxy-functions (Scheme 8.6). One of the possible ways to achieve this goal is to utilize a conventional S$_N$Ar reaction, in particular, with fluoroarenes that should have an electron-withdrawing substituent at the ortho-position (Eq. 1 in Scheme 8.6) [35]. However, we could demonstrate a similar reaction by employing 1,3–5-trifluorobenzene derivative with no any EWG substituents at ortho-positions.

As a feasibility study, we evaluated the reactivity of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene (2) in the S$_N$Ar reaction (Scheme 8.7), and, thus treatment of 2 with sodium benzyloxyde
Fig. 8.7 Reaction of bis-C-glycoside 11 via ortho-lithiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>run</th>
<th>electrophile</th>
<th>$T$ (°C)</th>
<th>time (min)</th>
<th>$R$</th>
<th>yield%</th>
<th>recovery/%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CH$_3$OD</td>
<td>-78</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>DMF</td>
<td>-78</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CHO</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DMA</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>CH$_3$CO</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ac$_2$O</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>CH$_3$CO</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>EtOAc</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>CH$_3$CO</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scheme 8.5 Formation of the chalcone unit via ortho-lithiation
Scheme 8.6 Conventional S_NAr reaction of fluoroarenes with a EWG group at the ortho-position

smoothly proceeded at 0 °C to give mono-alkoxide 16. Other substituted products proceeded over reactions were not detected. Furthermore, the repeated S_NAr reaction with BnONa also worked well but needed a relatively high temperature (25 °C), giving dialkoxide 17 in high yield. The third replacement of the one remaining fluorine atom was possible only if the reaction temperature was raised above 100 °C.

With these promising results in mind, we extended our investigation to bis-C-glycosyl trifluorobenzene 11, which has no electron-withdrawing group at an ortho-position to fluorine atoms (Scheme 8.8). Despite the presence of excess sodium methoxide, no reaction occurred initially. However, upon elevating the reaction temperature from 0 °C to 100 °C, the reaction proceeded step-wise manner. The reaction was terminated before complete exchange of all three fluorine atoms, giving only a disubstituted product 19. Subsequent attempts to further advance the reaction by extending the reaction time at 100 °C did not yield any additional products.

Scheme 8.7 Step-wise S_NAr reaction of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene
Next, hoping to facilitate the reaction, we tried the reaction using the acylated substrate 15 with the aim of replacing all fluorine atoms with alkoxy or hydroxy groups (Scheme 8.9). Unfortunately, this approach proved unfruitful, and the desired trialkoxide A could not be obtained. Unexpectedly, we identified an unexpected intermolecular oxa-Michael addition followed by the retro-aldol condensation and/or the carbon–carbon bond cleavage between the C4 and C10 positions, leading to undesired compounds B and C derived from mono- and di-alkoxylated intermediates, respectively. We reasoned that these reactions occurred due to the presence of a carbonyl group unable to be conjugated to the benzene ring because of steric repulsion between the two ortho substituents as well as the strong electron-withdrawing properties of the aryl fluoride unit. Consequently, the hard nucleophiles, such as –OH or –OR, employed in the above reactions, reacted preferentially at hard electrophilic reaction sites.

To circumvent these unfavorable reactions, we systematically screened potential oxygen nucleophiles and identified the anion of oxime as a promising candidate (Scheme 8.10). Consequently, achieving regioselective substitution of one of three fluorine atoms, we utilized the alkoxide generated from benzaldoxime and t-BuOK in THF at room temperature, yielding 20 in high yield [36, 37]. In contrast, the reaction led to the facile retro-aldol condensation of 15 when a powdered potassium hydroxide without benzaldoxime was employed in THF at room temperature. Notably, no formation of di- and tri-hydroxylated products under these reaction conditions were observed. The reaction proceeded stepwise [38], initially undergoing a nucleophilic attack of the alkoxide of the oxime (Ph–CH=NO–) of the oxime ether D, which subsequently allowed the deprotonation and the elimination of the phenolate from D, giving mono-phenol 20, poised for the flavone-ring formation.
Scheme 8.9  Attempts at the S_NAr reaction with the acylated bis-C-glycosyl trifluorobenzene 15

8.9  Endgame

Having obtained a pivotal cyclization precursor, we progressed to accomplish the total synthesis (Scheme 8.11). The flavone skeleton was oxidatively constructed by employing I<sub>2</sub> as a catalyst in DMSO at the heating conditions (140 °C), giving flavone 20 in 90% yield [39]. The reaction proceeded via the electrophilic activation of the enone moiety by iodine, thereby forming the iodinated pyran-ring E. Subsequent elimination of HI leads to the flavone 20. Iodine is regenerated by the dehydrative oxidation of a hydrogen iodide by DMSO [40].

At the final stage, we investigated the substitution of the remaining two fluoride atoms with hydroxy groups (Scheme 8.12). Pleasingly, flavone 21 successfully reacted with two moles of benzyl alkoxide [41]. The solvent choice was crucial at this juncture. When treating 21 with KOH and benzyl alcohol at the heating conditions in 1,4-dioxane (88 °C, 2 h), the reaction proceeded to give bis-benzoxylated product 22 in high yield. However, the use of dipolar aprotic solvent, such as DMSO, DMF, or NMP unexpectedly suffered from ether cleavage of the incorporated alkoxy groups.
Scheme 8.10  Direct conversion of fluoroarene 15 to the phenol 20

PhCH=NOH  
\( pK_a = 11 \sim 12 \)

cf. PhCH$_2$OH
\( pK_a = 15 \sim 16 \)

Scheme 8.11  I$_2$-catalyzed pyran-ring formation
group(s), i.e., –OBn, at C4’, C5, and C7 positions, forming mono- and di-hydroxy byproducts and dibenzyl ether. At this stage, the coplanarity of the carbonyl group with the benzene ring facilitated the nucleophilic substitution of the fluorine atoms by alkoxide at C5 and C7.

At this stage, a rigorous $^1$H-NMR assignment of dialkoxide 22 was very difficult owing to the slow or restricted rotation around the C-glycosidic bonds. The signals became broad even at elevated temperatures on the NMR time scale (500 MHz) (295–373 K) [42]. Despite these challenges, we were delighted to complete the total synthesis by conducting hydrogenolysis of 22 employing ASCA-2® catalyst ($\approx$ Pd(OH)$_2$/C) in a mixed solvent of EtOH and EtOAc (room temperature, 12 h), affording vicenin-2 (1) in high yield (92%). All spectroscopic data ($\alpha$ D, $^1$H- and $^{13}$C-NMR, IR, and HRMS) were confirmed to be identical to those of the reported data [43, 44].

8.10 Conclusion

In summary, we have successfully accomplished the total synthesis of vicenin-2 (1), a bioactive bis-C-glucosyl flavonoid. This achievement was made through the bis-$\beta$-C-glucoside formation of 1,3,5-trifluorobenzene followed by the replacement of three fluorine atoms with oxygen-atom substituents. The current approach establishes a versatile synthetic pathway for bis-C-glycosyl natural products. Furthermore, our research not only propels the field forward but also unveils new possibilities for innovative synthetic organic applications involving fluoroarenes, especially in the synthesis of complex natural products.
References

5. Apigenin-6,8-di-C-glycoside from Porella platyphylla. Phytochemistry 12: 722–723. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0031-9422(00)84471-4


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 9
Collective Total Synthesis of Secologanin-Related Natural Products

Jukiya Sakamoto and Hayato Ishikawa

Abstract We have been interested in the reactivity of secologanin, which is transformed into more than 3000 natural products in nature and have been working on the bioinspired synthesis of several natural products using secologanin derivatives. In this chapter, we describe the total synthesis of secologanin using an organocatalytic reaction and the collective and divergent total synthesis of glycosylated monoterpenoid indole alkaloids and hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides through biogenetically inspired transformations from secologanin derivatives.

Keywords Bioinspired reaction · Collective synthesis · Monoterpenoid indole alkaloid · Hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides · Organocatalytic reaction

9.1 Introduction

In the 2020s, natural products remain as attractive as ever as leads in drug discovery [1]. Novel natural products are constantly being discovered in plants, fungi, and marine organisms, investigated for their biological activities, and reported as candidate compounds for drug discovery. In recent years, analytical techniques such as NMR and X-ray crystallography have made great progress, making it possible to determine the structure of even very small amounts of natural products. As a result, reports of the isolation of new natural products have increased dramatically, but their limited supply makes detailed biological evaluation more difficult. Therefore, the importance of effective and scalable total synthesis of natural products that can only be isolated in small amounts from nature is increasing [2]. In addition, “collective synthesis” and “divergent synthesis,” in which multiple natural products are synthesized from the same intermediate, are attracting attention to prepare libraries of natural products as candidates for drug discovery [3].
Natural products are synthesized in living organisms (biosynthesis). Although biosynthetic pathways in nature are being elucidated daily, countless synthetic pathways remain to be elucidated. A fuller understanding of these pathways will better enable their reproduction chemically, which will enable the supply of natural products and their analogs. This underscores the importance of an understanding of biosynthesis among organic chemists. Many biomimetic total syntheses of natural products have been reported [4]. However, most of them mimic the biosynthetic pathway in only one step, and almost no examples of syntheses mimic the entire biosynthesis. Thus, reproducing a biosynthesis in flasks from the same intermediate to afford a “collective” and “divergent” total synthesis would be compelling. The resulting natural product library would then be evaluated for biological activity and developed into the leads of drug discovery.

This chapter details the collective total synthesis of secologanin-related natural products following the biosynthetic tree diagram, the numerous challenges we faced, and the solutions we devised [5].

9.2 Biosynthetic Tree Diagram from Secologanin

In the biosynthesis of some natural products, one key molecule leads to different scaffolds, branching out like a tree diagram from one molecule. Secologanin (1) is a monoterpene biosynthesized in plants (Fig. 9.1) [6]. Despite its small size, it has three consecutive chiral centers in a multi-substituted dihydropyran ring and several reactive functional groups. This molecule is biosynthesized within a variety of plants, including the Apocinaceae, Caprifoliaceae, Rubiaceae, and Loganiaceae families, and further diverges into more complex natural products. For example, these include monoterpenoid indole alkaloids (MTIAs, e.g., rubenine (2), cymoside (3), and ophiorine A (4)), of which a total of more than 3000 have been reported [7], and hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides (HOIGs, e.g., cantleyoside (5) and dipsanoside A (6)) with molecular weights exceeding 700 [8]. In particular, the biosynthesis of MTIAs is a well-known topic and is discussed in natural product chemistry textbooks [7a–e]. Theoretically, if the biosynthetic pathway that begins with secologanin (1) could be reproduced in a flask, a vast number of natural products could be easily synthesized. In fact, following the synthesis of 1, which will be described later, we achieved the synthesis of 39 natural products including 2–6 in only 4 years. These natural products are also expected to be bioactive, since many plants containing these natural products are used as folk medicines.
9.3 Concise and Scalable Total Synthesis of Secologanin

9.3.1 Retrosynthetic Analysis of Secologanin

For the collective total synthesis of secologanin-related natural products, a large supply of 1 as a starting material was required. When we began our total synthesis in 2017, no total synthesis of this molecule had been reported, despite its prominence [9].

Our retrosynthetic analysis is shown in Scheme 9.1. We planned to construct the aldehyde of 1 using a hydroboration/oxidation the alkyne. The terminal double bond would be installed by sulfoxide elimination. We would set the two anomeric centers using a Schmidt glycosylation. The key intermediate, dihydropyran 8, would be...
constructed using a thioester-selective reduction (Fukuyama reduction) of 10 [10], followed by a spontaneous cyclization reaction from bisaldehyde intermediate 9. We hypothesized that the chiral centers α and β to the aldehyde of 10 could be set using an organocatalytic asymmetric Michael reaction using ene-yne compound 11 and the sulfide-containing aldehyde 12. The anticipated synthetic challenges at this stage were (1) stereoselective construction of the bisacetal structure during installation of the β-glucose, (2) thioester-selective reduction in the presence of several reduction-sensitive functional groups (alkyne, ester, aldehyde, β-acrylate residue, and acetal), (3) induction of stereoselectivity in an organocatalytic asymmetric Michael reaction.

### 9.3.2 Stereoselectivity of Organocatalytic Michael Reaction

The total synthesis of secologanin (1) was initiated based on this retrosynthetic analysis. The first key reaction was the organocatalytic asymmetric Michael reaction (Fig. 9.2). Initially we prepared the Michael acceptor 16 with an alkyl side chain derived from a malonic acid half thioester and carried out an asymmetric Michael reaction with butanal as a model substrate using a diphenylprolinol silyl ether catalyst 14 (Fig. 9.2b). The reaction proceeded smoothly, and the Michael adduct 17 was obtained in high yield and high enantioselectivity. However, the product was not the desired anti-adduct. Instead, we observed the syn-adduct using many reaction conditions, including using various additives. Isomerization of the products was also
investigated without success. Usually, in the transition state of asymmetric Michael reactions using secondary amine catalysts, the largest functional group is in an anti-relationship with the catalyst, and the relatively less bulky functional group is in a gauche-relationship. Thus, in the case of substrate 16, the catalyst and alkyl side chain are in an anti-relationship, and the syn adduct is preferred as the product. The solution to the problem of diastereoselectivity was to change the alkyl side chain of substrate 16 to an alkyne. This is because alkynes are sp hybridized and are sterically less bulky than sp² and sp³ centers (sp < sp² < sp³). Therefore, when substrate 13 with an enyne motif is employed, the alkyne sidechain is sterically less bulky and is in a gauche-relationship with the catalyst, which favors the anti-adduct (Fig. 9.2a). When substrate 13 (prepared in one step from commercially available 3-trimethylsilylpropynal by Knoevenagel condensation) and butanal were stirred with 3 mol% of catalyst 14, the anti-adduct was obtained as the predominant diastereomer. A similar anti-selective Michael addition reaction using an alkyne as a substrate was reported by Hong et al. [11]. Although substrate 13 is an E/Z mixture, the stereochemistry was completely controlled, indicating that the methoxycarbonyl and ethyl thiocarbonyl groups are not distinguished in the transition state.

9.3.3 Scalable Total Synthesis of Secologanin

With optimized conditions for the asymmetric Michael reaction in hand, we moved on to the total synthesis of 1 (Scheme 9.2). We used a sulfide-containing aldehyde 12 to enable installation of a terminal double bond in the late stage. The reaction
proceeded with very high stereoselectivity, and *anti*-adduct 10 was obtained. Subsequently, a thioester-selective reduction reaction developed by Fukuyama et al. was attempted. This reaction showed excellent functional group selectivity and was not impacted by the presence of the sulfide seven atoms from the center being reduced. Thus, the thioester moiety was reduced to an aldehyde selectively, resulting in the formation of bisaldehyde intermediate 9 in situ. The 3-oxopropanate motif in 9 was readily converted to an enol by tautomerization and cyclized to dihydropyran 8 spontaneously (76% over two steps). The glycosylation reaction, which had raised concerns about stereoselectivity, worked well with the standard Schmidt glycosylation reaction [12]. Thus, when compound 8 was treated with imidate-functionalized glucose tetraacetate 18 in the presence of BF$_3$-Et$_2$O, the stereochemistry of the newly generated bisacetal moiety was completely controlled, and the desired glycosylated compound 7 was obtained as a single isomer. The hemiacetal of 8 is in rapid equilibrium, and the sterically preferred α-oriented hydroxyl group reacts with glycosyl donors selectively. In addition, the glycosyl donor reacts selectively on the β-face due to the neighboring effect of the acetyl group at the C2 position. This kinetic-controlled stereoselectivity dramatically improved the efficiency of the total synthesis of 1. Substrate 20 for hydroboration was then prepared by removing the silyl group that had been attached to the terminal alkyne. When tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF) was used in this reaction, the acetyl groups on the glucose chain were removed by the water contained in the reagent. Therefore, tetrabutylammonium difluorotriphenylsilicate (TBA-T), which can be handled under anhydrous conditions, was used.

What remained for the chemical transformation from compound 20 to 1 was the construction of the aldehyde by hydroboration/oxidation, the construction of the terminal alkene by elimination, and the removal of the four acetyl groups by hydrolysis. The non-catalyzed hydroboration reaction of terminal alkynes did not proceed with boron reagents such as 9-BBN. After several experiments with derivatives, it was clear that the reaction was inhibited by the presence of glycosidic chains. The problem might have been that the boron reagent could not approach the reaction site due to steric hindrance. Finally, the addition of a catalytic amount of Schwartz’s reagent promoted this reaction efficiently (Scheme 9.3) [13].

In the subsequent oxidation reaction, under standard conditions, i.e., NaOH and H$_2$O$_2$ in water, the undesired removal of the acetyl groups from the sugar chain proceeded. Unexpectedly, with this substrate 20, the oxidation reaction proceeded without the addition of sodium hydroxide, which is usually required. In addition, these reaction conditions not only prevented the undesired removal of the acetyl groups but also allowed the oxidation of the sulfide necessary for the next elimination reaction to proceed. Then, sulfoxide elimination of 21 was promoted by heating in the presence of trimethyl phosphate to provide the key intermediate secologanin tetraacetate (22) in our bioinspired total synthesis [14]. The total yield of 22 was 25% on a decagram scale over seven steps from commercially available 3-trimethylsilylpropynal. Finally, the acetyl group was removed by hydrolysis accompanied by temporary protection of the aldehyde to achieve the first total synthesis of secologanin (1) [5a].
Scheme 9.2  Dihydropyran ring construction and stereoselective sugar chain insertion

Scheme 9.3  Completion of the total synthesis of secologanin
9.4 Collective Total Synthesis of Glycosylated Monoterpene Indole Alkaloids

As described in the introduction, secologanin (1) is an important constituent of the monoterpene indole alkaloids (Scheme 9.4) [7]. In biosynthesis, 1 is converted to 5-carboxystrictosidine (23) and strictosidine (24) by an enzymatic Pictet–Spengler cyclization with tryptophan or tryptamine. Intermediates 23 and 24 lead to more than 3000 alkaloids. Most of them involve the cleavage of the sugar chains of 23 and 24, but some alkaloids have been found in which the sugar chains are maintained. We have thus far achieved the total syntheses of 33 MTIAs using this bioinspired strategy. In this chapter, we present the total synthesis of glycosylated MTIAs.

9.4.1 Total Syntheses of 5-Carboxystrictosidine and Rubenine

Following the biosynthesis, we first aimed for the first asymmetric total synthesis of 5-carboxystrictosidine (23) (Scheme 9.5). Thus, the Pictet–Spengler reaction was performed with synthetic 22 and tryptophan methyl ester (25) in the presence of trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) [15]. The reaction proceeded quantitatively, and the stereochimistry at the C3 position was controlled as the S configuration with moderate selectivity. After hydrolysis of the four acetyl groups and the methyl ester, the total synthesis of 5-carboxystricrosidine (23) was achieved. The NMR of 23, which has an amino acid moiety, is very sensitive to pH, and careful adjustment of pH was necessary to match it with the NMR of the natural product.

The next synthetic target was rubenine (2), which has six contiguous rings, one of which is a strained seven-membered ring [16]. For the key reaction, we decided to use a bioinspired reaction in which rings are formed sequentially by a domino sequence. The aldehyde of key intermediate 22 was converted to acetal 27 using 1,2-phenylenedimethanol (26), which can be removed by hydrogenation. Stereos elective epoxidation of the terminal double bond of compound 27 was extremely difficult. Because of its steric hindrance, the terminal double bond is unreactive. In

![Scheme 9.4 Biosynthesis of 5-carboxystrictosidine and strictosidine](image-url)
addition, in some cases, the double bond of the β-acrylate residue was oxidized. After several attempts, we found that treatment with mCPBA using 1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoroisopropanol (HFIP) as the solvent resulted in site-selective epoxidation and gave a slight preference for a product with the desired stereochemistry. mCPBA might be activated in situ by HFIP which is a weakly acidic solvent [17]. The subsequent hydrogenation reaction converted the acetal to an aldehyde to obtain compound 28.

Next, our optimized Pictet–Spengler reaction conditions were applied to compound 28. The reaction proceeded stereoselectively (C3S:C3R = 2.5:1). Furthermore, when the crude mixture of intermediate 29 was loaded on silica gel for purification, the
cyclization reaction from the secondary amine at the N4 position proceeded. Thus, the N4 position of the C3S intermediate 29 attacked the C18 position, and the desired seven-membered ring product 30 was obtained as the major product in a 60% yield over two steps. On the other hand, the six-membered ring intermediate resulting from the attack to the C19 position was converted to the byproduct 31 via lactonization (8%). Finally, after the removal of the acetyl groups of 30, the crude material was heated in the presence of 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN) to construct the lactone ring, achieving the first total synthesis of rubenine (2) [5a]. Note that the reaction proceeded without any problem with 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) in the final step, but it was difficult to separate the highly polar product 2 and DBU. On the other hand, DBN could be efficiently removed by heating under reduced pressure.

9.4.2 Discovery of Diastereoselective Pictet–Spengler Cyclization and Total Syntheses of Strictosidine and Strictosamide

Next, the total synthesis of strictosidine (24), another biosynthetically important intermediate, was commenced (Scheme 9.6). For the completion of this total synthesis, a Pictet–Spengler cyclization reaction controlling the C3 position was required. We initially considered using an asymmetric Pictet–Spengler reaction catalyzed by a chiral phosphoric acid or thiourea but decided not to invest in this line of research due to the likely challenge introduced by the presence of many hydrogen-bond-accepting functional groups such as the sugar ring in secologanin derivative 22. The moderate diastereoselectivity observed in the total synthesis of 5-carboxystrictosidine (23) with tryptophan derivative 25 inspired us to use α-cyanotryptamine (32) in the total synthesis of 24. Surprisingly, the simple tryptophan derivative 32 was not previously reported, however, it could be synthesized from tryptophan in three steps (see details in Ref. [5b]). In addition, crystals of 32 were stable to storage in air at room temperature.

First, the Pictet–Spengler reaction was performed using secologanin derivative 22 and (S)-32 derived from l-tryptophan. The reaction proceeded quickly (3 min) and the desired cyclization was obtained quantitatively. Unexpectedly, the diastereoselectivity was poor (3S:3R = 1.5:1). On the other hand, when (R)-32 derived from D-tryptophan was employed, the diastereoselectivity was dramatically improved (3S:3R ⇒ 10:1) while maintaining its high reactivity. The cyano group at C5 of the cyclized product 33 was removed by treatment with acetic acid/methanol followed by reduction of the resulting imine in situ to give strictosidine tetraacetate (34) (more than 1 g of 34 was prepared). This two-step sequence is an alternative method to strictosidine synthase, which completely controls the C3 stereochemistry in the biosynthesis [18]. Finally, the removal of the acetyl groups of the sugar chain was performed to achieve
the total synthesis of the natural product 24. The total yield of 24 was 20% over 10 steps [5b].

The determination of the stereochemistry of the C3 position generated by the Pictet–Spengler reaction was challenging at the stage of compound 33. Finally, we determined the stereochemistry at the C3 position after preparing a rigid penta-cyclic natural product, strictosamide (35), via a two-step transformation from 34. Comparison of CD spectra of 35, which strongly reflect the stereochemistry of the C3 position, proved to be an extremely useful tool (For substrates with an open C ring, such as compound 24, comparison of CD spectra is known to be ineffective in determining the stereochemistry at the C3 position) [19].

9.4.3 Mechanistic Insight into the Pictet–Spengler Reaction Diastereoselectivity

We wanted to know why different stereoselectivity was observed with α-cyanotryptamine and with tryptophan methyl ester. We also wanted to know which structure motif of secologanin was required to induce diastereoselectivity. Therefore, the Pictet–Spengler reaction was performed with various derivatives of secologanin to observe the diastereoselectivity in each product (Fig. 9.3, syntheses of secologanin derivatives; see ref [5b]). The reaction was first performed with secologanin
methyl ether. The diastereoselectivity of the product was very high, and it was clear that the sugar chain did not affect the selectivity (compound 36). Similarly, the terminal double bond at C18–19 had no effect on selectivity (compound 37). On the other hand, diastereoselectivity decreased to 2.7:1 when the methoxycarbonyl group at C22 was removed (compound 38). Clearly, the carbonyl group improved the diastereoselectivity. The influence of the stereochemistry at the C15, 20, and 21 positions of secologanin on diastereoselectivity was studied. No decrease in the diastereoselectivity of the Pictet–Spengler reaction was observed when the isomers at C20 and C21 were used (compounds 39, 40, and 41). On the other hand, the diastereoselectivity was lost when the reaction was carried out using the stereoisomer at C15. In summary, it is clear that the relative configuration of C5 (cyano group) and C15 and the presence of the carbonyl group at C22 are essential for diastereoselectivity of this Pictet–Spengler reaction.

In addition to the above experiments, the transition states in each substrate were analyzed using DFT calculations (Fig. 9.4). When (R)-α-cyanotryptamine was used, a unique eight-membered ring was formed via a hydrogen bond between the proton on the iminium ion and the carbonyl group at C22. Then, nucleophilic attack from indole came from the β-face on the eight-membered ring. On the other hand, when tryptophan methyl ester was used as a substrate, the proton of the iminium ion hydrogen...
bonded with the methoxycarbonyl group of the adjacent tryptophan, forming a five-membered ring. Thus, cyanotryptamine and tryptophan form hydrogen bonds at different sites, and the reactions proceed through distinct transition states [5b].

### 9.4.4 Bioinspired Total Synthesis of Cymoside

Cymoside (3), a monoterpenoid indole alkaloid found in *Chimarrhis cymosa* (Rubiaceae) in 2015, contains an interesting hexacyclic skeleton that includes a unique propellane-type structure (Fig. 9.1 and Scheme 9.7) [20]. Furthermore, it contains eight asymmetric centers, including three contiguous quaternary chiral centers, not including the sugar moiety. In addition, the natural product 3 is an extremely rare molecule with a tris-acetal structure that includes sugar chains. Its total synthesis appears daunting due to the crowded caged structure. However, when we considered the biosynthesis of 3, we realized that this molecule is an oxidized derivative of strictosidine (24). In 2020, the Vincent group achieved a total synthesis of 3 with a biogenetically inspired strategy similar to ours [21]. Scheme 9.7 shows a very simple conversion from a derivative of 24 to 3 following its biosynthetic pathway. To realize the proposed bioinspired reaction, a stereoselective insertion of a hydroxyl group at the C7 of the indole ring was required. Strictosidine derivative 33, bearing a cyano group, was chosen as a substrate. In addition, we avoided protecting the secondary amine at N4 to match more closely the biosynthesis. After several trials, the desired domino reaction proceeded using pretreatment of substrate 33 with TFA followed by adding *m*CPBA. Thus, the otherwise oxidizable amine at the N4 position was protected by TFA by forming a salt in situ. The resulting TFA salt forms a hydrogen bonding network that allows *m*CPBA to approach from the β-face of the indole and insert a β-OH at C7 selectively [22]. The resulting intermediate 44 has an α-hydroxyimine moiety and a β-acrylate moiety, and a formal [3+2] cyclization reaction proceeded. The reaction was initiated by stereoselective oxa-Michael addition from the 7-OH to C17 followed by a stereoselective Mannich reaction from C16 to C2 to form the rigid dihydrofuran ring containing four contiguous chiral
centers. Subsequently, the unique tris-acetal structure was constructed. Finally, the total synthesis of 3 was achieved through decyanation and removal of the acetyl groups. This 11-step synthesis was accomplished with an overall yield of 7% [5b].

### 9.4.5 Bioinspired Total Synthesis of Ophiorines A and B

Ophiorines A (4) and B (48) are pentacyclic alkaloids from Ophirrhiza species (Rubiaceae) [23]. Structurally, they belong to β-carboline-type MTIAs which are aromatized on the C-ring, and they have a bicyclo ring structure containing an N,O-acetal moiety. Furthermore, they are rare natural products that form a unique intramolecular counterionic structure consisting of a pyridine ring and a carboxylic acid in the same molecule. Since its isolation in 1985, there have been no examples of total synthesis or synthetic studies until we completed them. Initially, oxidation of the C-ring of strictosidine tetraacetate (34) was examined to construct the β-carboline motif. Various oxidants such as DDQ and KMnO₄ were examined, but the sugar
chains and β-acrylate residue did not survive under the reaction conditions. Therefore, we decided to use the elimination reaction of a cyano group of compound 33 (Scheme 9.8). Thus, when 33 was treated with acetic acid in methanol, the expected decyanation followed by spontaneous air oxidation proceeded to construct the desired β-carboline 46 (lyaloside tetraacetate) (60 h, 83%). Interestingly, treatment of compound 33 with only acetic acid does not afford decyanation; methanol was essential for the decyanation reaction, although the reason is unclear. Successful decyanation was achieved under Brønsted acid conditions, but the reaction required more than 2 days. Therefore, we investigated Lewis acid conditions. Inexpensive silver nitrate worked well, yielding compound 46 in 94% yield in 20 h. Removal of the four acetyl groups of 46 provided lyaloside (47) in excellent yield. A conversion from the natural product 47 to ophiorines A and B using the bioinspired reaction was achieved in water. In addition, since natural products are ionic molecules, the addition of salt as a stabilizer was examined. Thus, when the highly polar compound 47 was heated in water in the presence of ammonium acetate, a bioinspired Michael reaction proceeded, followed by hydrolysis of the methoxycarbonyl group, resulting in ophiorines A (4) and B (48) with an intramolecular counterionic structure (4:48 = 1.7:1, 75%, 11 steps total) [5h].

Scheme 9.8 Total syntheses of ophiorines A and B
9.5 Collective Total Synthesis of Hetero-Oligomeric Iridoid Glycosides

The dried root of *Dipsacus asper* (Caprifoliaceae) is a well-known folk medicine used for bone maladies such as fractures, osteoporosis, and rheumatoid arthritis [24]. In addition, these oligomers are expected to be biologically active components of folk medicine [8]. To synthesize many of these HOIGs, it was necessary to prepare large quantities of loganin or its derivatives. Loganin (49) is found in plants of the families Rutaceae, Caprifoliaceae, Loganiaceae, Gentianaceae, and Apocynaceae [25]. It is a representative of iridoid glycosides with various biological activities such as anti-inflammatory activity [26]. In biosynthesis, loganin (49) is the precursor of secologanin (1) and forms a terminal double bond and an aldehyde by enzymatic oxidative cleavage at C7-8 positions [27]. Having already succeeded in the gram-scale synthesis of 1, we planned to synthesize 49 by the reverse-biosynthetic strategy, i.e., the reductive ring-closing reaction of 1. If this strategy succeeded, we could supply both 1 and 49, to allow the efficient collective total synthesis of HOIGs (Scheme 9.9).

9.5.1 Total Syntheses of Loganin and Cantleyoside

We next undertook the synthesis of 49 using reductive ring closure (Scheme 9.10). Thus, secologanin tetraacetate (22) was treated with various one-electron reductants. After several trials with metal reductants, we found SmI2 was a suitable reductant with good diastereoselectivity to provide cyclized products in 93% yield (dr at C7 = 3:1; loganin tetraacetate (50) was isolated in 70% yield). In this reaction, the stereochemistry at C8 was controlled completely (formation of the other diastereomer would involve a steric clash by positioning the terminal olefin methylene over the dihydropyran ring). 50 was successfully converted to natural product loganin (49) via solvolysis.

Once the total syntheses of secologanin (1) and loganin (49) were completed, cantleyoside (5) was chosen as the next synthetic target. Cantleyoside (5) is a

![Scheme 9.9 Synthetic strategy of hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides](image-url)
Scheme 9.10  Total syntheses of loganin and cantleyoside

heterodimeric iridoid glycoside with a C7 secondary alcohol of 49 and a C11 carboxylic acid of 1 connected via an ester. To accomplish this, we synthesized secologanic acid derivative 51 from compound 22. First, we converted the aldehyde of 22 to an acetal with ethylene glycol, followed by hydrolysis of the acetyl and methoxycarbonyl groups and re-acetylation of the sugar chain to give 51 in high yield. The dehydration-condensation reaction of compounds 50 and 51 was accomplished by heating with EDCI and DMAP. The acetal of the resulting dimeric compound was subsequently cleaved to an aldehyde to afford cantleyoside octaacetate (52). The esterification reaction requires four of the five alcohols of loganin to be protected, with only C7 exposed. Although naturally occurring loganin (49) is commercially available, selectively distinguishing the C7 alcohol from the glucosyl alcohols was not a chemically viable approach. Thus, a reductive cyclization reaction of 1 was essential for the total synthesis of 5.

The first total synthesis of cantleyoside (5) was achieved by removing the acetyl groups from compound 52 (total 11 steps via 50, total yield 12%).
9.5.2 Bioinspired Total Synthesis of Dipsanoside A, Dipsaperine, and (3R,5S)-5-Carboxyvincosidic Acid 22-Loganin Ester

Many natural products are derived from cantleyoside (5) (Fig. 9.1 and Scheme 9.11). For example, dipsanoside A (6) is a dimer of 5 derived from an aldol condensation. We corrected the stereochemistry of 6 based on our synthesis; see details in ref 5f [8c]. Dipsaperine (53) and (3R,5S)-5-carboxyvincosidic acid 22-loganin ester (54) are derived from a Pictet–Spengler condensation with 5 and tryptophan, and they are diastereomers at C3. Recently, aldol condensations mediated by amino acids such as proline have been extensively investigated [29]. Sometimes, the structures of certain natural products offer clues to the biosynthesis of other natural products. The structures of 53 and 54 offer the tantalizing clue that 6 could be derived from a tryptophan-mediated aldol reaction of 5. Based on our strong interest in these biosynthetic pathways, we decided to test chemically whether this pathway was viable. Indeed, when one equivalent of L-tryptophan and 52 were stirred in DMF for 4 days, the anticipated E-selective aldol condensation reaction proceeded, yielding dipsanoside A hexadecaacetate in 81% yield. After hydrolysis, the first total synthesis of dipsanoside A (6) was achieved (total 12 steps, total yield 8%).

On the other hand, when compound 52 and L-tryptophan methyl ester (25) were stirred in the presence of TFA, the Pictet–Spengler reaction proceeded to give the desired cyclized product in 98% yield (3S:3R = 2:1). After a similar hydrolysis, the first total syntheses of 53 and 54 were achieved.

In the above syntheses, tryptophan mediates an aldol condensation under neutral conditions and behaves as a substrate in the Pictet–Spengler reaction under acidic conditions. We suspect that this is similar to the events occurring in the actual biosynthesis. Inhibition of the receptor activator of nuclear factor-κB ligand (RANKL)-induced formation of multinuclear osteoclasts was found in the synthetic 6, 53, and 54 (IC50 value; 6 = 5.9 μM, 53 = 12.8 μM, 54 = 6.6 μM) [29]. In addition, these compounds were not cytotoxic. Therefore, these natural products may be responsible for the efficacy (bonesetting) in folk medicine [5f].

9.6 Conclusion

We successfully achieved a collective total synthesis of 39 natural products, including glycosylated monoterpenoid indole alkaloids (MTIAs) and hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides (HOIGs) via bioinspired transformations, initiated by the first total synthesis of secologanin (1). The key strategy of our secologanin synthesis was a rapid and stereoselective construction of the secologanin scaffold through an anti-selective organocatalytic Michael reaction/Fukuyama reduction/spontaneous cyclization/Schmidt glycosylation sequence, and we obtained a key intermediate,
Scheme 9.11 Bioinspired dimerization and Pictet–Spengler reaction toward total syntheses of hetero-oligomeric iridoid glycosides
secologanin tetraacetate (22), on a decagram scale in seven steps. First, Pictet–Spengler cyclization with L-tryptophan methyl ester (25) or (R)-α-cyanotryptamine (32) using 22 proceeded via different transition states but in the same 3S stereoselectivity to give 5-carboxystrictosidine (23) and strictosidine (24), respectively. These biosynthetic intermediates of MTIAs were converted into complex alkaloids, including rubenine (2) and cymoside (3), via bioinspired transformation on the highly reactive secologanin reaction sites. Elimination of the cyano group, which had been installed from cyanotryptamine, and subsequent autoxidation rapidly constructed the β-carboline structure, and β-carboline-type glycosylated monoterpenoid indole alkaloids including lyaloside (47) and ophiorines A (4) and B (48) were provided in the common synthetic route. On the other hand, loganin (49), the biosynthetic precursor of secologanin (1), was synthesized from 22 via a reverse-biogenetically inspired transformation (reductive cyclization). These iridoid monomers were condensed via hetero-oligomerization to HOIGs including dipsanoside A (6) and dipsaperine (53), and these larger natural products were found to inhibit RANKL-induced formation of multinuclear osteoclasts.

Although these biogenetically inspired transformations are now one of the common strategies in the total synthesis of natural products, there are actually not many examples of derivation to different groups of natural products using a common intermediate. This is because of the difficulty of setting up and synthesizing key highly reactive intermediates. We were fortunate to encounter secologanin and were able to use it to efficiently construct a natural product library. It is our mission as synthetic organic chemists to continue to further extend the branches of the tree diagram.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 10
Oxidative Phenolic Coupling Reaction/Aza-Michael Reaction Strategy for the Synthesis of Complex Polycyclic Alkaloids

Minami Odagi and Kazuo Nagasawa

Abstract The synthesis of alkaloids featuring fused polycyclic frameworks has long attracted the interest of synthetic organic communities, owing to their great structural complexity and wide variety of biological activities. Indeed, a variety of strategies for synthesizing these alkaloids have been investigated over the years. Here, we present our innovative strategy for the construction of complex fused polycyclic frameworks via oxidative phenolic coupling reaction and subsequent regioselective intramolecular aza-Michael reaction. We illustrate its practical application in synthetic studies of amaryllidaceae alkaloids, and hasubanan alkaloids.

Keywords Dearomatization · Hypervalent iodine · Aza-Michael reaction · Alkaloids

10.1 Introduction

Fused polycyclic structures are found in many natural products, but although significant progress has been made in their synthesis, the development of efficient and practical strategies for constructing polycycles with adjustable substituents and functional groups remains challenging [1–3]. Aromatic compounds based on benzene, toluene, and xylenes, derived from petroleum, are readily available as basic precursors for synthesis. For example, aryl halides play a pivotal role in the synthesis of agrichemicals and pharmaceuticals via cross-coupling reactions [4, 5]. Nevertheless, although these readily available aromatic compounds are convenient starting materials for synthesizing biologically useful compounds with stereochemically...
rich scaffolds, their thermodynamic stability presents a challenge [6], and therefore, dearomatization reactions have been extensively explored [7, 8].

One of the most powerful dearomatization reactions is the oxidative dearomatization of phenols [9]. In particular, when phenols with attached nucleophiles are subjected to oxidants, such as hypervalent iodine reagent, dearomative oxidative cyclization is proceeded. This process is a promising method for assembling natural products that possess polycyclic framework quickly [10–13]. The advantages of this strategy include: (i) the widespread commercial availability of a variety of phenolic precursors, each featuring diverse substituents, (ii) the dearomatization reaction enables to the efficient construction of quaternary carbon centers, and (iii) the easy functionalization of the resulting dienones. Over the past few decades, there has been considerable research into the oxidative spirocyclization of phenol derivatives with nucleophiles [14, 15]. Reactions involving a range of nucleophiles such as carboxylic acids, amines, and aromatic rings have been documented. Furthermore, syntheses of various natural products based on this dearomative spirocyclization strategy have been reported, establishing this method as a promising strategy for the construction of complex frameworks (Scheme 10.1) [16, 17].

Although oxidative phenolic coupling reactions of phenols with nucleophiles at the ortho-position to the para-position can efficiently construct fused ring structures, there are few reports describing this approach [18–21]. Moreover, phenol derivatives featuring the pendent nucleophiles in both ortho- and para-positions can be converted into complex fused polycyclic compounds by applying oxidative phenolic coupling reactions and subsequent intramolecular Michael reactions (Scheme 10.2). However, this strategy has not yet been applied to the synthesis of natural products. Therefore, we have studied the synthesis of alkaloids from phenols using an oxidative coupling reaction/aza-Michael reaction strategy. In this chapter, we summarize our recent progress with this strategy, focusing on its application to the synthesis of complex polycyclic alkaloids [22].

**Scheme 10.1**
Representative examples of dearomative spirocyclization in natural product synthesis
10.2 Total Synthesis of (+)-Gracilamine

10.2.1 (+)-Gracilamine

(+)-Gracilamine (1) is an alkaloid isolated from the plant Galanthus gracilis, a member of the Amaryllidaceae family, by Ünver and Kaya in 2005 (Fig. 10.1) [23]. (+)-Gracilamine (1) possesses a highly functionalized fused polycyclic structure consisting of five rings, A–E. Compare to other members of the Amaryllidaceae alkaloids (2–4), it possesses a complex structure with seven stereogenic centers, one of which is a quaternary carbon at the C3a position. This unique structure of 1 is of great interest to synthetic chemists, and since its first total synthesis by Ma and co-workers in 2012 [24], nine total syntheses [25–31], including ours [32], have been reported [33].

10.2.2 Our Synthetic Plan of (+)-Gracilamine

The synthetic challenge in the case of 1 is to efficiently construct contiguous stereogenic centers while assembling a highly fused polycyclic ring system. As a starting point, our focus was on the stereochemistry of the C9a position. In our group, enantioselective 1,2-type aza-Friedel–Crafts (aza-FC) reaction of aldimine 6 and sesamol (7) by using our guanidine–bisthiourea catalyst 5 has been developed to provide optically active amine 8 (Scheme 10.3) [34, 35]. We envisaged that this enantioselective 1,2-type aza-FC reaction would provide a crucial breakthrough in addressing the
Scheme 10.3 Enantioselective 1,2-type aza-Friedel–Crafts reaction catalyzed by guanidine–bisthiourea catalyst

Scheme 10.4 Our synthetic plan for (+)-gracilamine (1)
10.2.3 Preparation of Optically Active Coupling Precursor 19
Based on Enantioselective 1,2-Type
Aza-Friedel–Crafts Reaction

First, the aza-FC reaction was investigated using imine 14 (Scheme 10.5). The reaction of sesamol (4) with imine 3a at 20 °C in ether in the presence of catalyst 5 gave the aza-FC product 15 with 74% ee under the same conditions as described in our previous report. However, the reactivity of 14 was low due to the ortho-substituent, and the yield of 15 was only 33%. Therefore, we increased the reaction temperature to 40 °C and found that the desired aza-FC adduct 15 was obtained in 94% yield with 91% ee. In this organocatalytic reaction, the enantioselectivity-determining step is governed by entropy, and the enantioselectivity was improved by increasing the reaction temperature. The phenolic hydroxy group of the resulting 15 was converted to a trifluoromethanesulfonate group (16). The optical purity of 16 was improved to 99% ee by recrystallization from heated hexane. The C9a asymmetric carbon of (+)-1 was thus successfully constructed. Next, the phenolic coupling precursor of 19 was synthesized. Ozonolysis of the allyl group of 16 and reduction of the resulting aldehyde with sodium borohydride provided alcohol 17 in 87% yield. The hydroxy group of 17 was mesylated with methanesulfonyl chloride in DMF followed by sodium azide to afford azide 18 in 80% yield. In this process, when the mesylation was carried out in dichloromethane, an elimination reaction took place to give the vinyl compound as the major product. By carrying out the mesylation in DMF, the elimination reaction of the mesyl group was suppressed and the subsequent azidation could be achieved in a one-pot process. Then, the azide 18 was subjected to hydrogenolysis to remove the benzyl and triflate groups and reduce the azide group to an amine, and the resulting product was reacted with p-toluenesulfonyl chloride to give the precursor 19 for the oxidative coupling reaction.

10.2.4 Synthesis of the Tetracyclic Core Structure of 1
by Oxidative Phenolic Coupling Reaction
and Aza-Michael Reaction

Oxidative phenolic coupling reactions using hypervalent iodine reagents were investigated with the coupling precursor 19 (Scheme 10.6). As a result, we found that dienone 20 with the desired configuration at C3a was obtained as a single isomer in 80% yield by treatment with diacetoxyiodobenzene (PIDA) in HFIP [36]. In this reaction, the orientation of the NHBoc group at the C9a position gives rise to two possible transition states, denoted as TS-1 and TS-2. In TS-2, which yields diastereomer 21, the NHBoc group is directed in the pseudo-axial direction, leading to 1,3-diaxial repulsion with the side chain on the aromatic ring. Thus, it is expected that TS-1, which involves less steric hindrance, would be preferred, and indeed, the desired stereochemistry at C3a was predominantly formed.
Having synthesized the tricyclic dienone 20, we subsequently investigated the regioselective aza-Michael reaction (Scheme 10.7). We found that this reaction proceeded at the sterically less hindered C7a position with p-toluenesulfonic acid in dichloromethane, and the tetracyclic enone 22 corresponding to rings A, B, C, and E in 1 was obtained in 70% yield. Then, the reduction of the double bond in 22 was investigated. However, the yield was low and the reproducibility was poor, probably due to the poor solubility of enone 22. Thus, we attempted to change the protecting group of 22 to increase the solubility.
After the deprotection of the Boc group of 19 by using hydrogen chloride in methanol, the 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl (Teoc) group was introduced at the resulting amine by using N-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyloxy]succinimide (Teoc-OSu, Scheme 10.8). We then carried out the oxidative coupling reaction of 24, and dienone 25 with the desired configuration at C3a was obtained as a single isomer. Furthermore, the reaction of para-toluenesulfonic acid with 25 afforded the tetracyclic enone 26 in 82% yield via regioselective aza-Michael reaction at the C7a position. The resulting 26 was sufficiently soluble in various solvents, and subsequent reduction of the double bond of 26 by hydrogenation took place smoothly to give the ketone 27 quantitatively.

### 10.2.5 Total Synthesis of (+)-Gracilamine by Constructing D-Ring Based on Intramolecular Mannich Reaction

Next, the construction of the D-ring by means of the Mannich reaction was examined, aiming at the total synthesis of gracilamine (1) (Scheme 10.9). After investigation of various conditions, the intramolecular Mannich reaction of ketone 27 proceeded upon heating in the presence of α-keto ester 28 in a mixed solvent of cyclopentyl methyl ether (CPME) and trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) to afford 29 with the desired
stereochemistry at the C8 position in 47% yield. The carbonyl group at C6 of 29 was reduced with sodium borohydride to give the desired 30 in 64% yield, together with 32, formed by further lactonization of the diastereomer 31, in 4% yield. A single crystal of 32 was obtained, and the absolute conformation was determined by X-ray crystallography. For the synthesis of 1, the conversion of the tosyl group of compound 30 to a methyl group was examined. However, removal of the tosyl group was troublesome, and decomposition of the substrate occurred when sodium naphthalenide was employed. Careful monitoring by TLC showed that the amine 33, which was generated by the deprotection of the tosyl group, was unstable under reducing conditions. Consequently, the slow addition of sodium naphthalenide competed with the deprotection of the nitrogen atom of 30 and the decomposition of 33. Therefore, all of the sodium naphthalenide was quickly added to the mixture, and the reaction was immediately quenched by adding ethanol and acetic acid, thereby suppressing the decomposition of 33. Then, the methyl group was introduced to the resulting amine in a one-pot fashion by reaction with formaldehyde in aqueous solution in the presence of NaBH₃CN. This completed the total synthesis of (+)-gracilamine (1) [32].

Scheme 10.9  Total synthesis of (+)-gracilamine (1)
10.3 Total Syntheses of Hasubanan Alkaloids

10.3.1 Hasubanan Alkaloid

Hasubanan alkaloids represent a group of alkaloids extracted mainly from plants of the genus *Stephania* [37]. These alkaloids have been known for a very long time. For example, Goto and Suzuki in Kitasato Institute reported the isolation of acutumine (43) for the first time in 1929 [38]. These alkaloids have a characteristic tetracyclic skeleton with a quaternary carbon at the C13 position, the so-called hasubanan scaffold (hasubanan skeleton 34). Hasubanonine (35) and metaphanine (36) are representative examples. Various analogs with different oxidation states on this scaffold have been reported, totaling more than 40 congeners. In addition to those compounds with the hasubanan skeleton, a number of compounds without this scaffold, such as stephadiamine (37), cepharatines 38–41, sinoracutine (42), and acutumine-type alkaloids 43 and 44, have been isolated to date [37].

Hasubanane alkaloids display a spectrum of biological activities, encompassing antibacterial properties for cepharatines [39], anti-amnesic activity and selective T-cell cytotoxicity for acutumine (43) [40], as well as opioid receptor affinity for enantiomers of the hasubanan skeleton [41]. Consequently, these alkaloids continue to be of great synthetic interest. Since the first total synthesis by Ide and Kitano from Kyoto University in 1966 [42], more than 20 total syntheses have been achieved using various methodologies [43–46]. Organic chemists have also explored synthetic methods targeting diverse scaffolds within this family of alkaloids, stimulated by the pioneering work of Herzon’s and Reisman’s groups [47–50].

10.3.2 Our Synthetic Approach for Hasubanan Alkaloid

We examined the synthesis of three different types of hasubanan alkaloids, metaphanine (36), stephadiamine (37), and cepharatines 38–41, based on a common strategy. The challenges in the synthesis were the stereoselective construction of the common quaternary carbon at C13 and the construction of the C- and D-rings in the late stage. Our synthetic approaches are depicted in Scheme 10.10. The characteristic five-membered C-ring of stephadiamine 48 would be constructed by ring contraction from the six-membered C-ring of the hasubanan skeleton 47. This skeleton 47 would be synthesized by C14-selective intramolecular aza-Michael reaction of the tricyclic dienone 46. On the other hand, the characteristic azabicyclo [3.3.1]nonane motif constituting the C- and D-rings of the cepharatine skeleton 50 would be constructed by a C5-selective intramolecular aza-Michael reaction of the dienone 46, followed by a 1,2-migration of the nitrogen atom from C5 to C6 in 49. We also considered that the dienone 46 would be synthesized by oxidative phenol coupling reaction of diarylethane derivative 45. In this case, we expected that the stereochemistry of the
newly constructed C13 quaternary carbon would be controlled by the stereochemistry at C10 in 45.

10.3.3 Construction at C10 Stereogenic Center in Hasubanan Skeleton

We commenced with the synthesis of ketone 58 to investigate the construction of the stereochemistry at the C10 position (Schemes 10.11 and 10.12). First, the commercially available aromatic aldehyde 51 was subjected to bromination to give 52 in 62% yield. Then, TMS cyanohydrin 53, the precursor of the A-ring part, was obtained by reaction with trimethylsilyl cyanide in the presence of zinc iodide to give 52 quantitatively. The C-ring precursor of 57 was obtained from phenol 54 by protecting the phenolic hydroxy group with a methoxymethyl group, reduction of the aldehyde to an alcohol with sodium borohydride and regioselective bromination with N-bromosuccinimide to give 55 in 93% yield (three steps), followed by the introduction of an allyl group by means of the Stille coupling reaction with tributylallyltin in the presence of Pd catalyst to give 56, which was then treated with methanesulfonyl chloride.

With the A-ring precursor 53 and C-ring precursor 57 in hand, these were coupled to obtain ketone 58 (Scheme 10.12). That is, deprotonation of the A-ring cyanohydrin 53 with lithium hexamethyldisilazide, mesylate 57 promoted the alkylation reaction, and then, TMS group was deprotected with tetrabutylammonium fluoride to give ketone 58 in 78% yield.

With the ketone 58 in hand, we then examined the enantioselective reduction of the carbonyl group at C10 in 58 (Table 10.1). Initially, we examined asymmetric reduction with CBS catalysts [51]. In the presence of catalysts 63, 64, and 65 bearing methyl, ortho-methylphenyl, and n-butyl groups, however, the enantioselectivities of the alcohol 59 were low or moderate (16–51% ee, entries 1–5). In contrast, with
the substrate 60 lacking the bromo group on the aromatic ring, the corresponding alcohol 61 was obtained with 99% ee (entry 6). This result strongly suggested that the low enantioselectivity in this asymmetric reduction was due to steric hindrance around the carbonyl groups of 58.

Next, we investigated the kinetic resolution of racemic alcohol rac-59 using chiral isothioureas [52]. In the presence (S)-BTM (66, 10 mol%) and isovaleric anhydride as the acylating agent, kinetic resolution proceeded and the optically active 59 was obtained in 60% ee (entry 7). When we examined the more reactive chiral isothiourea catalyst (2S,3R)-HyperBTM (67) [53], kinetic resolution proceeded more efficiently, and 59 was obtained in 96% ee (entry 8). By decreasing the reaction temperature to –60 °C, the enantioselectivity was improved to 99% ee (entry 9). This kinetic resolution
Table 10.1 Stereoselective construction at C10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>59 or 61 Yield [%]</th>
<th>ee [%]</th>
<th>62 Yield [%]</th>
<th>ee [%]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>58, 63 (1.5 equiv.), BH$_3$ · SMe$_2$ (4 equiv.), THF (0.1 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>$-24$</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>58, 64 (1.5 equiv.), BH$_3$ · SMe$_2$ (4 equiv.), THF (0.07 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>$-42$</td>
<td>$-42$</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>58, 65 (1.5 equiv.), BH$_3$ · SMe$_2$ (4 equiv.), THF (0.07 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>$-51$</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>58, 65 (1.5 equiv.), BH$_3$ · SMe$_2$ (4 equiv.), toluene (0.07 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>$-26$</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>28, 65 (1.5 equiv.), Catechol borane (4 equiv.), THF (0.07 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>$-16$</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>60, 63 (1.5 equiv.), BH$_3$ · SMe$_2$ (4 equiv.), THF (0.1 M), $-40$ °C, 24 h</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>rac-59, 66 (10 mol%), (CO$_i$-Pr)$_2$O (0.6 equiv.), $i$-Pr$_2$NEt (0.6 equiv.), toluene, 0 °C, 24 h</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>rac-59, 67 (10 mol%), (CO$_i$-Pr)$_2$O (0.6 equiv.), $i$-Pr$_2$NEt (0.6 equiv.), toluene, 0 °C, 2 h</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>rac-59, 67 (10 mol%), (CO$_i$-Pr)$_2$O (0.6 equiv.), $i$-Pr$_2$NEt (0.6 equiv.), toluene, $-60$ °C, 8 h</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
strategy allowed us to construct the stereochemistry at C10 of the hasubanan skeleton. The ester 62 obtained by kinetic resolution was converted almost quantitatively to ketone 58 by hydrolysis of the ester group and subsequent oxidation with Dess–Martin periodinane.

10.3.4 Construction of Hasubanan Skeleton

With the optically active 59 in hand, we next synthesized the precursor 71 for the oxidative coupling reaction (Scheme 10.13). The hydroxy group at C10 in 59 was protected with a TIPS group, and the silyl ether 68 was subjected to ozonolysis/reduction to give the alcohol 69 in 75% yield. After mesylation of the resulting hydroxy group of 69, azide 70 was obtained by reacting with sodium azide in a one-pot process. After reduction of the azide group of 70 under the Staudinger conditions, the protection of the resulting amine by a Boc group and the removal of MOM group by using a catalytic amount of carbon tetrabromide in 2-propanol were carried out, respectively, to give phenol 71 [54].

The oxidative coupling reaction was examined with phenol 71 as depicted in Scheme 10.14. After investigating various reaction conditions, we found that the oxidative coupling product 72 was obtained as a single diastereomer in 34% yield by treatment with PIDA in HFIP in the presence of MeOH at 0 °C [55]. The high diastereoselectivity in this reaction can be explained as follows. In this reaction, two transition states, TS-3 and TS-4, are possible with respect to the orientation of the C10 substituent. The reaction proceeds predominantly through TS-3, which has less steric repulsion than TS-4, yielding 72 with the desired stereochemistry at C13.

Then, the regioselective aza-Michael reaction of the dienone 72 was examined (Scheme 10.15). Although we explored various acidic or basic conditions, unfortunately, the desired aza-Michael reaction adduct at C14 did not proceed, and only the C5-adduct of 74 was obtained. Therefore, we decided to reduce the less hindered
olefin at C5–C6 of 72 by hydrogenation in the presence of Rh/C. The aza-Michael reaction of the resulting enone 75 took place at C14 upon treatment with hydrochloric acid. However, under these conditions, the resulting 76 proved to be unstable, undergoing elimination of the silyl ether at C10 to afford an oxonium cation 77 followed by intramolecular cyclization to give carbamate 78.

Thus, we explored the intramolecular aza-Michael reaction with the dienone 79, which was obtained by removal of the bromo group of 72 with formic acid in the presence of a palladium catalyst, under a variety of conditions (Table 10.2). Firstly, acidic conditions were examined. In the case of TFA, the reaction of 79 predominantly provided the undesired C5-adduct 81 (80/81 = 1:4.4, entry 1). With hydrochloric

Scheme 10.14 Oxidative phenolic coupling reaction of 71

Scheme 10.15 Initial attempts at intramolecular aza-Michael reaction
acid, 80 and 81 were obtained in a 1:1 ratio (entry 2). We then examined basic conditions. When DBU was used, the reaction did not proceed, resulting in the recovery of substrate 79, presumably due to the weak basicity of DBU (entry 3). Strong bases such as NaH and KO\textsubscript{t}-Bu afforded mixtures of 80 and 81 with little or no selectivity (entries 4, 5). Interestingly, in the case of potassium tert-butoxide, we observed a slight selectivity for the C14-adduct 80 (80/81 = 1.9:1, entry 6). Subsequent optimization of the reaction conditions demonstrated the efficacy of using HMPA as a co-solvent, and the selectivity was significantly enhanced to give 80 predominantly (80/81 = 7.3:1, entry 7). The diastereomers were separable by silica gel column chromatography, affording the desired C14-adduct 80 in 51% isolated yield (entry 7). The tetracyclic hasubanan skeleton was thus constructed.

### 10.3.5 Total Syntheses of (–)-Metaphanine and (+)-Stephadiamine

With the tetracyclic hasubanan skeleton 80 in hand, our attention moved to the total synthesis of (–)-metaphanine (36) (Scheme 10.16). First, oxidation at the C8 position in 80 was examined. Oxidation reaction of 80 with the electron-deficient oxaziridine rac-82 proceeded smoothly to give \(\alpha\)-hydroxyketone 83 as a single diastereomer in 71% yield. The reason for the stereoselectivity is presumably that the TIPS group on C10 shields the \(\beta\)-face of 80, thereby influencing the preferred direction of approach of rac-82. The resulting hydroxy group of \(\alpha\)-hydroxyketone 83 was oxidized with Dess–Martin periodinane to give a diketone, whose TIPS group was deprotected with HF followed by hydrogenolysis of the olefin to give hemiketal 85. Finally, asymmetric total synthesis of (–)-metaphanine (36) was achieved by deprotection of the Boc group of 85, followed by methylation of the resulting amine under reductive amination conditions.

We next examined the conversion of (–)-metaphanine (36) to (+)-stephadiamine (37) by contraction of the C-ring of the hasubanan skeleton (Scheme 10.17). In this transformation, it is necessary not only to contract the C-ring, but also to introduce the \(\alpha\)-tertiary amine with construction of the lactone. After investigating various conditions, we found that the aza-benzilic acid type rearrangement of 36 occurred efficiently through the formation of the iminium intermediate 86. This rearrangement was achieved by simply treatment 36 with NH\textsubscript{3} in MeOH at room temperature, resulting in a quantitative yield of compound 37. Although the biosynthetic pathway of (+)-stephadiamine (37) has not yet been established in detail [44, 56, 57], we consider that 36 is likely to be a biosynthetic precursor of 37 via a similar reaction, based on the structural similarity between 36 and 37.
**Table 10.2** Investigation of aza-Michael reaction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th><strong>80 and 81</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Yield [%]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>TFA, c CH₂Cl₂, 0 °C to rt.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>HCl/1,4-Dioxane, c CH₂Cl₂, 0 °C</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DBU, d THF, 0 °C to rt.</td>
<td>n.r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>NaH, d THF, 0 °C</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>NaOt-Bu, d THF, 0 °C</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>KOr-Bu, d THF, 0 °C</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>KOr-Bu, d THF/HMPA (9:1), 0 °C</td>
<td>58 (51)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) Yields of a mixture of 80 and 81 after flash column chromatography
b) Determined by ¹H NMR of the crude material
c) 1.0 equiv.
d) 5.0 equiv.
e) Isolated yield of 80
10.3.6 Investigation of Oxidative Phenolic Coupling for Cepharatines

Cepharatines are classified into A- and C-types (38, 40) and B- and D-types (39, 41), depending on the substitution pattern on the A-ring (Fig. 10.2). In order to synthesize these cepharatines, selective cyclization reaction at the ortho-position in addition to the para-position is necessary. After investigation of various reaction conditions and substrates, we found that dienone 88 (corresponding to the A-, C-types) and 89 (corresponding to the B-, D-types) were obtained in a 1:1 ratio in 43% yield from 87 bearing a hydroxy group at C4 (Scheme 10.18). NMR experiments confirmed that the absolute stereochemistry at the C13 position of 89 was opposite to that of 88.

The diastereoselectivity of the products 88 and 89 of the oxidative coupling reaction can be explained as shown in Fig. 10.3. Considering the orientation of the C10 substituent of 87, four transition states, TS-5 to TS-8, are possible in which the orientation of the substituent at C10 is equatorial. In the coupling reaction at the ortho-position, leading to 88, there is steric repulsion between the C10 silyl ether and the bromo group on the A-ring in TS-6. Therefore, TS-5 is preferred, leading to the coupling product 88 with the anti-configuration of the C10 and C13 positions. On the other hand, in the coupling reaction at the para-position, steric hindrance...
occurs between the ethylamino side chain on the C-ring and the bromo group in TS-7. Therefore, the reaction proceeds preferentially through TS-8 to give coupling product 89 with syn-configuration at the C10 and C13 positions.

Fig. 10.2 Structures of representative hasubanane alkaloids

Scheme 10.18 Oxidative phenolic coupling reaction of 87
10.3.7 Total Syntheses of (−)-Cepharatine A and C

Total synthesis of (−)-cepharatine A (38) and (−)-cepharatine C (40) based on the intramolecular aza-Michael reaction with dienone 88 was also examined (Scheme 10.19). Initially, the bromo group of 88 was removed with HCO₂Na in the presence of Pd(PPh₃)₄ to afford the dienone 90. Previous study had revealed that the aza-Michael reaction at the C5-position proceeds preferentially under acidic conditions (Table 10.2). Thus, hydrochloric acid was applied to 90, and as expected, the aza-Michael reaction proceeded at the C5-position to give enone 91, followed by elimination of the C10 hydroxy group to afford conjugated dienone 92 in 61% yield. The phenolic hydroxy group of 92 was protected as methoxymethyl ether, and the resulting 93 was subjected to oxidation reaction at the C6 position. After several investigations, we found that oxaziridine rac-94 was effective in this case, and the α-hydroxy ketone 95 was obtained in 59% yield. After removal of the MOM and Boc groups with trifluoroacetic acid, the methyl group was introduced into the resulting amine by reacting with formaldehyde and NaBH₃CN to furnish 96 in 41% yield. The synthesis of (−)-cepharatine A (38) was explored using 96, employing a cascade reaction that involved a retro aza-Michael reaction and subsequent hemiaminal formation (Scheme 10.20). Despite examining a various reaction conditions involving both acids and bases, the desired 38 was not produced. Instead, only the decomposition of compound 96 was observed. Interestingly, however, when 96 was left at room temperature for 48 h, the desired cascade reaction proceeded spontaneously, and 38 was obtained in 91% yield. Finally, (−)-cepharatine C (40) was synthesized from (−)-cepharatine A (38) by following Reisman’s protocol with sulfuric acid and trimethyl orthoformate [50].

10.3.8 Total Syntheses of (+)-Cepharatine B and D

Total syntheses of (+)-cepharatine B (ent-39) and (+)-cepharatine D (ent-41) from enone 89 were also investigated (Scheme 10.21). Following the synthetic route shown in Scheme 10.19, α-hydroxyketone 99 was synthesized from dienone 89 in three steps. The Boc and MOM groups of 99 were then deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid. Interestingly, in the case of 99, a retro aza-Michael reaction/hemiaminal formation cascade reaction proceeded simultaneously with the deprotection step to give hemiaminal 100. Finally, methylation of the amino group of 100 gave (+)-cepharatine B (ent-39) in 37% yield. The phenolic hydroxy group of ent-39 was methylated by treatment with TMS diazomethane to afford (+)-cepharatine D (ent-41).
Scheme 10.19 Total syntheses of (–)-cepharatine A (38) and C (40)

Scheme 10.20 Proposed mechanism of 1,2-migration of the nitrogen atom at C5

Scheme 10.21 Total syntheses of (+)-cepharatine B (ent-39) and D (ent-40)
10.4 Conclusion

In this chapter, we have described our efforts to synthesize fused polycyclic alkaloids based on the strategy of dearomatization and intramolecular aza-Michael reactions. Dearomative oxidative phenolic coupling proceeds with environmentally benign hypervalent iodine (e.g., PIDA) as an oxidant, giving tricyclic dienones with quaternary carbon centers. In the intramolecular aza-Michael reaction of the resulting dienones, we found that the reaction can be driven regioselectively toward either of two reaction sites with similar electronic states by choosing the appropriate reaction conditions. The present strategy showed that highly fused three-dimensional compounds can be efficiently synthesized from acyclic or aromatic compounds. This approach should also be applicable to the synthesis of natural products with various other complex frameworks.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 11
Overcoming Difficulties in Total Synthesis of (+)-Cotylenin A

Masahiro Uwamori, Ryunosuke Osada, Ryoji Sugiyama, Kotaro Nagatani, Haruka Tezuka, Yunosuke Hoshino, Atsushi Minami, and Masahisa Nakada

Abstract The total synthesis of the natural product cotelynin A, which exhibits promising anti-cancer activity, is urgently required, as its source, Cladosporium sp. 501-7W, has lost its proliferative ability. Herein, we report the first total synthesis of cotelynin A. Contiguous asymmetric carbons at the C8 and C9 positions in the B-ring of the aglycon moiety of cotylenin A are difficult to construct after the formation of the B-ring via pinacol coupling. The revised synthesis of the aglycon moiety involved the enkolynlation of a methyl ketone to construct the B-ring; for this convergent synthesis, one fragment was prepared using our catalytic asymmetric intramolecular cyclopropanation, and the other fragment was obtained via the acyl radical cyclization of a known aldehyde, which was prepared by sharpless asymmetric epoxidation of geraniol and subsequent rearrangement. Radical generation using a copper catalyst and TBHP was effective for an acyl radical cyclization. The two prepared fragments were then assembled via Ulimoto coupling. The α-hydroxyketone at the C8-C9 position was stereoselectively reduced with Me$_4$NBH(O$_2$C$_3$Pr)$_3$, which was newly prepared in this study, and led to the successful construction of the C8-C9 1,2-diol. A structurally unprecedented sugar moiety was synthesized for the first time by terminating successive reversible acetalizations with an irreversible epoxide ring-opening reaction. Although the glycosylation of the synthesized fragments proceeded with difficulty owing to steric hindrance around the C9 hydroxy group of the aglycone, the desired product was successfully obtained under the reaction conditions reported by Wan et al.

Keywords Cascade reaction · Convergent synthesis · Cyclopropane · Enantioselective · Natural product · Pd-catalyzed reaction · Glycosylation
11.1 Introduction

Cotylenin A (Fig. 11.1) is a diterpene glycoside isolated from the secondary metabolites of Cladosporium sp. [1]. Isolated cotylenin A regulates plant growth, induces functional and morphological differentiation in mouse (M1) and human leukemia (HL-60) cells, and causes apoptosis in many human cancer cell lines when combined with interferon-α [2]. The X-ray crystallographic analysis of a tripartite complex of cotylenin A, a 14-3-3 protein, and a phosphopeptide of H⁺-ATPase [3] revealed the unique bioactivity of cotylenin A.

Thus far, the bioactivities of cotylenins A-J (Fig. 11.1) [4] have not been thoroughly investigated owing to their scarcity. As mentioned above, cotylenin A exhibits promising anti-cancer activity with a unique mode of action as a “molecular glue.” However, biological studies on cotylenin A have stalled because Cladosporium
sp. 501-7W, which produces cotylenin A, has lost its proliferative ability [5]. Therefore, a new source of cotylenin A must be discovered.

In this context, total synthesis is an effective method for supplying rare natural products and the derivatives or structural analogs of natural products that cannot be synthesized from natural products. After the structural elucidation of cotylenin A in 1998, only Kato et al. [6] have developed the total synthesis of cotylenol, and an aglycon of cotylenin A and total synthesis of cotylenin A has never been reported [7, 8] until our total synthesis [9, 10]. The aglycone moiety of cotylenin A has a 5–8-5 carbocyclic scaffold with a quaternary asymmetric carbon at the fused ring site, a chiral tertiary alcohol at the allylic position, four consecutive chiral carbons containing trans-1,2-diols, and a four-substituted alkene bearing an isopropyl group. In addition, a trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane with methyl and epoxyethyl groups, fused to glucose and attached to the aglycon, is a structurally unusual sugar moiety. These structural features, especially the unprecedented structure of the sugar moiety, make cotylenin A unique compared to other members of the cotylenin family.

In this chapter, we describe our attempts and approaches to developing the total synthesis of cotylenin A.

11.2 Initial Synthetic Approach to Cotylenin A

11.2.1 Retrosynthetic Analysis

Scheme 11.1 shows the initial retrosynthetic analysis of cotylenin A. It can be synthesized via the glycosylation of the sugar moiety with the aglycone moiety 1. Next, as pinacol coupling can afford eight-membered carbocyclic rings, a pinacol coupling of dialdehyde 2 can afford 1,2-diol at the C8 and C9 positions [11]. However, the diastereoselectivity of the 1,2-diol could be a problem, which could be controlled by optimizing the reaction conditions. Compounds 3 and 4 could be obtained via catalytic asymmetric intramolecular cyclopropanation (CAIMCP), which was previously developed by our group [12].

We previously synthesized chiral β-keto phosphonate 3a via CAIMCP [13]. However, we did not use 3a as an A-ring fragment owing to its low reactivity. Instead, we used α-bromoketone 3b, which we previously subjected to Utimoto coupling in the first total synthesis of ophiobolin A [14].

The C-ring fragment 4 was also prepared via CAIMCP, based on our previous report on the CAIMCP of a chiral cyclopropane derivative to afford 4 [12a].
11.2.2 Preparation of the A-ring Fragment 3b

(E)-Diazo β-keto sulfone 7, which was required for the CAIMCP step in the preparation of α-bromoketone 3b, was prepared via the procedure shown in Scheme 11.2. The stereoselective Ireland-Claisen rearrangement of but-3-en-2-ol afforded 5, which was converted to 6 by reacting with the dianion of mesityl methyl sulfone. Compound 6 underwent a diazo-transfer to afford 7. The 1H-NMR of 7 confirmed that it is a pure (E)-isomer.

The subsequent CAIMCP of 7 under optimized conditions afforded cyclopropane 8 in 99% yield and 91% ee (Scheme 11.3). Cyclopropane 8 was crystalline but unsuitable for X-ray crystallographic analysis. However, crystalline nitrile 9, which

\[
\text{OH} \quad \text{MeC(OEt)}_3, \text{AcOH (cat.)} \quad \text{neat, 140 °C, 5 h, 81%}
\]

\[
\text{MeC(OEt)}_3, \text{AcOH (cat.)} \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{Mes (1.1 equiv)} \quad \text{THF, 0 °C, 15 min, 83%}
\]

\[
\text{TsN}_3, \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3\text{CN, rt, 3 h} \quad \text{7 (}(E)\text{-isomer only)}
\]

Scheme 11.2 Preparation of (E)-diazo β-keto sulfone 7 for subsequent catalytic asymmetric intramolecular cyclopropanation (CAIMCP)
Scheme 11.3 Synthesis of 9 from 7 via CAIMCP

Scheme 11.4 Preparation of the A-ring fragment 3b

was prepared by the reaction of 8 with sodium cyanide, was suitable for single-crystal X-ray crystallographic analysis. Consequently, the absolute structure 9 was confirmed (Scheme 11.3).

The transformation of 9 to 3b is shown in Scheme 11.4. Nitrile 9 was reduced to an aldehyde using DIBAL-H, which was further reduced to a primary alcohol using NaBH₄. The primary alcohol was selectively protected to afford 10. The treatment of 10 with sodium amalgam to form an alkene, followed by regioselective bromohydrin formation and Dess-Martin oxidation, afforded the A-ring fragment 3b.

11.2.3 Preparation of the C-ring Fragment via the CAIMCP of α-diazo β-keto Sulfone

The retrosynthetic analysis of the C-ring fragment 4 is shown in Scheme 11.5. Fragment 4 could be prepared by the Pummerer rearrangement of sulfide 12. Compound 13, a precursor of 12, could be prepared by the reaction of formaldehyde with an enolate. The enolate could be reductively formed from sulfone 14, which could be
synthesized from the reaction of phenylthiolate with cyclopropane 15. Compound 15 could be obtained from the CAIMCP of 16.

The first step in the synthesis of the C-ring fragment 4 was the preparation of hydroxy ketone 13 from cyclopropane 15 (>99% ee) (Scheme 11.6). Compound 15 was subjected to CAIMCP with potassium phenylthiolate to open the cyclopropane ring [15]. A reaction with samarium diiodide afforded samarium enolate, which was treated with aqueous formalin solution to afford hydroxy ketone 13.

Compound 13 was converted to the corresponding TIPS ether, which was reduced to an alcohol using tPrMgCl. Then, LaCl₃·2LiCl [16] was used to realize the desired 1,2-addition of the ketone. Dehydration of the tertiary alcohol with thionyl chloride and pyridine and the subsequent removal of the TIPS ether afforded 14. Successive Dess–Martin oxidation of 14, double-bond isomerization under basic conditions,
reduction of the aldehyde, and TIPS ether formation afforded 12. Compound 12 was subjected to Pummerer rearrangement to afford 4, which resulted in an overall yield of 37% from 16 in 12 steps. This C-ring fragment 4 was used in the coupling reaction with the A-ring fragment 3b. Owing to the low yield of 4 in this synthetic route, we developed a shorter route.

11.2.4 Preparation of the C-ring Fragment via the CAIMCP of α-diazo β-keto Ester

We explored the CAIMCP of α-diazo-β-keto esters to afford 4, as the product of the CAIMCP could be converted to the same synthetic intermediate formed during the preparation of 4 from 15 (Scheme 11.6) via ring-opening with phenyl thiolate, enol triflate formation, coupling reaction, and reduction of the ester (Scheme 11.7).

The CAIMCP of α-diazo-β-keto esters is generally not enantioselective owing to the low steric effect of the ester moiety [12a, 17]. Hence, we examined the CAIMCP of α-diazo-β-keto esters bearing a bulky alcohol moiety and obtained the α-diazo-β-keto ester of 2,4,6-trimethylphenol with high enantioselectivity (Scheme 11.8) [8]. Cyclopropane 18 was crystalline, and its absolute configuration was confirmed via X-ray crystallographic analysis (Scheme 11.7). Cyclopropane 18 was successively subjected to a ring-opening reaction with sodium phenylthiolate, conversion to enol triflate, and coupling with tPrMgCl and (2-Th)Cu(CN)Li [18] in a one-pot reaction to afford 19. The DIBAL-H reduction of 19 afforded 20, which is the same synthetic
intermediate observed in Scheme 11.6. Thus, the C-ring fragment 4 was prepared from cyclopropane 16 with an overall yield of 48% in five flasks.

### 11.2.5 Synthesis of a C8-Epi Cotylenol Derivative via the Construction of 5–8-5 Carbocyclic Cotylenin A Scaffold by Pinacol Coupling

After synthesizing the A- and C-ring fragments, we examined their coupling (Scheme 9). As mentioned in Sect. 11.2.1, HWE coupling of 3a was unsuccessful; therefore, we used an Utimoto coupling reaction [19], which we have previously used in the first total synthesis of (+)-ophiobolin A [14]. The Utimoto coupling was expected to yield favorable results because the boron enolate generated in situ reacts mildly and efficiently with bulky aldehydes. As expected, we obtained a single isomer in high yield from the Utimoto coupling of 3b and 4 via the formation of a Zimmerman–Traxler chair-like transition state. The product was subjected to dehydration using Burgess reagent to afford the α,β-unsaturated ketone 21.

The Wittig reaction of ketone 21 with methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide and t-BuOK afforded the desired exomethylene product 22 in high yield (Scheme 11.8). During the dihydroxylation of 22, the reaction in a mixed solvent of acetone and water did not afford the desired product, and the same result was obtained when pyridine was added to accelerate the reaction. However, the reaction in a mixture of THF and water afforded the desired diol 23 in 98% yield, with a diastereomeric ratio of 8:1.

Next, we investigated the reaction conditions for the protection of the 1,2-diol in 23. Cotylenin A has a primary methyl ether and a tertiary alcohol in the A-ring moiety, and tertiary alcohols are easily dehydrated to form alkenes without protecting
Scheme 11.9 Synthesis of a C8-epi cotylenol derivative 27 via the construction of a 5–8-5 carbocyclic cotylenin A scaffold by pinacol coupling

groups. Therefore, we selectively converted the primary hydroxy group to methyl ether at this stage and protected the tertiary hydroxy group with a trimethylsilyl group, which can be easily deprotected.

However, the selective methylation of the primary alcohol in 23 using common reagents such as methyl iodide, dimethyl sulfate, and methyl triflate did not afford the desired compound. However, the use of Meerwein reagent and bulky 2,6-di-tert-butyl-4-methylpyridine afforded the desired monomethyl ether 24 and dimethyl ether in 64% and 35% yields, respectively. To further improve the selectivity of the monomethylation, the reaction temperature was lowered to 0 °C, which furnished monomethyl 24 in 82% yield.

Next, we examined the construction of the B-ring. First, the TIPS group was removed using TBAF in THF to quantitatively yield the triol. All three hydroxy
groups were protected with TMS groups using TMSCl in pyridine as the solvent. When TMSOTf was used as the reagent, the dehydration of the tertiary allylic alcohol occurred because of the Lewis acidity of TMSOTf, and the desired product was not obtained. The resulting TMS ether was treated with potassium carbonate in methanol to remove the primary TMS groups, and the resulting diol was converted into dialdehyde 25 via Dess–Martin oxidation. The pinacol coupling of dialdehyde 25 using TiCl₄, Zn, and pyridine furnished an eight-membered carbocyclic ring to afford a diol product in 71% yield.

However, the ¹H-NMR spectra of the diol product revealed that the configurations of the C8 and C9 positions were different from those of cotylenol. Therefore, to determine the configurations, we examined the selective oxidation and reduction of the diol and analyzed the ¹H-NMR spectra of the product. The selective oxidation of the C9 hydroxy group with MnO₂ and subsequent reduction with NaBH₄ afforded diol 27 as a single isomer. The ¹H-NMR spectrum of 27 was consistent with the same compound described in the literature, so that the structures of 26 and 27 are determined as shown in Scheme 11.9 [6b].

Notably, the configurations at the C8 and C9 positions remained almost unchanged when the reaction conditions for the pinacol coupling were varied. In addition, attempts to selectively protect one of the hydroxy groups of 28 were unsuccessful. This result was attributed to the rigid 5-8-5 carbon skeleton of cotylenol, which suggests that the stereoselective construction of the two contiguous chiral centers at C8 and C9 would be difficult via pinacol coupling. Hence, we investigated another reaction to construct the B-ring.

### 11.3 Revised Synthetic Approach to Cotylenin A

#### 11.3.1 Revised Retrosynthetic Analysis of Cotylenin A

Eight-membered carbocyclic rings are generally difficult to construct owing to their transannular strain, which makes medium-membered rings special. Consequently, limited reactions are available for the effective construction of eight-membered rings. We previously realized the construction of the eight-membered ring of 29 by ring-closing metathesis (RCM) of 28 as part of the total synthesis of ophiobolin A (Scheme 11.10) [14]. This RCM strategy could be applicable to the construction of the B-ring of cotylenin A because the substrate can be easily prepared from dialdehyde 25. However, molecular modeling studies predicted that the oxidation of the C8-C9 alkene in the product would likely occur from the less-hindered side, forming a 1,2-diol with the same configuration as that in 27.

Notably, the intramolecular alkenylation of methyl ketone 30 afforded 31 with an eight-membered ring in the total synthesis of taxol (Scheme 11.10) [20]. Hence, we considered the intramolecular alkenylation of a methyl ketone to construct the eight-membered B-ring of cotylenin A, despite the necessity of an additional synthesis step for the substrate.
Scheme 11.10 Construction of eight-membered carbocyclic rings by ring-closing metathesis (RCM) of 28 in our total synthesis of ophiobolin A and intramolecular alkenylation of 30 in our total synthesis of taxol.

The revised retrosynthetic analysis of cotylenin A is shown in Scheme 11.11. Kato et al. reported that the desired diastereomer was preferentially formed even though the hydroxylation at the C9 position of 32 (R_3 = TMS) is not highly stereoselective [6b]. Therefore, although the stereoselective hydroxylation at the C9 position of ketone 32 must be investigated, we considered ketone 32 to be a promising synthetic intermediate and investigated the intramolecular alkenylation of methyl ketone 33 to obtain 32. To synthesize methyl ketone 33, the A-ring fragment 34 was prepared from 9 (Scheme 11.4). However, a new synthetic method was developed for the C-ring fragment 35.

11.3.2 Preparation of the New A-ring Fragment 34

The enolate formed by the reaction of 9 with SmI₂, lithium naphthalenide, and LiDBB showed low reactivity toward aldehydes, suggesting that 9 should be transformed into α-bromo ketone 34, which could be used in Utimoto coupling. However, the enolate generated from 9 by reaction with SmI₂ could not directly afford 34 (Scheme 11.12). Therefore, we investigated the preparation and reaction of the enol ether. Enol acetate 36 should be converted to 34 via bromohydrin formation; therefore, the enolate formed by the reaction of 9 with SmI₂ was reacted with Ac₂O [21] to afford enol acetate 36 in 20–30% yield. Hence, we explored the preparation of other enol ethers using various trapping reagents and observed that the reaction with CIP(O)(OEt)₂ quantitatively afforded enol phosphate 37. The subsequent reaction of 37 with NBS in THF containing H₂O afforded 34.
Scheme 11.11 Revised retrosynthetic analysis of cotylenin A

Scheme 11.12 Preparation of the A-ring fragment 34 from 9

11.3.3 Preparation of the New C-ring Fragment 35b

First, we developed the preparation of the iodoalkene 35a (Scheme 11.11) which corresponds to enol triflate 35b because iodoalkene is suitable for a Pd-catalyzed reaction. However, enol triflate 35b was selected because iodoalkene would react with the reactive species generated in the Utimoto coupling reaction via a radical process. Furthermore, although enol triflate is unstable under basic conditions, enol triflate 35b could be less reactive owing to the steric hindrance induced by the adjacent isopropyl group and quaternary carbon.

The enol triflate moiety of 35b was derived from the corresponding isopropyl ketone, which could be prepared by acyl radical cyclization of an aldehyde bearing a
trisubstituted alkene, such as $38$ (Scheme 11.13). As $38$ is a known compound easily prepared from geraniol $[22]$, we investigated the acyl radical cyclization of $38$. The acyl radical cyclization of $38$ using tert-dodecanethiol and AIBN $[23]$ afforded a mixture of the desired $39$ and the decarbonylated product derived from $38$. In acyl radical cyclization, racemization may proceed via the decarbonylation and re-carbonylation of the generated acyl radical $[24]$. However, HPLC analysis of the derivative of $39$ revealed that the optical purity of $39$ was retained. Although the desired acyl radical cyclization of $38$ using dodecanethiol and AIBN occurred, $39$ was extremely hydrophobic, making it difficult to separate it from the unidentified by-products via silica gel column chromatography. Therefore, the product mixture was directly treated with LDA and PhNTf$_2$ to afford enol triflate $40$. The yield of the two-step process was $\sim 30\text{-}40\%$, indicating that the reaction conditions should be optimized.

Notably, the acyl radical cyclization reactions of $38$ under various conditions did not provide promising results. Hence, we explored the Cu-catalyzed radical acyl cyanation of alkenes reported by Bao et al. $[25]$. The reaction of $38$ with CuCl, 2,2′-bipyridyl, tert-butyl hydroperoxide (TBHP), and tert-dodecanethiol in methyl tert-butyl methyl ether (TBME) afforded $39$, which was converted to $40$ in 54% yield (two steps). The $^1$H-NMR spectrum of the product mixture obtained from $38$ indicated that the acyl radical reaction proceeded in $\sim 90\%$ yield (Scheme 11.13). Subsequently, the TBS group in the enol triflate $40$ was removed using 3HF·Et$_3$N. When TBAF was used for TBS removal, the CF$_3$SO$_2$ group migrated to afford a triflate of the primary alcohol, which further underwent intramolecular reactions $[26]$. Finally, the Dess–Martin reaction of the primary alcohol afforded the new C-ring fragment $35b$. 

Scheme 11.13 Preparation of the C-ring fragment $35b$ from $38$
11.3.4 Preparation of Methyl Ketone for Pd-Catalyzed Intramolecular Alkenylation

The as-prepared new A- (34) and C-ring (35b) fragments were then successively subjected to Utimoto coupling (Scheme 11.14) under the same conditions as those in Scheme 11.9 and a reaction with the Burgess reagent to afford 41 in 84% yield (two steps).

Notably, the Wittig reaction of 41 under the conditions shown in Scheme 11.8 afforded 42 in <35% yield, which was improved to 42% by using CeCl₃ as an additive [27]. However, the yield did not increase further, despite extensive efforts. Considering that ketone 41 was recovered in all reactions and a by-product was isolated (Fig. 11.2), ketone 41 was prone to enolize in the presence of methylene phosphorane, indicating the different reactivities of ketones 41 and 21, which is shown in Scheme 11.9. Hence, we used the Takai reaction [28] to methylate 41 to afford 42 in 43% yield, which could not be improved using the reaction protocol reported by Lombardo [29]. However, the use of ZrCl₄ instead of TiCl₄ [30] successfully increased the yield to 91%. Notably, the exo-olefin of 42 was easily isomerized to an internal olefin when 42 was purified via silica gel column chromatography. Therefore, crude 42 was used for the subsequent dihydroxylation reaction.

The dihydroxylation of 42 afforded 43 in 71% yield (over two steps) with a dr ratio of 7:1. Efforts to increase the dr ratio by using various ligands for OsO₄ were

Scheme 11.14 Preparation of methyl ketone 45
unsuccessful. Selective methylation of the primary alcohol of 43 and protection of the tertiary alcohol as a TMS ether afforded 44. The direct transformation of 44 to methyl ketone 45 was attempted using a variety of reagents; however, the yield was low owing to the decomposition of 44, which was ascribed to the reaction of the enol triflate moiety with the organometallic reagents. Hence, although additional steps were required, nitrile 44 was subjected to DIBAL-H reduction to afford its aldehyde, followed by reaction with MeMgBr, and the Dess–Martin reaction of the resultant alcohol successfully afforded methyl ketone 45.

11.3.5 Construction of the Eight-Membered B-ring via Pd-Catalyzed Intramolecular Alkenylation

The cyclization of methyl ketone 45 was conducted under the same reaction conditions used for the construction of the eight-membered ring in taxol [20, 31]. However, this resulted in the degradation of 45 (Scheme 11.15). Compound 30 (Scheme 11.10) obtained via Pd-catalyzed cyclization is an iodoalkene whose reactivity differs from that of enol triflate 45. Hence, the cyclization of enol triflate 45 could be different from that of 30, and the oxidative addition of enol triflate 45 and Pd may not proceed. Consequently, the reaction was conducted with PhOK and PdCl$_2$(PCy$_3$)$_2$, which were ligated with more electron-rich ligands to promote oxidative addition (Scheme 11.16). The resulting product contained a mixture of 46 and its C8 epimer, indicating that epimerization occurred competitively during the cyclization. However, this epimerization was suppressed by lowering the reaction temperature to 50 °C, which afforded 46 in 95% yield.

However, the cyclization in the presence of PdCl$_2$(PCy$_3$)$_2$ did not proceed when the color of the reaction solution was yellow and occurred only after a black precipitate was formed in the reaction solution. The black precipitate could be derived from Pd which was confirmed to not catalyze the cyclization. We checked whether the cyclization proceeded in the reddish-brown supernatant solution obtained after mixing PdCl$_2$(PCy$_3$)$_2$ and PhOK for a certain time, and we found that the use of the reddish-brown supernatant solution including a catalytic amount of a Pd complex
a) Pd(PPh₃)₄ (1.0 equiv.)
  PhOK (3.3 equiv.)
  toluene, 80 °C to 110 °C, 24 h
 or
b) Pd(PPh₃)₄ (0.8 equiv.)
  tBuOK (8.2 equiv.), toluene, rt,
 or
c) Pd(PPh₃)₄ (0.3 equiv.)
  Cs₂CO₃ (3.0 equiv.), Et₃N (3.0 equiv.)
  toluene, rt,
 or
d) PdCl₂(dppf)₂•CH₂Cl₂ (0.5 equiv.)
  PhOK (5.0 equiv.)
  toluene, 110 °C, 6 h

a, b) decomp.; c, d) NR

**Scheme 11.15** Attempted intramolecular alkenylation of 45

**Scheme 11.16** Successful intramolecular alkenylation of 45

afforded 46. Thus, although two equivalents of PdCl₂(PCy₃)₂ were used for the cyclization of 45, the reaction of 45 may be mediated by a catalytic amount of the Pd complex dissolved in the solution. However, the structure of the Pd complex has not yet been elucidated.

### 11.3.6 Stereoselective Construction of 1,2-Diol at the C8-C9 Position and Synthesis of Cotylenol

The hydroxylation of 46 at the C9 position (Scheme 11.17) using MoOPH and LiNTMS₂ (LHMDS) afforded 47 and its C9 epimer in 44% and 28% yields, respectively. However, the reaction of 46 with MoOPH, LHMDS, and LiCl improved the yields of 47 and its C9 epimer to 52% and 19% yields, respectively, thereby improving the diastereoselectivity.

Subsequently, the reduction of α-hydroxy ketone 47 was examined. Reduction in the presence of NaBH(OAc)₃ and Me₃NBH(OAc)₃ [32] stereoselectively produces a trans-1,2-diol from a cyclic α-hydroxy ketone, afforded 48 but exhibited poor reproducibility in terms of yield and stereoselectivity [6]. This lack of reproducibility was attributed to the low solubility of the reagents in the solvents. Hence, reagents with
more lipophilic ligands were used to improve the solubility of the reductant. Notably, the reduction with Me$_4$NBH(O$_2$C$_{iPr}$)$_3$, which was readily prepared from Me$_4$NBH$_4$ and $i$PrCO$_2$H, afforded trans-1,2-diol 48 in 80% yield as a single diastereomer. The high reproducibility and stereoselectivity of the reduction reaction can be ascribed to the ligand (O$_2$C$_{iPr}$), which enhances the solubility of the reagent and the steric effect on the transition state, which favorably affords 48. Incidentally, Me$_4$NBH(O$_2$C$_{iPr}$)$_3$ was ~10 times more soluble in THF than Me$_4$NBH(OAc)$_3$. The reduction of 47 using Me$_4$NBH(O$_2$C$_{iPr}$)$_3$ afforded cyclic borates. Hence, trimethylolethane, which is known to form chelates with boronates by ligand exchange, was used in the reduction workup of Me$_4$NBH(O$_2$C$_{iPr}$)$_3$ to isolate trans-1,2-diol 48. Finally, the TMS group in 48 was removed using TBAF to afford cotylenol. The spectroscopic data of the synthesized cotylenol were identical to those of the natural product [33].

### 11.4 Synthesis of the Sugar Moiety in Cotylenin A

The sugar moiety of cotylenin A is different from that of all other cotylenins, and its synthesis had not been reported until our report on the first total synthesis of cotylenin A. This could be attributed to the highly oxidized, unprecedented structure of the sugar, which comprises a trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane and an epoxide. This sugar moiety contains acid-sensitive functional groups and is therefore unstable in acids, making its synthesis challenging. The trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane is fused to the THP ring, which is likely a glucose derivative because the sequence of the chiral carbon atoms in the THP ring is the same as that in glucose. The sugar moiety of cotylenin A could be synthesized by coupling glucose-derived hydroxyketone 49 with epoxyaldehyde 50 (Scheme 11.18). Therefore, considering the glycosylation
reaction of the aglycone moiety with the acid-sensitive sugar moiety, we initially assembled thioglycoside 49 and epoxyaldehyde 50 to synthesize a sugar moiety that could be glycosylated under mild conditions.

Hydroxyketone 49 was synthesized as shown in Scheme 11.19. Benzylation of known compound 51 [34], followed by regioselective reduction of $p$-methoxybenzylidene acetal to afford 52, methylation of the primary alcohol of 52, removal of the PMB group using DDQ to afford 53, Dess–Martin oxidation, and removal of the TBS group furnished 49. The low yield of the TBS group removal was due to the tendency of 49 to dimerize.

Epoxy aldehyde 50a was prepared from the known compound 54 [35] (Scheme 11.20). Compound 54 was subjected to Payne rearrangement in the presence of $t$BuSH under basic conditions, affording a β-hydroxy sulfide [36]. The subsequent reaction of the sulfide with Meerwein’s reagent afforded the sulfonium salt, which on treatment with a base afforded epoxide 55 [36]. The benzyl group of 55 was removed by hydrogenolysis to afford 1,2-diol. Oxidation of the primary alcohol of the 1,2-diol with various reagents was attempted. However, the product, hydroxyaldehyde, was highly water-soluble and easily dimerized. Therefore, the 1,2-diol was converted to bis-TMS ether, followed by Swern oxidation to obtain 50a [37].
Next, the coupling of 49 and 50a was examined under acidic conditions, which led to the dimerization of 49 to furnish 56 and 57 (Scheme 11.21). This could be attributed to the steric hindrance of the TMS ether of the adjacent tertiary alcohol on the carbonyl group of the aldehyde. Therefore, the less-hindered 50b was used, which formed 56 and 57 but not the desired product.

Consequently, we explored another synthetic method for the sugar moiety. Watson et al. refluxed a benzene solution of hydroxyketone 58 with p-TsOH to obtain 60 bearing a trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane moiety in 97% yield (Scheme 11.22) [38]. This reaction likely involves transannular dehydration via the intermediate 1,4-dioxane derivative 59 to produce 60 bearing a trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane moiety.

As the transannular dehydration of 59 afforded 60, we hypothesized that 61 could be synthesized by the transannular acetal exchange of 62, which could be produced from 63 (Scheme 11.23). Therefore, we synthesized 66 (Scheme 11.24) via the intermolecular acetal exchange reaction [39] of 64 [40] with 65, which was in turn obtained by removing TBS from the methyl ether of 52. Compound 66 was subjected
to DIBAL-H reduction and sharpless asymmetric epoxidation to afford 67. Successive Payne rearrangement with TBAF [41] and reaction with CDI afforded cyclic carbonate 68. The removal of the PMB group of 68 using DDQ, followed by Parikh–Doering oxidation afforded 62 in 19% yield. Notably, the oxidation of one of the diastereomers of the starting material was slow, and 39% of the unreacted diastereomer was recovered. This could be attributed to the intramolecular hydrogen bonding of 68a or the steric hindrance derived from its shape, which may reduce the reactivity of the secondary alcohol.

Next, we attempted to obtain 61 from the transannular acetal exchange reaction of 62 (Scheme 11.25). However, 61 was not produced. The structure of 59 (Scheme 11.22) was symmetric, and its reaction proceeded even if a cation was generated from either hemiketal. In addition, the six-membered ring containing two hemiketals in 59 is flexible and is likely to undergo conformational changes, which could be favorable for the reaction. However, in the case of 62, the structure of the trans-fused glucose ring was less flexible and may not form an oxa-bridged ring.

Notably, the hemithioacetal in hydroxyketone 49 decomposed during isolation, which makes the optimization of the reaction conditions difficult. Hence, we synthesized hydroxyketones without a hemithioacetal by removing the dimethyl ketal of 69 using p-TsOH and acetone (Scheme 11.26). However, the reaction yielded 70a as a mixture of isomers. The reaction of 69 with pivaldehyde in the presence of p-TsOH afforded hemiketal 70b as a diastereomeric mixture in 48% yield.

The reaction of an aldehyde with hydroxyketone 49 could produce a hemiketal which is similar to 70b in Scheme 11.26. An epoxy aldehyde could be suitable because it has low steric hindrance and is expected to form an oxa-bridged ring through an intramolecular reaction of the hemiketal generated by the reaction with 49. As we obtained aldehyde 71 (Scheme 11.27), which would afford the desired configuration of the sugar moiety, we explored the reaction of 49 with 71.

However, as the products of the reaction of 49 with 71 contain acid-sensitive epoxides and acetals, we employed basic conditions based on the dimerization of hydroxyketones under basic conditions [42]. However, only the starting material was detected during TLC monitoring. Nevertheless, as 70 is formed from 69, we believed that 72 must have formed, which was confirmed via 1H-NMR. Therefore, unlike 70, 72 was unstable and was converted into the starting material.

Scheme 11.23  Retrosynthetic analysis of the sugar moiety of cotylenin A via transannular acetal exchange
Overcoming Difficulties in Total Synthesis of (+)-Cotylenin A

Scheme 11.24 Preparation of 62

Scheme 11.25 Attempted transannular acetal exchange for the synthesis of 61

Scheme 11.26 Formation of hemiketal 70 via the acid-catalyzed reaction of 69 with acetone and pivalaldehyde
Subsequently, hemiacetal 72 was converted to TMS ether 73, whose structure was confirmed by $^1$H-NMR. Compound 73 was treated with TBAF, and the expected cyclization generated 74 bearing a trioxabicyclo[2.2.1]octane. If the benzyl ether next to the hydroxy group in 74 is a tosylate, it can be converted to the corresponding epoxide bearing the correct stereochemistry under basic conditions. This synthetic approach (Scheme 11.27) could be applicable to the synthesis of the sugar moiety of cotylenin A.

We investigated the coupling conditions for 49 and epoxy-aldehyde-bearing tosylate 75 (Scheme 11.28). The reaction of 49 with 75 afforded a mixture of hemiacetals 77a and 77b at 20–25 °C in acetonitrile with 1 equiv. of CSA. The concentration (2 M) of the reaction mixture was crucial for the formation of 77a and 77b. However, similar to 72, 77a and 77b were unstable. Both 77a and 77b were not detected during TLC analysis but were identified as a 1:1 mixture in $^1$H-NMR analysis. Notably, when the mixture of 77a and 77b was diluted to 0.1 M with acetonitrile, 77a and 77b disappeared, and the equilibrium shifted to 49 and 75. This result indicates that the 2 M concentration of the reaction mixture is crucial for the formation of 77a and 77b, suggesting that the aggregation of products may have shifted the equilibrium toward the product.

The epoxide ring-opening reaction by the internal attack of the hydroxy group of 77a proceeded slowly, even with acid catalysis, and 78 was formed 24 h after the start of the reaction. After 48 h, the yield of 78 did not change, which could be attributed to the configuration of the C1” position and a consequent slow interconversion of 77a and 77b.

Compound 78 could not be sufficiently purified by silica gel column chromatography and contained inseparable impurities; therefore, it was treated directly with NaH to afford epoxide 79 (23% yield from 49 and 75). The sequential conversion from 49 and 75 to 79 involved the formation of four carbon–oxygen bonds to furnish...
Scheme 11.28 Successful synthesis of the sugar moiety fragment 79 via the reaction of 49 with 75

a reasonable yield of 23%. This synthetic procedure required only two flasks, which is advantageous, and could be scaled up to the gram scale.

11.5 Glycosylation and Completion of the First Total Synthesis of Cotylenin A

Next, the glycosylation of 79 was investigated (Scheme 11.29). The C8 hydroxy group of 48 was more reactive than the C9 hydroxy group, likely because of steric hindrance, and the reaction of 48 with Ac₂O afforded 80 in 59% yield (77% brsm). The glycosylation of 80 and 79 using common reagents such as Tf₂O and MeOTf resulted in the degradation of 79. The desired compound 81 was obtained under Crich’s conditions [43], but in low yield. Hence, glycosylation was attempted with various reagents. Compound 81 was obtained in moderate yield via the formation of a sulfonium ylide of 80 in the presence of the catalyst Rh₂(oct)₄ and the subsequent glycosylation catalyzed by Brønsted acid, which was previously reported by Wan et al. [44]. However, 81 could not be separated from a trace amount of impurities with silica gel column chromatography. Consequently, the crude product was directly used in the next three reactions.

The C8 acetate of 81 was difficult to remove by hydrolysis but could be removed by reaction with methyl lithium at low temperatures. Finally, the TMS group was removed using TBAF, and the benzyl group was removed by hydrogenolysis to afford cotylenin A.
All the spectroscopic data for the synthesized cotylenin and naturally occurring cotylenin A were consistent [1], thus validating the first enantioselective total synthesis of cotylenin A. To the best of our knowledge, we reported the specific rotation of cotylenin A for the first time in the literature.

11.6 Conclusion

Herein, we described the first successful enantioselective total synthesis of cotylenin A in detail. Our synthetic approach to cotylenin A was convergent and featured the synthesis of an aglycon moiety using two chiral fragments containing a five-membered carbon ring. Synthetic studies on the aglycon moiety of cotylenin A revealed B-ring formation by intramolecular pinacol coupling between the C8 and C9 positions. However, arranging contiguous asymmetric carbons at the C8 and C9 positions after introducing two hydroxy groups is difficult. Hence, we developed a revised synthesis of the aglycon moiety via the alkenylation of methyl ketones, which required two new chiral fragments. The A-ring fragment was prepared using catalytic asymmetric intramolecular cyclopropanation (CAIMCP), which we previously developed. The C-ring fragment was prepared by the acyl radical cyclization of a known aldehyde, which was obtained by the sharpless asymmetric epoxidation of geraniol and subsequent rearrangement. The radical generation method using a copper catalyst and TBHP was effective for acyl radical reactions. The A- and C-ring fragments were effectively assembled using the Utimoto coupling reaction. A highly stereoselective reduction of $\alpha$-hydroxyketone in the B-ring with $\text{Me}_4\text{NBH(O}_2\text{C}^\text{iPr})_3$.
afforded the desired trans-1,2-diol. Terminating successive reversible acetalizations via irreversible epoxide ring-opening reactions led to the first successful synthesis of a structurally unprecedented sugar moiety. Glycosylation was difficult because of the steric hindrance around the C9 hydroxy group of the aglycon; however, the desired product was successfully obtained under the reaction conditions reported by Wan et al. Even though the yield of cotylenin A could be improved by optimizing the low-yielding steps, our total synthesis could increase the supply of cotylenin A for further studies.

References


10. Recently, the total synthesis of cotylenol was reported by Shenvi and co-workers: Ting SI, Snelson, DW, Huffman, TR, Kuroo, A, Sato, R, Shenvi, RA (2023) Synthesis of (–)-cotylenol,


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 12
Unified Total Synthesis of Madangamine Alkaloids

Takaaki Sato

Abstract Development of a unified total synthesis of madangamine alkaloids is described. The synthesis consists of three parts: (1) construction of the central ABC-ring, (2) installation of the skipped diene bearing a trisubstituted olefin, and (3) the synthesis of various D-rings from a tetracyclic ABCE-common intermediate. The ABC-tricyclic framework is successfully assembled by intramolecular allenylation. The most significant issue in this synthesis is the stereoselective installation of the skipped diene. This challenge is ultimately overcome by development of a stereodivergent approach using hydroboration of allenes and Migita-Kosugi-Stille coupling. The hydroboration is especially useful because the reaction of 1,1-disubstituted allenes with either 9-BBN or (Sia)2BH gives (E)- or (Z)-allylic alcohols, respectively. The key to the success of our unified total synthesis is macrocyclic alkylation to form a wide variety of D-rings from the tetracyclic ABCE-common intermediate. Our collective synthesis of madangamine alkaloids revealed structure–activity relationship of D-rings in their cytotoxicity against human cancer cell lines.

Keyword Iminium ion · Macrocyclic amine · Madangamine alkaloid · Skipped diene · Stereodivergent synthesis

12.1 Madangamine Alkaloids

In 1994, Andersen isolated madangamine A (1) from the marine sponge Xestospongia ingens in Papua New Guinea (Fig. 12.1) [1–3]. Although madangamine A (1) appears to be a macrocyclic diamine alkaloid biogenetically synthesized from bis-3-alkylpyridine found in the manzamine alkaloids [4], it possesses a unique tricyclic ABC-core structure. Andersen et al. [5] also isolated madangamines B-E (2–5) from the same sponge. These alkaloids share an ABCE-common tetracyclic core with...
The Berlinck group documented the isolation of madangamine F (6), which has highly oxidized forms of the C- and E-rings, from a sponge Pachychalina alcaloidifera [6]. While madangamines A (1) and F (6) were found to show antiproliferative effects against human cancer cell lines [3, 6], the biological activities of other madangamines were not elucidated due to the limited availability of the natural samples. In 2014, the Amat group opened up a new stage by the first total synthesis of madangamine D (4) [7]. They revealed that madangamine D (4) exhibited a different antitumor cytotoxic spectrum from madangamine A (1), indicating that variable D-rings might be crucial in their cytotoxicity. After Amat’s report, our group documented the synthesis of madangamines A-E (1–5) in 2017 and 2019 [8, 9]. Recently, the Dixon group reported an elegant synthesis of madangamine E (5) based on the organocatalytic desymmetrization in 2022 [10].

In this chapter, we report our synthetic journey to the unified total synthesis of madangamine alkaloids. Structurally, these alkaloids presented synthetic challenges including: (1) construction of the diazatricyclic ABC-ring, (2) stereoselective synthesis of the skipped diene, and (3) construction of the various D-rings at the late stage (Fig. 12.1). At the beginning of our 7-year study, we expected that the highlight of this total synthesis would be the first challenge, i.e., construction of the unprecedented ABC-tricyclic ring. In fact, most synthetic reports from other groups focused on the development of a method to assemble the tricyclic skeleton [1, 2]. However, through this synthetic project, we found that the most daunting challenge was the stereodivergent construction of the skipped diene. We ultimately developed a stereodivergent approach that gave all four possible stereoisomers of the skipped dienes from a 1,1-disubstituted allene. Another significant challenge proved to be the installation of the variable D-rings to a common tetracyclic intermediate. Finally, we found that macrocyclic alkylation through the SN2 process was highly general for the unified synthesis of these D-rings.
12.2 Synthetic Plan

To elucidate the structure–activity relationship involving variable D-rings, a supply of pure madangamine alkaloids by a unified total synthesis is essential. Therefore, our synthetic plan centered on construction of the D-rings from the ABCE-tetracyclic common intermediate \( \text{13} \) at the late stage. The distinctive diazatricyclic ABC-ring \((Z,Z)-12\) would be synthesized from enyne unit 7. Transition metal-catalyzed cycloisomerization of 7 would promote construction of the B-ring, associated with the formation of the exo-olefin. Hydroboration of the resulting bicyclic AB-ring 8 could generate B-alkyl borane 9, which could undergo Suzuki–Miyaura coupling with 10 to provide ene carbamate 11. Addition of an acid to 11 would promote formation of the \(N\)-acyliminium ion and subsequent cyclization of the vinyl silane to give tricyclic ABC-ring \((Z,Z)-12\). The common intermediate 13 would be obtained from 12 by macrolactamization. The collective total synthesis of the madangamine alkaloids could be completed by installation of a variety of D-rings (Scheme 12.1).

12.3 Construction of Diazatricyclic ABC-Framework

12.3.1 Enantioselective Synthesis of A-Ring

Our synthetic program began with the synthesis of A-ring moiety 24 (Scheme 12.2). \(N\)-Boc-glycine 14 was transformed to vinyl tosylate 15, which underwent Suzuki–Miyaura coupling, providing trisubstituted enoate 16 in 83% yield [11]. Addition of
DIBAL-H and BF$_3$·Et$_2$O [12] to 16 promoted regioselective 1,2-reduction to give the primary alcohol, which was converted to acetate 17. After installation of the allyl group to Boc-carbamate 17, methanolysis in a one-pot process gave allylic alcohol 18, which was converted to chiral secondary alcohol 20 by IBX oxidation and catalytic enantioselective alkylation in 97% ee [13]. Subsequent Johnson-Claisen rearrangement of 20 created the quaternary carbon center through chirality transfer of the secondary alcohol. Carbamate 23 was synthesized from 21 by three-step procedure including hydrolysis, amidation, and the Hofmann rearrangement with PhI(OAc)$_2$. The ring-closing metathesis of 23 with 5 mol% of Grubbs second catalyst afforded A-ring moiety 24. The enantiomeric excess of 24 was 92% ee, indicating that the Claisen rearrangement did not proceed with complete chirality transfer.

Although the developed route gave the A-ring moiety 24 in 13 steps from a commercially available compound, we pursued a more concise and robust route toward the unified total synthesis (Scheme 12.3). The new approach was based on the quick formation of the tetrahydropiperidine ring by Ni-catalyzed [4 + 2] cycloaddition [14] and chirality transfer through the $S_N^{2\prime}$ reaction. The second-generation route to the A-ring moiety 24 began with synthesis of protected propargylic amine 28 in three steps including protection of benzyl amine with TMS-ethanol 25, $N$-propargylation, and protection of the terminal alkyne. Louie reported Ni-catalyzed [4 + 2] cycloaddition between a 3-azetidinone and an alkyne [14]. This method was applicable to our case, providing 3-dihydropyridones 30 and 31 as an inseparable mixture. The resulting ketones underwent the CBS reduction [15] to provide a separable mixture of secondary alcohols 32 and 33 in 78 and 7.2% yields, respectively.

Scheme 12.2 Enantioselective synthesis of A-ring through Johnson-Claisen rearrangement
Scheme 12.3  Enantioselective synthesis of A-ring through S_N2' reaction

(95% ee for both diastereomers). It is noteworthy that the TMS group of the terminal alkyne played a number of crucial roles in this synthesis. For instance, the [4+2] cycloaddition did not proceed without the TMS group. Louie reported that the TMS group preferred to be on the α-position in the [4+2] cycloaddition (32:33 = 10.8:1), as well as the high enantioselectivity in the following reduction. Treatment of 33 with t-BuOK cleaved the TMS group by the Brook rearrangement. The resulting allylic alcohol was transformed to picolinate 34. The quaternary stereocenter of the A-ring was established by Kobayashi’s anti-S_N2' reaction in 97% yield [16] without loss of the enantiomeric excess. The N-benzy1 group was removed by Birch reduction. Thus, the improved route afforded A-ring moiety 24 in nine steps from commercially available TMS-ethanol 25.

12.3.2 Synthesis of AB-Ring by Pd-Catalyzed Cycloisomerization

With A-ring 24 in hand, the next challenge was the cycloisomerization to construct the B-ring (Scheme 12.4). After N-propargylation of 24, palladium-catalyzed cycloisomerization of enyne 7 [17, 18] provided bicyclic compound 8 in 45% yield. We expected that subsequent hydroboration of olefin 8 could establish the third stereocenter of the B-ring. Unfortunately, no desired product 9 was obtained.

To increase the reactivity of the exo-olefin after the cycloisomerization, we installed an electron-withdrawing group onto the terminal alkyne of 7 (Scheme 12.4b). Treatment of the lithium acetylde derived from alkyne 7 with methyl chloroformate led to the formation of methyl alkynoate 35. Gratifyingly, the additional methyl ester in 35 improved the cycloisomerization [17, 18] to provide
bicyclic compound 36 in 87% yield. Furthermore, the methyl ester enhanced the electrophilicity of the olefin, which enabled stereoselective 1,4-addition under Narisada’s conditions (NaBH₄, CuCl) [19], giving bicyclic AB-ring 37 in 94% yield with 10.8:1 diastereoselectivity.

### 12.3.3 Construction of Tricyclic ABC-Ring by N-Acyliminium Cyclization

The next stage was the construction of the C-ring by N-acyliminium cyclization [20]. Originally, we planned to use the N-acyliminium cyclization of the vinyl silane after the Suzuki–Miyaura coupling as shown in Scheme 12.1. However, installation of the methyl ester for the successful cycloisomerization required the allyl silane instead of the vinyl silane as a nucleophile (Scheme 12.5). Reduction of methyl ester 37 via the Weinrebm amide provided aldehyde 38. The Wittig reaction of 38, followed by a cross metathesis reaction formed allyl silane 39 (E/Z = 4:1). Treatment of a solution of 39 in CH₂Cl₂ with BF₃·Et₂O in the presence of EtOH initiated the generation of the N-acyliminium ion, and subsequent intramolecular cyclization, affording 40 in 66% yield.
yield. Although tricyclic intermediate 40 was obtained, the terminal olefin could not be converted to the trisubstituted olefin embedded in common intermediate (Z,Z)-12.

12.4 Stereoselective Synthesis of Skipped Diene

12.4.1 Precedents for Synthesis of Z-Trisubstituted Olefin in Skipped Diene of Madangamine Alkaloids

Before we tackled this issue, some synthetic studies to construct the trisubstituted olefin had already been documented (Scheme 12.6) [21]. Yamazaki and Kibayashi reported a model study using bicyclic ketone 41. The Still-Gennari conditions enabled the Z-selective synthesis of trisubstituted olefin 42. The Amat group showed that Wittig coupling of bicyclic ketone 43 with the unstable ylide derived from 44 stereoselectively constructed the (Z,Z)-skipped diene [22]. However, the high (Z)-selectivity was not achieved from 46 in the total synthesis of madangamine D (4) [7]. After our reports, the Dixon group also discovered a successful method to give access to the (Z)-trisubstituted olefin by elimination of tertiary alcohol 48 with SOCl₂ and DTBMP [10].

At this stage, we realized that (Z)-selective synthesis of the trisubstituted olefin in the skipped diene was highly challenging, and searched the literature for natural products including skipped dienes (Fig. 12.2) [23, 24]. This structural motif is widely distributed in polyunsaturated fatty acids, polyketides, and alkaloids. One of the structural features is the diversity of stereochemistries involving the two olefins including trisubstituted olefins. Ideally, the method should give all four possible stereoisomers from the same intermediate. In addition, considering the high
complexity of these natural products, the method should be convergent though fragment coupling under mild reaction conditions so as not to induce isomerization to the more stable 1,3-dienes.

To develop practical methods applicable to the synthesis of a variety of skipped diene natural products, we envisioned a stereodivergent approach consisting of hydroboration of 1,1-disubstituted allenes [25–28] and Migita–Kosugi–Stille coupling [29] (Scheme 12.7). Allenes have been utilized as attractive intermediates

Fig. 12.2 Representative natural products containing skipped dienes
in the total synthesis of natural products [30]. However, control of the various selectivities involving the two orthogonal π-bonds is essential. Indeed, three selectivities must be solved in the hydroboration/oxidation of 1,1-disubstituted allenes. The first is the regioselectivity of the two double bonds. The second is the facial selectivity from either path A or path B, which could be controlled by differentiating the steric hindrance with R\textsuperscript{L} or R\textsuperscript{S} in allene 54. In general, hydroboration of allene 54 proceeds from the less hindered side opposite to R\textsuperscript{L} (path B) to give allylic borane \((Z)\)-55. Third, the most challenging selectivity involves the [1,3]-allylic rearrangement of 55 [25–28]. Kinetically favored \((Z)\)-55 is often transformed to thermodynamically favored \((E)\)-55 through two reversible [1,3]-allylic rearrangements. If these three selectivities are precisely controlled, both trisubstituted allylic alcohols \((E)\)-57 and \((Z)\)-57 would be obtained through the hydroboration of allene 54 after oxidative quench. Associated with palladium-catalyzed coupling with vinyl stannanes \((E)\)-58 and \((Z)\)-58 [29], the method would become stereodivergent to provide all four possible stereoisomers 59 from the same 1,1-disubstituted allene 54.

Our stereodivergent hydroboration of 1,1-disubstituted allene 60 was realized by simply changing the steric hindrance of the organoborane reagents (Scheme 12.8). While the hydroboration with 9-BBN at room temperature provided allylic alcohol \((E)\)-61 through 1,3-allylic rearrangements, the reaction with (Sia\textsubscript{2})B at 0 °C gave allylic alcohol \((Z)\)-61 without causing 1,3-allylic rearrangements due to the larger

---

**Scheme 12.7**  Plan for stereodivergent synthesis of skipped dienes by hydroboration of allenes and Migita–Kosugi–Stille coupling
siamyl group. Allylic alcohols (E)-61 and (Z)-61 were converted to carbamates (E)-62 and (Z)-62, respectively. The Migita-Kosugi-Stille coupling of both carbamates 62 with vinyl stannanes (E)-63 and (Z)-63 provided four stereoisomers of skipped dienes 64. As shown in Fig. 12.2, the stereocontrol of trisubstituted olefins seen in these natural products is still challenging in modern organic synthesis compared with that of disubstituted olefins. However, our method stereoselectively provided all four possible stereoisomers including the trisubstituted olefin.

12.4.2 Synthesis of the Tetracyclic ABCE-Common Intermediate Including the Skipped Diene

Having a practical method to gain access to skipped dienes from 1,1-disubstituted allenes, the stage was set for the synthesis of the skipped diene embedded in madangamine alkaloids (Scheme 12.9). As shown in Scheme 12.5, we achieved construction of the C-ring by intramolecular allylation via the N-acyliminium ion. This success encouraged us to employ propargyl silane 65 because it gives ABC-tricyclic framework 66, accompanied by formation of the 1,1-disubstituted allene. The resulting allene 66 would be converted to skipped diene (Z,Z)-12 by Z-selective hydroboration and palladium-catalyzed coupling.

Scheme 12.8 Stereodivergent synthesis of the skipped dienes
The synthesis of propargyl silane 65 commenced with the Ohira-Bestmann reaction of aldehyde 38 [31, 32] and alkylation with \( \text{ICH}_2\text{TMS} \) (Scheme 12.10). Addition of \( \text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \) to propargyl silane 65 resulted in the formation of \( \text{N-acyliminium ion} \) 68. For successful cyclization, a conformational change from the most stable conformer 68a was essential to place the equatorial propargyl silane in the axial position as shown in 68b. Regardless, the cyclization proceeded smoothly to give ABC-ring 66 in 85% yield. Use of ethanol as a co-solvent to form transient \( \text{N,O-acetal} \) 69 was important probably because it tentatively protects the unstable \( \text{N-acyliminium ion} \) and increases chances for the requisite conformational flip without decomposition. In addition, ethanol lowered the acidity of \( \text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \). In a control experiment without ethanol, the cyclization was observed even at room temperature, but the TIPS group was significantly cleaved (66: 52%; 70: 32%). Thus, we achieved intramolecular allenylation to construct the ABC-ring with the 1,1-disubstituted allene.

The stage was set for the construction of the crucial skipped diene (Scheme 12.11). Hydroboration of allene 66 with sterically small 9-BBN, followed by oxidative
workup, provided \((E)-71\) in 83\% yield \((E:Z = 6.1:1)\). In contrast, desired trisubstituted allylic alcohol \((Z)-71\) was produced in 93\% yield \((E:Z = 1:20)\) when using sterically large \((\text{Sia})_2\text{BH}\). Conversion of allylic alcohol \((Z)-71\) to carbonate \(72\), followed by the coupling reaction with vinyl stannane \((Z)-73\), afforded skipped diene \((Z,Z)-12\) in high yield.

With skipped diene \((Z,Z)-12\) in hand, the next challenge was the macrolactamization to form the eleven-membered E-ring (Scheme 12.11). Hydrolysis of the methyl ester in \((Z,Z)-12\) and removal of the Boc group in \(74\) delivered the amino acid. The Mukaiyama reagent (CMPI: 2-chloro-1-methylpyridinium iodide) [33] proved to be the best reagent for this macrolactamization to provide \(75\) (75\%, 2 steps). Cleavage of the TIPS group in \(75\) was realized with CSA in methanol at 40 °C. Thus, ABCE-tetracyclic framework \(13\) was obtained as a common intermediate toward the unified total synthesis of madangamine alkaloids.

### 12.5 Unified Total Synthesis of Madangamines A-E

Macrocyclic diamine structures are widely observed in manzamine alkaloids. However, development of general methods to synthesize this structural motif remains a formidable issue. The construction of the D-rings in the madangamine alkaloids
was highly challenging because they possess various ring sizes and degrees of unsaturation (Fig. 12.1). Ring closing metathesis (RCM) has been recognized as one of the most promising reactions to form macrocycles. In fact, both the Amat and Dixon groups independently employed the olefin metathesis to construct the D-ring in their total syntheses (Scheme 12.12, 76 → 77 [7], 79 → 80 [10]). However, synthesis of madangamines D and E (4,5) required hydrogenation to form saturated D-rings after RCM (77 → 78 [7], 80 → 81 [10]). The construction of the E-ring had to be performed after installation of the D-ring due to the presence of the skipped diene. Therefore, our collective synthesis via the tetracyclic common intermediate cannot employ the RCM approach. As another disadvantage to the use of olefin metathesis, the products are often obtained as a mixture of E/Z stereoisomers, which would be problematic in the case of madangamines A, B, and C (1–3) with unsaturated D-rings. Thus, the unified total synthesis required the development of practical methods that did not depend on the ring size and the degree of unsaturation of the D-rings, without affecting the E-ring.

Macrolactamization of an amino acid was the first choice to meet the above requirements in the synthesis of madangamine C (3) (Scheme 12.13). AZAD oxidon [34] of primary alcohol 13 and subsequent Wittig reaction with 83 introduced the unsaturated side chain with complete Z-selectivity, giving 84 in 88% yield. Hydrolysis and removal of the Teoc group gave the amino acid, which underwent the macrolactamization with EDCI and HOBT [7, 22] to give pentacyclic compound 85. Finally, LiAlH₄ reduction of the amide group accomplished the total synthesis of madangamine C (3).

Scheme 12.12 Examples of the synthesis of the macrocyclic D-ring by other groups
Although madangamine C (3) was obtained, we found that the macro lactamization was not applicable to other members of the madangamines. For example, the macro lactamization for the synthesis of madangamine E (5) was not successful as follows (Scheme 12.14a). Primary alcohol 13 was converted to bromide 86, which underwent Cahiez’s alkylation with Grignard reagent 87 in the presence of the copper catalyst [35]. Cleavage of the TIPS group with CSA in MeOH provided primary alcohol 88, which was subjected to TEMPO-oxidation to provide carboxylic acid 89. After transformation to the amino acid, macro lactamization resulted in low yield, likely because the unfavorable dimer was competitively formed due to the lack of the Z-olefin, which supported macro lactamization by the proximity effect to form madangamine C (3).

For successful macro cyclization, we believed that reactions at elevated temperature would be essential to adopt the appropriate conformation for cyclization (Scheme 12.14b). Thus, functional groups at both sites should possess the proper reactivity and stability to react at elevated temperature. To meet these requirements, we planned to take advantage of macrocyclic alkylation using the secondary amine and the tosylate through S_n2 reaction. First, the primary alcohol of 88 was converted to tosylate 91, which was subjected to BF_3-Et_2O-mediated cleavage of the Teoc group. As we expected, the macrocyclic alkylation at 80 °C in the presence of K_2CO_3 took place without detection of the corresponding dimer, affording pentacyclic compound 92 in 61% yield (two steps). Finally, reduction of 92 completed the total synthesis of madangamine E (5).

The macrocyclic alkylation was widely applicable to install various types of D-rings (Scheme 12.15a). Madangamine D (4), which has a fourteen-membered saturated D-ring instead of the thirteen-membered D-ring in madangamine E (5), was
successfuly synthesized by the same sequence using Grignard reagent 93. Madangamine A (1) was one of the most challenging targets due to the sensitive (Z,Z,Z)-skipped triene (Scheme 12.15b). However, the macrocyclic alkylation approach was effective even for the total synthesis of madangamine A (1). The Wittig coupling of 53 using phosphonium salt 96 and cleavage of the TIPS group provided 97 including the (Z,Z,Z)-skipped triene as a single diastereomer. As an initial experiment, oxidation of the primary alcohol was attempted to give the acid for the macrolactamization. However, significant decomposition was observed probably due to the skipped triene. In contrast, the tosylate was easily prepared from the primary alcohol in 97. After formation of the free amino group, the fifteen-membered D-ring was successfully constructed by macrocyclic alkylation with iPr₂NEt in MeCN at 70 °C. Pentacyclic intermediate 98 was produced in 59% yield over two steps. Reduction of 98 resulted in the total synthesis of madangamine A (1).
Scheme 12.15  Total synthesis of madangamines A and D

The structure of madangamine B (2) is similar to that of madangamine A (1) except for the position of one double bond in the fifteen-membered D-ring (Scheme 12.16). However, the location of this double bond rendered the synthesis from the common intermediate more complicated. For example, aldehyde 53 was not a productive intermediate for the direct coupling reaction to install the side chain. In addition, the (E)-stereochemistry of the double bond in madangamine B (2) prevented the use of the reliable (Z)-selective Wittig reaction. The construction of the D-ring started with one-carbon dehomologation. The Ishihara group reported α-oxyacylation of aldehydes via a radical intermediate [36], which was applied to aldehyde 53 to give 99. Reduction of aldehyde 99 and methanolysis formed the diol, which was cleaved with Pb(OAc)₄ to give aldehyde 100. Installation of the side chain was achieved with stepwise coupling reactions using the (E)-selective CrCl₂-mediated Takai-Uchimoto olefination [37], and the (Z)-selective Wittig reaction using phosphonium salt 103. After preparation of the tosylate and the secondary amine in three steps, macrocyclic alkylation successfully constructed the fifteen-membered D-ring. Finally, LiAlH₄ reduction of the remaining lactam carbonyl group accomplished the total synthesis of madangamine B (2). Thus, we achieved the unified total synthesis of madangamines (1–5) from the ABCE-tetracyclic common intermediate.
Scheme 12.16 Total synthesis of madangamine B

12.6 Biological Activities of Madangamines A-E

With pure synthetic samples of madangamine alkaloids A-E (1–5) in hand, their cytotoxicities against thirteen human cancer cell lines were evaluated (Table 12.1) [9]. Their IC<sub>50</sub> values revealed that the antiproliferative effects depended on the degree of unsaturation in the D-rings. Thus, madangamines A (1) and B (2) proved to be the most potent alkaloids. In the growth inhibition by madangamine A (1), the levels of autophagy-related proteins (LC3-II and p62) increased, associated with lysosome enlargement and increase in lysosomal pH [38]. These results suggested that madangamine A (1) is a novel lysosome inhibitor and exercised its cytotoxicity by the inhibition of lysosome function.
### Table 12.1  Cytotoxicity of synthetic madangamines A-E against various cancer cell lines (IC$_{50}$ values in $\mu$M)$^{a}$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cell line</th>
<th>IC$_{50}$ ((\mu)M)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A549</td>
<td>11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHL-1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK-MEL-28</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT116</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeLa</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT1080</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCF-7</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDA-MB-231</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panc-1</td>
<td>11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK-1</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-3</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T24</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THP1</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^{a}$Antiproliferative effects of tested compounds against human cancer cell lines in a 48 h growth inhibitory assay using the MTT method
12.7 Conclusion

In this chapter, we discussed our synthetic journey to the madangamine alkaloids. In the beginning, we focused on the construction of the ABC-tricyclic framework. During the synthetic study, stereoselective installation of the skipped diene proved to be the most challenging. To solve this problem, we developed a stereodivergent method consisting of hydroboration with either 9-BBN or (Sia)2BH to give (E)- or (Z)-stereoisomers, and Migita-Kosugi-Stille coupling. This method delivered all four possible stereoisomers of the skipped dienes from the same allene. The developed method enabled the synthesis of the skipped diene embedded in the madangamine alkaloids after intramolecular allenylation. The collective synthesis of madangamines A-E was achieved via the ABCE-tetracyclic common intermediate. Macrocyclic alkylation proved to be highly effective to install various types of the D-rings. Our synthesis of madangamine alkaloids provided a series of pure samples for evaluating the antiproliferative effects against human cancer cell lines, indicating that a high degree of unsaturation in D-rings was crucial. In addition, madangamine A exhibited its cytotoxicity by the inhibition of lysosome function. We believe that our unified total synthesis of the madangamine alkaloids will contribute to the development of both synthesis and biology involving skipped dienes and macrocyclic diamine natural products.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 13
Total Syntheses of (+)-Aquatolide and Related Humulanolides

Akihiro Ogura and Ken-ichi Takao

Abstract Herein, the total syntheses of (+)-aquatolide, a humulane-derived sesquiterpenoid lactone, and five other related humulanolides are described. The key reactions in these syntheses are a cascade metathesis reaction of cyclobutenecarboxylate to construct a γ-butenolide with an unsaturated aldehyde side chain, an intramolecular Nozaki–Hiyama–Takai–Kishi reaction to form an all-trans-humulene lactone skeleton, and a biosynthesis-inspired [2 + 2] photocycloaddition to provide a bridged 5/5/4/8-ring system. A cycloaddition giving a 5/4/4/7-ring system was also found. In addition, biological studies were conducted using the synthesized samples.

Keywords Cascade metathesis · 11-membered ring formation · [2 + 2] photocycloaddition · Sesquiterpenoids

13.1 Introduction

In 2012, the structure of (+)-aquatolide, a humulane-derived sesquiterpenoid lactone, was revised from 1a to 1b (Fig. 13.1) by Shaw et al. [1]. This terpenoid was originally isolated by San Feliciano et al. from Asteriscus aquaticus [2]. Previously, structurally related sesquiterpenoids asteriscunolides A–D (2–5), called humulanolides, were isolated from the same source [3–5]. The proposed structure of aquatolide 1a consisted of a tetracyclic 5/4/4/7-ring system with a characteristic bicyclo[2.2.0]hexane motif. However, the Shaw and Tantillo group found that the calculated NMR data for structure 1a were inconsistent with those reported by San Feliciano et al. Revised structure 1b was assigned by computational chemistry and confirmed by X-ray crystallography. We were interested in structure 1b, which has an unusual, intricate bridged 5/5/4/8-ring system.

The biosynthesis of aquatolide has been proposed to involve a transannular [2 + 2] cycloaddition of (−)-asteriscunolide C (4) (Fig. 13.2). Parallel addition forms
Fig. 13.1 Structures of (+)-aquatolide and (–)-asteriscunolides A–D

Fig. 13.2 Proposed biosynthesis of aquatolide

the C2–C10 and C3–C9 bonds in proposed structure 1a, whereas crossed addition forms the alternate bonds (C2–C9 and C3–C10) to afford real structure 1b. Although the racemic synthesis of 1b has been completed by two groups \[6, 7\], the total synthesis via a biomimetic [2 + 2] cycloaddition has not been reported. We decided to attempt the biomimetic approach, and then complete the total synthesis of the natural enantiomer (+)-aquatolide (1b). After much effort, we have achieved the total synthesis of 1b \[8\]. In this chapter, we described our endeavors toward the synthesis of 1b, including some unsuccessful approaches.
13.2 Unsuccessful Route: ROM/RCM/RCM Approach

Our retrosynthetic analysis of (+)-aquatolide (1b) is shown in Scheme 13.1. The advanced intermediate was a putative biosynthetic precursor of 1b, (−)-asteriscunolide C (4), which has a disubstituted γ-butenolide skeleton. For concise access to γ-butenolides, we have reported the ring-opening/ring-closing metathesis (ROM/RCM) reaction of cyclobutenecarboxylates in the total synthesis of (+)-clavilactone A (9) [9–11]. In the present work, we expected to construct the asteriscunolide skeleton through a combination of the ROM/RCM approach and a ring-closing metathesis (RCM) reaction. Namely, compound 4 could be obtained by RCM expelling ethylene from γ-butenolide 6, which would be derived from cyclobutenecarboxylate 7 by the ROM/RCM reaction. Sequential metathesis reactions can be performed as one-pot reactions. Substrate 7 would be synthesized by our acylation method from alcohol 8.

Preliminary experiments were performed as racemates (Scheme 13.2). Known racemic secondary alcohol 10 [12] was treated with DDQ under anhydrous conditions to provide acetal 11, which was reduced with DIBAL-H to primary alcohol 12. Parikh–Doering oxidation of 12 afforded aldehyde 13. The lithium enolate generated from ketone 14 reacted with aldehyde 13 to give aldol adduct 15 as a diastereomeric mixture (d.r. = 2:1). β-Elimination of 15, followed by removal of the MPM group in resultant dienone 16, provided alcohol rac-8. According to our previous

Scheme 13.1 First-generation retrosynthetic analysis of (+)-aquatolide (1b)
procedure [9–11], the acylation of rac-8 was achieved by using acid anhydride 17. Cyclobutenecarboxylate rac-7 was obtained, and a substrate for the planned sequential metathesis was synthesized.

With substrate rac-7 in hand, we attempted the ROM/RCM/RCM reaction (Scheme 13.3). Cyclobutenecarboxylate rac-7 was treated with the Grubbs catalyst in hot toluene. Unfortunately, desired (±)-asteriscunolide C (rac-4) was not obtained, and only dimerized product 18 was obtained in approximately 30% yield. The ROM/RCM reaction proceeded to form a γ-butenolide skeleton-like compound 6 (Scheme 13.1), but the final RCM reaction failed. In anticipation of different reactivity, several additional substrates (19–21) were synthesized. However, the asteriscunolide skeleton could not be constructed by any of the metathesis reactions.

The conformational inflexibility of the substrates was thought to be responsible for the failure of the RCM. It was presumed that the E-olefin in rac-7 and 19 or the oxygen substituents in 20 and 21 could have an adverse effect, preventing the alkene partners from getting close enough for metathesis. Therefore, we next turned our attention to preparing more flexible substrates for the sequential metathesis reaction (Scheme 13.4). Chemoselective addition of a vinyl group to known cyanoaldehyde 22 [13] afforded alcohol 23. After silylation of 23, resulting nitrile 24 was reduced to aldehyde 25 by DIBAL-H reduction followed by hydrolytic work-up. The isopropenyl Grignard reagent reacted with aldehyde 25 to provide adduct 26 as a mixture of diastereomers (d.r. = 1:1). Via a simple sequence of reactions, TBS

![Scheme 13.2 Synthesis of cyclobutenecarboxylate rac-7](image-url)
ether 26 was converted to MPM ether 27, which was acylated by the same method as in the synthesis of rac-7 to give cyclobutenecarboxylate 28. As further substrates for metathesis, alcohol 29 and ketone 30 were synthesized from 28 by removal of the MPM group and Dess–Martin oxidation.

Using new substrates 28–30, the ROM/RCM/RCM reaction was attempted again (Scheme 13.5). When the second-generation Hoveyda–Grubbs catalyst was applied to substrates 28 and 29, the reaction proceeded and moderate yields of the 11-membered products were obtained (15% and 27%, respectively). However, NOE experiments on the products showed that the geometry of the ring-closing site olefin was the undesired E-configuration, and compounds 32 and 34 were produced by the RCM. Furthermore, no cyclized product was obtained from the reaction of ketone 30. At this stage, we decided to abandon this approach because the metathesis yields were lower than expected and we believed that the Z-configuration was required for preparing the precursor of (+)-aquatolide (1b). Later, we realized that the E-configuration would work. This allowed us to develop a concise, high-yielding synthetic route for 1b. Independently, Li et al. have reported the total synthesis of (−)-asteriscunolide D (5) by the ROM/RCM/RCM approach [14, 15].
Next, we combined cross-metathesis (CM) with the ROM/RCM approach instead of RCM. This approach required a reaction to construct the 11-membered ring. We planned to rely on an intramolecular Nozaki–Hiyama–Takai–Kishi (NHTK) reaction.
[16–20], which we have used extensively [21–24]. A second-generation retrosynthetic analysis of (+)-aquatolide (1b) was conducted (Scheme 13.6). In this analysis, all-trans-humulene lactone 36 was set as a key intermediate. By tuning the structure of 36, we expected to find asteriscunolide-type compound 35 that could undergo the transannular [2 + 2] cycloaddition. Key intermediate 36 could be cleaved to iodoalkene–aldehyde 37 by the intramolecular NHTK reaction, and then 37 would be synthesized by the ROM/RCM/CM reaction of cyclobutenecarboxylate 38 with methacrolein (39).

### 13.4 Construction of the Asteriscunolide Skeleton

The second-generation synthesis was performed asymmetrically. Readily available D-(−)-pantolactone (40) was chosen as the starting material (Scheme 13.7). After protection of 40, DIBAL-H reduction of MPM ether 41 followed by Wittig reaction of resulting lactol 42 provided known alcohol S-12 [25] in 98% ee, confirmed by chiral HPLC analysis. Dess–Martin oxidation of S-12 afforded aldehyde S-13, and a large-scale Takai–Utimoto olefination [26] was investigated, for which economic conditions were found. Chromium(II) chloride (CrCl₂) reduced from less expensive CrCl₃ with LiAlH₄ [27] was also effective in this reaction, yielding E-iodoalkene 43. Cyclobutenecarboxylate 38 was obtained by deprotection of 43 and acylation of alcohol 44 with acid anhydride 17, and the stage was set to develop the ROM/RCM/CM reaction.

First, we examined the ROM/RCM and CM reactions in a stepwise manner (Scheme 13.8). In our previous work [9–11], we used the first-generation Grubbs
catalyst for the ROM/RCM, but the same conditions were not suitable for the reaction of 38. Fortunately, the second-generation Grubbs catalyst showed good activity and corresponding γ-butenolide 45 and its dimerized product were obtained. Both products were reacted with methacrolein (39) in the presence of the second-generation Grubbs catalyst to afford α,β-unsaturated aldehyde 37 as a single E-isomer in 30% overall yield. Next, a cascade method was examined. A mixture of 38, the catalyst, and methacrolein (39) in toluene was heated, and desired product 37 was produced directly in an improved yield (60%). As expected, the iodoalkene moiety was not involved in the metathesis. The cascade ROM/RCM/CM reaction was established and became a central part of this work.

The next task was forming the 11-membered ring (Scheme 13.9). The intramolecular NHTK reaction of 37 formed the asteriscunolide skeleton to provide 36 in a remarkable yield (96%). Once again, the NHTK reaction exhibited tremendous power. Cyclized product 36 was obtained as a single diastereomer with a pseudo-equatorial hydroxy group. This is a common trend in NHTK reactions [20–24]. Alcohol 36 was oxidized to (−)-asteriscunolide D (5). Thus, the total synthesis of 5 was achieved in 10 steps from 40 with an overall yield of 32%, which was approximately four or seven times higher than the yields of previously reported syntheses [14, 15, 28].
13.5 Synthesis of the Proposed Structure of Aquatolide (1a)

Because asteriscunolide and asteriscunolide-type compounds were obtained, the [2 + 2] cycloaddition was investigated (Scheme 13.10). First, we irradiated (−)-asteriscunolide D (5) with a high-pressure Hg lamp (100 W). However, only olefin isomerization was observed and (−)-asteriscunolide A (2) was obtained as the major product. Although a small amount of (−)-asteriscunolide C (4) was produced, [2 + 2] cycloadducts were not detected. The Li group reported that irradiation of 5 with a UV lamp (10 W, 254 nm) gave similar results [14, 15]. We concluded that compound 5 was an unsuitable substrate for the direct synthesis of (+)-aquatolide (1b) via a photochemical reaction.

Next, we irradiated dienol 36 instead of dienone 5 (Scheme 13.11). In this reaction, chemoselective isomerization of the trisubstituted olefin gave compound 46, but the desired [2 + 2] cycloaddition did not occur. We thought that the more reactive trisubstituted olefin needed to be masked. Therefore, 46 was epoxidized with m-CPBA.
The reagent approached from the outside of the 11-membered ring, yielding only isomer 47. As expected, the photoreaction of epoxide 47 gave a [2 + 2] cycloadduct. In fact, the cycloaddition proceeded in parallel mode and ladder-like adduct 48 was formed, although at this stage, we did not notice the undesired result. Oxidation of 48 afforded keto-epoxide 49, which was reduced to the final compound. Unfortunately, the compound was not (+)-aquatolide (1b). The 1H and 13C NMR data for the synthetic sample did not match those for 1b, but were consistent with those calculated by Shaw and Tantillo’s group for the proposed structure of aquatolide (1a) [1]. Consequently, we realized that it was non-natural product 1a.

13.6 Completion of the Total Synthesis of (+)-Aquatolide (1b)

We used an oxy-Michael reaction as an alternative way to mask the olefin and expected the corresponding adduct to give different results from epoxide 47. Therefore, we investigated the conditions for regioselective 1,4-addition of methanol to (−)-asteriscunolide D (5) (Scheme 13.12). Under basic conditions (NaOMe/MeOH), low regioselectivity was observed, giving a complex mixture of 1,4-adducts to di- and/or tri-substituted olefins. Fortunately, the reaction with acids such as BF$_3$·OEt$_2$ in methanol provided 1,4-adduct 50 with high regio and stereoselectivity. The crossed [2 + 2] cycloaddition of 50 proceeded to provide desired product 51 with the bicyclo[2.1.1]hexane core. Thus, we achieved the first biomimetic transannular [2 + 2] cycloaddition for the synthesis of aquatolide. Treatment of 51 with BF$_3$·OEt$_2$ afforded the eliminated product and completed the total synthesis of (+)-aquatolide (1b). Compared with previous racemic syntheses [6, 7], our route was shorter (13 steps from 40) and resulted in a high yield (5.7% overall yield).
Scheme 13.11  Synthesis of the proposed structure of aquatolide (1a)

Scheme 13.12  Total synthesis of (+)-aquatolide (1b)
Although the transannular [2 + 2] photocycloaddition of compound 47 provided parallel product 48 (Scheme 13.11), the reaction of compound 50 gave crossed adduct 51 (Scheme 13.12). We analyzed the extremely high regioselectivity in these reactions by conformational searches of the substrates (Fig. 13.3). H-2 and H-10 were cis to each other in the most stable conformer of epoxide 47. In contrast, these hydrogens were trans in 50. Therefore, the parallel cycloaddition of 50 would not proceed because a trans-fused 4/4-ring system is impossible. These results suggested that the parallel or crossed modes of cycloaddition are controlled by the conformation of the substrates.

13.7 Total Syntheses of Related Humulanolides

In addition, we investigated the syntheses of other related humulanolides (Scheme 13.13). In the photoreaction of (−)-asteriscunolide D (5), the total synthesis of (−)-asteriscunolide A (2) was achieved (11 steps from 40 with an overall yield of 14%) (Scheme 13.10), but pure (−)-asteriscunolide C (4) was not isolated. In contrast, the oxidation of alcohol 46 (Scheme 13.11) afforded pure 4 (11 steps from 40 with an overall yield of 13%). Chemo and stereoselective epoxidation of alcohol 36 with m-CPBA achieved the first total synthesis of (−)-asteriscunolide I (52) [29], a recently isolated humulanolide (10 steps from 40 with an overall yield of 26%). Our next goal was to construct the asteriscanolide skeleton, a tricyclic 5/5/8-ring system. A clue to its construction was found by chance in a study of the 1,4-addition of methanol to 5 (Scheme 13.12). When 5 was treated with n-Bu3P in methanol, an intramolecular
Rauhut–Currier (vinyllogous Morita–Baylis–Hillman) reaction [30, 31] occurred to afford (+)-tetrahydroasteriscanolide (53) [32]. After optimization, the yield was improved and the efficient total synthesis of 53 was also completed (11 steps from 40 with an overall yield of 32%).

13.8 Biological Activity of Natural Humulanolides and Analogs

Although several humulanolides show anti-tumor activity [33, 34], their target molecule has not been identified. We conducted a structure–activity relationship study using synthetic samples of natural humulanolides and their analogs, expecting to elucidate the mode of action. First, two additional compounds, 54 and 55, were prepared by oxidation of the corresponding alcohols (Scheme 13.14) [35]. Twelve compounds were selected, and anti-proliferative activity was examined against eight human cancer cell lines. Whereas most compounds, including aquatolide, were inactive (1a, 1b, 36, 47, 49, 52, 53, and 55), asteriscunolide A (2), asteriscunolide C (4), and asteriscunolide D (5) showed some activity. 54 was the most potent compound, exhibiting anti-proliferative activity against all tested cell lines (e.g., the IC50 values against human gingival carcinoma cell line Ca9-22: 9.9 μM for 2, 7.5 μM for 4, 4.8 μM for 5, and 2.9 μM for 54). The results suggested that the
unsaturated carbonyl moiety on the 11-membered ring is essential for the anti-cancer activity and that the stereochemistry around the epoxide moiety is also important.

A further biological study was conducted using 54. 54 caused morphological changes in cells similar to those observed during geldanamycin treatment. Thus, heat-shock protein 90 (HSP90), which is a chaperone that helps proper protein folding, was probably the target protein. Actually, we confirmed that 54 increased the expression of HSP70 and decreased that of HSP90 client proteins, such as AKT and CDK4.

13.9 Conclusion

We were inspired by the biosynthesis of (+)-aquatolide (1b) to achieve the efficient total synthesis of 1b. In the early stage of the synthesis, the cascade ROM/RCM/CM reaction of cyclobutenecarboxylate was developed to construct the γ-buteno1,3-lactone with an unsaturated aldehyde side chain. The intramolecular NHTK reaction efficiently formed an all-trans-humulene lactone skeleton. Finally, the transannular [2 + 2] photocycloaddition of an asteriscunolide-like compound was realized in a crossed mode. In addition, the [2 + 2] cycloaddition proceeding in a parallel mode was also found. Thus, we established a concise, high-yielding synthetic route to 1b. Related humulanolides (2, 4, 5, 52, and 53) were also synthesized with our strategy and a structure–activity relationship study was performed using the synthesized samples. We hope that our findings will contribute to the development of natural product synthesis.

Acknowledgements We are grateful to our co-workers whose names appear in the references. This research was supported by JSPS KAKENHI Grant Number 15K05504 and the Naito Foundation.
References


Chapter 14
Complex Oligosaccharides
Synthesis—Challenges and Tactics

Daisuke Takahashi and Kazunobu Toshima

Abstract  1,2-cis glycoside structures exist as constituents of biologically active natural products, pharmaceuticals, and functional materials. Therefore, there is a pressing need for the development of novel and efficient 1,2-cis-glycosylation methods to understand their specific roles and to create new lead compounds for pharmaceutical and functional materials by derivatization of these glycosides. In this context, we have developed a conceptually new glycosylation method called boron-mediated aglycon delivery (BMAD), which utilizes organoboron catalysis for simultaneously controlling the 1,2-cis stereoselectivity of the glycosidic bond formed and regioselectivity of the reaction site in the glycosyl acceptor. The method has been applied to synthesize useful glycosides including complex oligosaccharides found in pathogenic bacteria. We recently extended the BMAD method to the reaction of partially protected and unprotected glycosides for the late-stage modification of natural glycosides with interesting biological activities, and synthesized complex oligosaccharides using minimal protecting groups. Furthermore, we developed a diastereoselective desymmetric BMAD reaction of meso-diols as a new synthetic tactic for complex glycosides. Herein, we discuss the abovementioned BMAD methods and their use in the synthesis of useful glycosides.

Keywords  Glycosylation · Boron-mediated aglycon delivery · 1,2-cis glycosides · Regioselective · Stereoselective
14.1 Introduction

Carbohydrates, along with nucleic acids and proteins, are major biopolymers and are abundant in many living organisms. They perform crucial functions in a variety of biological processes, including cell adhesion, proliferation, and pathogenic infection because of their structural diversity. Therefore, elucidation of the biological functions of these carbohydrates is essential. Carbohydrates are also found in numerous biologically useful natural compounds, pharmaceuticals, and materials with high functionalities [1–4]. Hence, the development of lead compounds for new pharmaceuticals and materials is highly desired, especially in the era of Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). To this end, many stereocontrol and efficient chemical glycosylation methods have been developed [5, 6], and studies on the synthesis and functional evaluation of useful carbohydrates with complex structures are becoming more prevalent. In particular, the stereocontrol synthesis of 1,2-trans-glycosidic bonds, represented by β-glucoside and α-mannoside, is easily achieved by utilizing the participation from the neighboring acyl protecting group in the C2 position of the glycosyl donor, enabling the synthesis of complex polysaccharides. However, the stereoselective synthesis of 1,2-cis-glycosidic bonds, represented by α-glucoside and β-mannoside, remains a challenging endeavor owing to the absence of participation from neighboring functional groups (Fig. 14.1). Therefore, the development of comprehensive 1,2-cis-stereoselective glycosylation reactions with high generality is in great demand.

Conventional chemical synthetic tactics for glycosides have so far relied heavily on protecting group strategies with the main objective of controlling α/β-stereoselectivity. This decreases the overall synthetic efficiency, since the introduction and removal of protecting groups are complicated and require multiple steps. Therefore, to create a new synthetic tactic, a novel method for controlling both the 1,2-cis-stereoselectivity and regioselectivity in the glycosylation of unprotected or partially protected glycosyl acceptors, by chemical means, has been eagerly anticipated. In this context, we have proposed and developed a conceptually new regioselective and 1,2-cis-stereospecific glycosylation using an organoboron catalyst and a 1,2-anhydro sugar, namely boron-mediated aglycon delivery (BMAD) [7–22]. As shown in Fig. 14.2, in this reaction, boronic ester 3 with moderate Lewis acidity, which is prepared from 1,3- and/or cis-1,2-diol glycosyl acceptor 1 and boronic acid 2 under mild conditions in the absence of other reagents, activates the 1,2-anhydro sugar 4. Next, the generated anionic boronate ester 5 enhances the nucleophilicity of the oxygen atom bound to boron. Intramolecular glycosylation then occurs from the favorable transition state via a SNi-type reaction mechanism, providing the 1,2-cis glycoside 7 via boronic ester 6 with high regioselectivity and full stereoselectivity. A major feature of this reaction is that the diol exchange between boronic ester 6 and acceptor 1 occurs quickly and the reaction proceeds catalytically. An example of the BMAD reaction is shown in Scheme 14.1 [7]. Initially, boronic ester 10 was prepared from 4,6-diol sugar acceptor 8 and boronic acid 9 under toluene reflux conditions. 1,2-anhydroglucose 11 [23] was subsequently introduced to the reaction mixture to
examine the BMAD reaction. It was found that excellent α-stereoselectivity developed and α(1,4)-glucoside 12 was obtained as a single isomeric compound in 82% yield. In this chapter, we introduce the extension of the substrate generality of the developed BMAD reaction for glycosyl donors and glycosyl acceptors, as well as some examples of applying this method to synthesize useful glycosides with complex structures.

### 14.2 Development of Regioselective and 1,2-cis-β-Stereospecific BMAD Reaction and Its Use in the Synthesis of Oligosaccharides Found in Pathogenic Bacteria

We investigated the regioselective and stereospecific 1,2-cis-β-glycosylation, which is a more challenging linkage to construct, using an organoboron catalyst and a 1,2-anhydro donor. The β-mannoside and β-rhamnoside structures, which are typical examples for 1,2-cis-β-glycosides, are contained in the antigenic oligosaccharides
Fig. 14.2  Boron-mediated aglycon delivery (BMAD) using boronic acid catalysts

Scheme 14.1  BMAD reaction of 8 and 11

of various pathogens, including *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (*S. pneumoniae*). Thus, the development of efficient synthetic methods for 1,2-cis-β-glycosides is required for the development of highly safe glycoconjugate vaccines.

### 14.2.1 Development of Regioselective and β-Stereospecific Mannosylation and Its Use in the Synthesis of Oligosaccharides Found in *E. coli* O75 [8]

Initially, the BMAD reaction of 4,6-diol 8 and 1,2-anhydromannose 15 [24] was investigated using various boronic acid catalysts. When boronic ester 14, prepared from 8 and catalyst 13 having an electron-withdrawing nitro group, was employed, the reaction went smoothly and β(1,6)-mannoside 16 was afforded in good yield as a single-isomeric compound. On the other hand, when boronic acid 9 having an electron-donating methoxy group was employed, the chemical yield of 16 reduced, and little β-stereoselectivity was observed. These results suggested that the reactivity of catalyst 13 is higher than that of 9 and the SN2 reaction from α-face of 1,2-anhydro donor 15 proceeds when the donor activation is weakened by a decrease in the Lewis acidity of the corresponding boronic ester. Subsequent optimization of the reaction solvent and temperature achieved a 90% yield of 16 (Scheme 14.2a). Interestingly,
omitting the toluene reflux and subsequent concentration and simply mixing the three substrates afforded 16 in almost the same 85% yield (Scheme 14.2b). These results indicate that the formation of the boronic ester proceeds effectively in organic solvents and that the formation of a small amount of water in the reaction system does not significantly affect the chemical yield or regio and stereoselectivities. This finding was an important hint for the development of the late-stage glycosylation method for unprotected glycosides, which will be introduced later. The glycosylation reaction of the galactose-type 4,6-diol 17 with 15 took place with complete reversal of regioselectivity and β(1,4)-mannoside 18 was afforded as a single-isomeric compound in 86% yield (Scheme 14.2c). The reasons for the reversal of regioselectivity can be explained using the predictive model of regioselectivity based on the transition state (TS) models shown in Fig. 14.3. Specifically, the glycosylation of Glc-type 4,6-diol 8 with 1,2-anhydromannose donor 15 is expected to proceed at the 6-position because TS-β(1,6), where the donor moiety does not overlap with the acceptor moiety, is energetically advantageous over TS-β(1,4). On the other hand, in the case of Gal-type 4,6-diol 17, TS-β(1,4) is energetically favored over TS-β(1,6) due to the opposite C4 stereochemistry.

Since the β-mannoside bond was efficiently constructed at the 4-position of galactose, this reaction was applied to the synthesis of glycan 19 derived from pathogenic \textit{E. coli} O75 [25, 26]. In recent years, the appearance of multidrug-resistant \textit{E. coli}

![Scheme 14.2 BMAD reaction of 8 and 15 a with and b without preformation of 14. c BMAD reaction of 17 and 15 without preformation of the boronic ester](image-url)
O75, the cause of urinary tract infections [27], has become a problem [28, 29]. Scheme 14.3 shows the retrosynthetic analysis of 19. The main feature of this synthesis is the sequential introduction of disaccharide unit 21 and monosaccharide unit 15 into 3,4,6-triol acceptor 22 in a regio and stereoselective manner. The target tetrasaccharide 19 could be synthesized by regioselective and β-stereospecific BMAD reaction of 4,6-diol 20 with 15, followed by conversion and deprotection of the protecting groups. The trisaccharide 20 could be synthesized through the regioselective glycosylation of triol 22 with thioglycoside 21 with stoichiometric amounts of boronic acid 9 as a temporary protecting group for the 4,6-diol [30].

Scheme 14.4 shows the synthetic scheme of 19. 4,6-diol-protected boronic acid ester 23 was obtained by acetone reflux of triol 22 and boronic acid 9, followed by
concentration. The glycosylation reaction of 23 with thioglycoside 21 using NIS/TfOH as an activator in DCE/toluene at −30 °C provided trisaccharide 24 in high yield with excellent regio and 1,2-trans-stereoselectivities. The BMAD reaction of the trisaccharide acceptor 24 with 1,2-anhydromannose 15 using boronic acid 13 was investigated in MeCN at 0 °C. As expected, the reaction proceeded β(1,4) selectively and the desired tetrasaccharide 25 was obtained as a single isomeric compound in 91% yield. Efficient synthesis of 19 was completed by conversion and deprotection of the protecting groups.

14.2.2 Development of Regioselective and β-Stereospecific Rhamnosylation and Its Use in the Synthesis of Oligosaccharides Found in E. coli O1 [10, 14]

We next developed regioselective and stereospecific β-rhamnosylation. Specifically, we examined the BMAD reaction of 4,6-diols with 1,2-anhydromannose donor 26 [31] using catalytic amounts of boronic acid 13 at 0 °C in MeCN. The reaction went efficiently to afford β(1,4)-rhamnoside 27 with high regio and complete stereoselectivities in 87% yield, indicating that the regioselectivity of the β-rhamnosylation of 4,6-diols is the same as that of the α-glucosylation. In addition, the glycosylations
with 26 were examined using three different 4,6-diol acceptors, glucal, N-acetylglucosaminide, and mannoside, under the same reaction conditions. In all cases, the reaction gave the corresponding β(1,4)-rhamnosides 28–30 in high yields and with high regio and stereoselectivities, indicating the high substrate generality of this reaction (Fig. 14.4).

To demonstrate the utility of this reaction, we focused on avian pathogenic E. coli (APEC), which is a bacterial pathogen that infects chickens and causes economic damage to poultry farmers [32, 33]. The APEC O1 strain is especially problematic due to its high genomic similarity to the human pathogenic E. coli O1 strain and its potential for zoonotic transmission [34–36]. The detailed structure of the O-antigen of the APEC O1 strain is still unknown, hampering the development of effective and safe vaccines against APEC O1. Thus, we focused on the O1A antigen which is the pentasaccharide repeat unit of the LPS from pathogenic E. coli O1 [37]. In this study, we first synthesized O1A pentasaccharide 31 as a glycotope candidate of APEC O1 for vaccine development (Fig. 14.5).

Scheme 14.5 shows the synthetic scheme of 31. The BMAD reaction of 4,6-diol 32 and 1,2-anhydrorhamnose 33 was investigated using catalytic amounts of boronic acid 13 at room temperature in THF. The reaction cleanly provided the desired β(1,4)-rhamnoside 34 as a single isomeric compound in 92% yield. Protecting the two hydroxyl groups in 34 with Bz groups, followed by removing the PMB group under acidic conditions, afforded 35. α-stereoselective rhamnosylation of 35 and known donor 36 gave the trisaccharide as a single isomeric compound in high yield. The removal of the PMB group provided the trisaccharide acceptor 37. Next, the [2 + 3] glycosylation with 38 [14] using TfOH as an activator in toluene at −40 °C gave protected pentasaccharide 39 in 80% yield. Transformation of the azido and N-Troc groups to acetamide groups, followed by global deprotection, furnished
14.3 Development of Regioselective and 1,2-cis-Stereospecific BMAD Reaction of Unprotected Glycosides and Its Use in the Synthesis of the Oligosaccharide Found in *P. boydii* [9]

The development of chemical methods capable of regio and stereoselective glycosylation to specific hydroxyl groups in the presence of many free hydroxyl groups would significantly reduce protection and deprotection steps. Furthermore, this method could be employed for late-stage glycosylations of unprotected natural products and pharmaceutical compounds to facilitate the creation of prodrugs and conduct structure–activity relationship studies. We therefore investigated the development of regioselective and 1,2-cis-stereospecific BMAD reactions for unprotected glycosides with several free hydroxyl groups.

Initially, we selected 1,2-anhydroglucose 11 as a glycosyl donor and D-glucal (40) as an unprotected sugar acceptor and examined the glycosylation using boronic acid catalyst 13. Specifically, the reaction was initiated by adding donor 11 after preparation of boronic ester 41 by toluene refluxing of 13 and 40 followed by concentration. The desired α(1,4)-glycoside 42 was obtained in 49% yield, in addition to the trisaccharides 44 and 45, which are considered products of over-reaction, in 8% and 15% yields, respectively (Table 14.1, entry 1). It was considered that the 9-membered boronic ester intermediate 46 was generated after the first BMAD reaction activated donor 11, which caused the second BMAD reaction to produce 44 and 45 (Fig. 14.6).

Here, as mentioned above, this reaction proceeded effectively even in the presence of a small amount of water, and we hypothesized that the addition of an excess amount of water to the reaction mixture might inhibit the progress of the over-reaction and
To improve the yield of the target disaccharide 42, we considered that the addition of water to the reaction mixture would quickly allow the hydrolysis of the unstable 9-membered ring boronic ester 46 and inhibit the activation of 11 by 46. Thus, we found for the first time that when 5.0 equiv. of water was added, the desired 42 was afforded with high regio and complete stereoselectivities in a high yield of 92%, without producing trisaccharides 44 and 45 (Table 14.1, entry 2). Furthermore, to improve the efficiency, the reaction was carried out without preformation of 41 and only with the addition of catalyst 13. The desired 42 was obtained in similar yields (Table 14.1, entry 3).

Next, several unprotected sugars were used to examine the substrate generality with respect to the glycosyl acceptors (Fig. 14.7). The BMAD reaction using 1,2-anhydroglucose 11 and catalytic amounts of boronic acid 13 proceeded highly regioselectively with complete 1,2-cis-stereoselectivity even for a glucoside with four free hydroxyl groups, yielding α(1,4)-glycoside 47 in a high yield of 88%. The corresponding α(1,4)-glycosides 48–50 were similarly afforded in high yields when using
Table 14.1  BMAD reaction of 11 and 40

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2[a]</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3[a,b]</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[a] 5.0 equiv. of H$_2$O was used as an additive.
[b] Without pre-formation of 41 under toluene reflux conditions.

Fig. 14.6  Proposed mechanism for the generation of trisaccharides 44 and 45

a glucoside with different substituents at the anomeric position, a thioglucoside with a leaving group at the anomeric position, and a glucosaminide, respectively.

The BMAD reaction of unprotected natural glycosides was investigated to clarify the usefulness of this reaction as a late-stage glycosylation method. Specifically, daidzin (51), which has five free hydroxyl groups, including a phenolic hydroxyl group, was selected as a natural glycoside. Its glycosylation reaction with 52 using catalyst 13 afforded the desired α(1,4)-glycoside 53 with good regio and complete stereoselectivities in 70% yield. The synthesis of isoflavone glycoside 54 was easily achieved by removing the protecting groups of the resulting glycoside 53 (Scheme 14.6a). Paeoniflorin (55), which has five free hydroxyl groups and hemiketal and acetal moieties considered acid labile, was glycosylated with 11 to afford the desired α(1,4) glucoside 56 in 73% yield, followed by the removal of the protecting groups to afford the corresponding glycoside 57 in only two steps (Scheme 14.6b).
Thus, the BMAD method is a practical technique for the chemical modification of natural glycosides and pharmaceuticals with complex structures.

To demonstrate additional applications of this method, we synthesized the branched α-glucan oligosaccharide found in *P. boydii*. Scheme 14.7 shows the synthetic scheme of 64. The BMAD reaction of the unprotected sugar 58 with
52 using boronic acid catalyst 13 gave the desired α(1,4) glucoside 59 as a single isomeric compound in 72% yield. The BMAD reaction of 59 and 11 using borinic acid catalyst 60 was then conducted. This reaction is a glycosylation reaction in which borinic acid and the alcohol in the sugar acceptor form a borinic ester, which then activates a 1,2-anhydro donor and proceeds by a S_Ni-type reaction mechanism, similar to the boronic acid-catalyzed BMAD reaction [38, 39]. The desired trisaccharide 61 was glycosylated only at the 6-position, a primary hydroxyl group, in a regio and stereoselective manner. PMB group selective deprotection of 61 gave 62 with seven free hydroxyl groups. The BMAD reaction of trisaccharide 62 and 11 with boronic acid catalyst 13 also proceeded in a regio and stereoselective manner to provide the desired α(1,4)-glycoside 63 in good yield. Finally, by the removal of the Bn groups in 63, efficient synthesis of the branched α-glucan tetrascarhide 64 with minimal protecting groups was achieved, demonstrating the usefulness of this method.

Scheme 14.7 Synthesis of branched α-glucan tetrascarhide 64

In natural and pharmaceutical products, there are many glycosides glycosylated to *meso*-diols with a symmetrical face, such as 2-deoxystreptamin and *myo*-inositol. However, to synthesize these glycosides, it is necessary to introduce a sugar unit into the desired hydroxyl group of two equivalent hydroxyl groups of the *meso*-diol, and multiple steps are required to control the glycosylation site. Reducing the number of synthetic steps is a major challenge. The conventionally used synthetic tactic of *myo*-inositol glycosides is illustrated with an example (Fig. 14.8). First, the *meso*-diol 65 prepared from *myo*-inositol is desymmetrized utilizing a chiral auxiliary group 66, resulting in a mixture of diastereomers 67 and 68 [40, 41]. Next, one of the desired diastereomers 68 is separated and purified as a glycosyl acceptor, and then the desired *myo*-inositol glycoside 71 can be synthesized by stereoselective glycosylation with glycosyl donor 69, followed by removal of the chiral auxiliary in the resulting 70. However, this conventional synthetic tactic is inefficient due to the low yield and regioselectivity of the desymmetrization reaction with the chiral auxiliary group and the multiple steps required. We hypothesized that the BMAD reaction of a *meso*-diol with 1,2-anhydro donor 72 and boronic acid catalyst 73 would proceed regio and stereoselectively with desymmetrization to yield the targeted *myo*-inositol glycoside 71 in a single step.

To investigate our hypothesis, the desymmetric BMAD reaction of 1,2-anhydroglucose 11 and *meso*-myo-inositol 74 using boronic acid catalyst 13 was examined in THF at –20 °C (Scheme 14.8). For the first time, the glycosylation was
found to proceed effectively to give α(1,6)-glucoside 75 with complete regio and stereoselectivities in 96% yield. When 1,2-anhydromannose 15 was employed under the same conditions, the regioselectivity was reversed completely and the BMAD reaction of 74 gave β(1,4)-mannoside 76 as a single isomeric compound in 99% yield. These results indicated that the regioselectivity of this reaction is dependent on the configuration of the C2 position of the donor used. Indeed, it was confirmed that when 1,2-anhydromannose 26 having the same R configuration at the C2 position as 11 and 1,2-anhydrofucose 77 having the same S configuration at the C2 position as 15 were employed in the BMAD reactions of 74, corresponding β(1,6)-rhamnoside 78 and α(1,6)-fucoside 79 were obtained, respectively, in high yields with complete diastereoselectivity. These results clearly indicated that chirality transfer from the 1,2-anhydro donor to the meso-diol acceptor occurred.

To demonstrate the utility of this desymmetric BMAD reaction, we applied it to the synthesis of mannoside 80 which is the common structure of the antibiotic LLBM-782 series and is a base hydrolysis product of LLBM-782α (Fig. 14.9) [42–44]. The anomeric configuration of 80 was assigned as β by the value of its $^1J_{CH}$ coupling constant of 164 Hz. However, α-anomers and β-anomers are usually observed at $^1J_{CH}$ values of about 170 Hz and 160 Hz, respectively, thus the assignment of the β configuration is ambiguous [45, 46].

Scheme 14.9 shows the synthetic scheme of 80. Initially, diastereoselective desymmetric BMAD reaction of meso-diol 74 with 1,2-anhydro donor 81 possessing
Fig. 14.9  Chemical structures of the LLBM-782 series and common structure 80 obtained by base hydrolysis of LLBM-782α₁.

A PMB group at the C3 position took place at $-20 \, ^\circ\text{C}$ in THF affording $\beta$(1,4)-mannoside 82 as a single isomeric compound in 85% yield. The $^1J_{CH}$ for 82 was 159 Hz and the nOe correlation between H1 and H5 in the mannose moiety was observed, showing that the anomeric configuration of 82 was $\beta$. Treatment of 82 with hydrogen chloride to remove TBS and orthoformate groups, followed by protection of the resulting hexanol with Bn groups, gave 83. Removal of the PMB group in 83 under acidic conditions gave 84. Treatment of 84 with DMP, followed by oximation, afforded 85. Treatment of 85 with Ac₂O, followed by reduction of the oxime group and carbamoylation of the resulting amine, gave 86. Finally, removal of Bn groups furnished the target mannoside 80 in high yield. The $^{13}$C NMR data obtained for 80 were in good agreement with the reported data. These results indicated that the stereochemistry of the anomeric position of LLBM-782 series is indeed in the $\beta$ configuration.
In summary, we have developed regioselective and 1,2-cis-β-stereospecific BMAD reactions. This study found that the preformation of the boronic ester under toluene reflux conditions was not always necessary, which is an important point for future development. Subsequently, we applied this method to synthesize oligosaccharides found in pathogenic bacteria, *E. coli* O75 and O1. In addition, we developed regioselective and 1,2-cis-stereospecific BMAD reactions of unprotected glycosides. Adding water to the reaction mixture inhibited the over-reaction. We applied this method to the late-stage BMAD reaction of biologically active natural glycosides and the synthesis of an oligosaccharide found in *P. boydii*. We also developed a diastereoselective desymmetric BMAD reaction of meso-diols and applied this method to synthesize the common structure of the LLBM-782 series, revealing that the anomeric configuration of the LLBM-782 series was β. Therefore, the BMAD reaction will aid in the creation of lead compounds for new pharmaceuticals and functional materials. These methods will contribute to biology, pharmacy, and medicine through the utilization of the developed glycosides.
References


39. Tanaka M, Takahashi D, Toshima K (2016) 1,2-cis-α-Stereoselective glycosylation utilizing a glycosyl-acceptor-derived borinic ester and its application to the total synthesis of natural glycosphingolipids. Org Lett 18: 5030-5033. [https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.lett.6b02488](https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.lett.6b02488)


**Open Access** This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License ([http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 15
Pursuing Step Economy in Total Synthesis of Complex Marine Macrolide Natural Products

Haruhiko Fuwa

Abstract Here I describe our first-, second-, and third-generation synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide, which is a Jamaican marine macrolide that shows potent antiproliferative and antifungal activities. The third-generation synthesis enabled an expedient access to (+)-neopeltolide in 11 linear and 23 total steps, which is so far the shortest synthesis of this natural product. Convergent synthesis planning by taking advantage of chemoselective transformations, cross-coupling reactions, and tandem reactions was the key for increasing step economy.

Keywords Chemoselectivity · Convergent synthesis · Tandem reaction · Olefin metathesis · Palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling

15.1 Introduction

As exemplified by halichondrins and bryostatins, marine macrolide natural products are an important source of chemotherapeutic lead compounds for human diseases [1–5]. However, most of, if not all, this class of natural products are only scarcely isolable from natural sources. The structural complexity of marine macrolides, commonly characterized by a macrolactone skeleton with multiple stereogenic centers, also hampers selective derivatizations for analogue synthesis. Accordingly, total synthesis is currently the most practical way to access marine macrolides for detailed investigations into their chemical reactivity and biological activity [6–9]. It should also be emphasized that total synthesis plays an indispensable role in the structure determination of marine macrolides, wherein NMR spectroscopic analysis sometimes results in incorrect configurational assignment of stereogenic centers [10].

The synthetic challenges in total synthesis of marine macrolide natural products basically include the construction of the stereochemically complex carbon chain and
the closure of the macrocyclic backbone [6–9]. Owing to significant advances in synthetic organic chemistry over the past half century, nowadays a body of versatile methods for the synthesis of chiral building blocks is available, and a repertoire of powerful macrocyclization reactions is now in our hand. However, efficiency in total synthesis of marine macrolides still remains unsatisfactory; it is not uncommon to find cases where 25 steps or more are required to complete a total synthesis [11]. Thus, it seems necessary to formulate a new way of thinking in total synthesis of marine macrolides.

Motivated by the structural complexity and medicinal importance, our group has initiated synthetic campaigns toward anticancer marine macrolides more than 15 years ago (Fig. 15.1) [12–23]. Our first target was (+)-neopeltolide, which was originally isolated by Wright et al. from a Jamaican sponge of the family Neopeltidae [24].

On the basis of detailed 2D-NMR experiments, the planar structure and relative stereochemistry of (+)-neopeltolide were initially determined to be that shown

![Fig. 15.1 Structures of marine macrolide natural products](image-url)
by structure 10 (Fig. 15.2). However, the structure of (+)-neopeltolide reported by Wright et al. was unfortunately misassigned and later corrected to be structure 1 by Panek [25] and Scheidt [26] through total synthesis. Notably, the structure of (+)-neopeltolide is closely similar to that of (+)-leucascandrolide A (11), a marine macrolide that was previously identified by Pietra et al. from the sponge *Leucascandra caveolata* collected in New Caledonia [27].

(+)-Neopeltolide exhibited single-digit nanomolar in vitro antiproliferative activity in cancer cells. In addition, (+)-neopeltolide showed potent growth inhibition against fungal pathogen *Candida albicans* (MIC = 0.625 μg/mL in liquid culture). These biological activities of (+)-neopeltolide were quite similar to those of (+)-leucascandrolide A reported by Pietra [27]. Later, the Kozmin group revealed that neopeltolide and leucascandrolide A inhibited the complex III of the electron transport chain of the mitochondria to exert their potent biological activities [28]. We reported that 8,9-dehydroleopeltolide showed potent cytotoxic activity in cancer cells under energy stressed conditions [29, 30]. We also described the synthesis of fluorescent derivatives of 8,9-dehydroleopeltolide to demonstrate its rapid accumulation in the mitochondria and the endoplasmic reticulum in live cells [31].

Because of the unique structural and biological aspects, (+)-neopeltolide represents an intriguing target for synthetic organic chemists [32–35]. Since the first

**Fig. 15.2** Structures of (+)-neopeltolide and (+)-leucascandrolide A
total synthesis of 1 [25], a number of research groups have demonstrated the total and formal synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide. Furthermore, synthesis-driven structure–activity relationship investigations of this natural product have been described by several groups.

This chapter will describe the first-, second-, and third-generation total synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide, achieved by our group. The step economy [36] of each synthesis will be analyzed to illuminate how we strived for achieving synthetic efficiency.


In 2007, we initiated our synthetic studies toward the proposed structure 10 of (+)-neopeltolide. Inspired by our past experience in the total synthesis of polycyclic ethers by capitalizing on Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling [37] of enol phosphates [38], it was envisioned that the tetrahydropyran ring of 10 could be accessible by means of a cross-coupling of alkylborate 13 and enol phosphate 14 followed by a ring-closing metathesis [39] (Fig. 15.3). The 14-membered macrocyclic framework of 10 was to be forged via a Yamaguchi macrolactonization [40] of seco acid 12.

We synthesized alkyl iodide 15 as the immediate precursor of alkylborate 13, as summarized in Fig. 15.4. Aldehyde 16, available in five steps from (R)-Roche ester, was allylborated with (−)-Ipc2Ballyl [41] to yield homoallylic alcohol 17 (94%). After O-methylation (MeOTf, 2,6-DTBP, 90%), ozonolysis of the double bond delivered aldehyde 18 quantitatively. Allylboration of 18 with (+)-Ipc2Ballyl afforded homoallylic alcohol 19 in 90% yield. Hydrogenation, PMB protection, and desilylation gave alcohol 20 (66%, three steps), which was iodinated to provide alkyl iodide 15 (quantitative).

Fig. 15.3 First-generation synthetic blueprint toward the proposed structure 10 of (+)-neopeltolide
The synthesis of enol phosphate 14, shown in Fig. 15.5, started with Keck asymmetric allylation (Ti(Oi-Pr)₄, (R)-BINOL, allylSnBu₃, 4 Å MS) [42] of aldehyde 21 to give homoallicylic alcohol 22 (93%, > 95% e.e.). PMB protection of 22 (77%) and subsequent cross-metathesis (G-II, methyl acrylate) led to α,β-unsaturated ester 23 (89%, E/Z > 20:1), which was reduced with DIBALH to provide allylic alcohol 24 quantitatively. Asymmetric epoxidation under Sharpless conditions using (−)-DET [43] gave epoxy alcohol 25 (95%, >20:1 d.r.). Iodination of 25 followed by zinc reduction afforded allylic alcohol 26 (87%, two steps). Protection of 26 using BOMCl/i-Pr₂NEt, cleavage of the PMB group with DDQ, and acetylation gave acetate 27 (98%, three steps). Finally, treatment of 27 with KHMDS and (PhO)₂P(Cl) [44] gave rise to enol phosphate 14. Because this compound was unstable, it was used directly in the subsequent Suzuki–Miyaura coupling without purification by silica gel chromatography.

With the advanced intermediates 14 and 15 in hand, we proceeded to assemble the key tetrahydropyran ring and complete the total synthesis, as illustrated in Fig. 15.6. According to the procedure described by Marshall [45], alkyl iodide 15 (1 equiv.) was lithiated and immediately trapped with B-MeO-9-BBN, and the resultant alkylborate 13 was cross-coupled with acetate-derived enol phosphate 14 using aq. Cs₂CO₃ as a base and Pd(PPh₃)₄ complex as a catalyst to deliver enol ether 28. This was immediately subjected to ring-closing metathesis using G-II (10 mol%), leading uneventfully to dihydropyran 29 in 67% yield from 15. Hydrogenation of 29 proceeded from the β-face of the molecule to evade unfavorable steric contact with the benzylxymethyl group and afforded tetrahydropyran 30 in 81% yield with >20:1 d.r. Desilylation of 30 (97%), a two-step oxidation of the derived alcohol, and subsequent treatment of the so obtained carboxylic acid with TMSCHN₂ afforded methyl ester 31 in 91% over the three steps. Removal of the PMB group and TMSOK-mediated hydrolysis of the ester gave seco acid 12 (85%, two steps). Macrolactonization of 12 successfully closed the 14-membered macrocyclic skeleton to provide macro lactone 32 in 97% yield. Hydrogenolytic deprotection of the BOM group gave rise to alcohol 33.

---

Fig. 15.4  Synthesis of alkyl iodide 15
Mitsunobu esterification \([46]\) of \(33\) with carboxylic acid \(34\) \([47, 48]\) (DIAD, \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}\)) resulted in the proposed structure \(10\) of (+)-neopeltolide (86%).

During the course of the above investigation, the stereochemical reassignment of (+)-neopeltolide was disclosed by the Panek group \([25]\), which prompted us to synthesize the correct structure \(1\) in a similar manner as that shown for \(10\) (Fig. 15.7).

Alkyl iodide \(38\) with correct configurations at C11 and C13 was easily synthesized from aldehyde \(16\) by using suitable Brown’s chiral allylboration reagents. Suzuki–Miyaura coupling of alkylborate \(39\), prepared from \(38\), with enol phosphate \(14\) under the optimized conditions, followed by ring-closing metathesis using \(\text{G-II}\) complex, afforded dihydropyran \(41\) in 78% yield for the two steps. Subsequent hydrogenation of \(41\) delivered 2,6-cis-configured tetrahydropyran \(42\) (81%, >20:1 d.r.). The remainder of the synthesis proceeded in much the same way as that described for \(10\).

Our first-generation synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide was thus achieved in 25 linear steps from (R)-Roche ester (or 1,3-propanediol) and in 49 total steps \([49, 50]\). Analysis of the convergency of the present synthesis is shown in Fig. 15.8. The two advanced intermediates, alkyl iodide \(38\) and enol phosphate \(14\), were synthesized in 13 steps each. After the point of convergence \([51]\) at the 14th step, completion of the total synthesis required 11 additional steps, seven of which were concession steps \([52]\). These step counts illuminate the following points: (1) the first-generation synthesis is only moderately convergent because the point of convergence was placed at the mid of the macrolactone synthesis; (2) many concession steps were required in between the tetrahydropyran construction and the macrocyclization. We considered that these inefficiencies should, at least in part, be ascribable to the anion chemistry for
Fig. 15.6  Total synthesis of the proposed structure 10 of (+)-neopeltolide
preparing alkylborate 39 and enol phosphate 14, where all the hydroxy groups (C1, C3, C5, C11, and C13) must be differentially protected. Extensive usage of protecting groups inevitably increases the number of concession steps. With this point in mind, we strived to develop a second-generation synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide as described in the following section.
15.3 The Second-Generation Synthesis of (+)-Neopeltolide:
The Ring-Closing Metathesis Approach (2010)

To maximize the convergency of the second-generation synthesis, we envisioned a synthetic blueprint in which the point of convergence was placed at late stage as possible (Fig. 15.9). Thus, the macrolactone skeleton of 1 would be accessed from diene 44 via a macrocyclic ring-closing metathesis, and the latter should be available from carboxylic acid 45 and alcohol 46 through a Yamaguchi esterification.
First, we synthesized carboxylic acid 45 as shown in Fig. 15.10. Asymmetric aldol reaction [53] of trans-cinnamaldehyde (47) with thiazolidinethione 48 under Nagao conditions gave alcohol 49 (87%, 11:1 d.r.). The undesired minor diastereomer could be readily separable by silica gel flash column chromatography. After removal of the thiazolidinethione moiety (94%), the resultant amide 50 was reacted with allylMgCl to deliver β,γ-unsaturated ketone 51 (90%). Evans–Tishchenko reduction [54] of 51 (SmI2, EtCHO) afforded alcohol 52 quantitatively with > 20:1 d.r. Cross-metathesis of 52 with methyl acrylate catalyzed by G-II complex proceeded cleanly to afford α,β-unsaturated ester 54 without producing the corresponding ring-closing metathesis product. The remarkable chemoselectivity observed for the present cross-metathesis reaction would be ascribable to conformational locking of ruthenium alkylidene intermediate 53 by an intramolecular H-bonding [55–57], making the styryl group away from the reactive site. Note that exposure of relevant substrate 55 to G-II complex mainly gave ring-closing metathesis product 56 in 71% yield, along with cross-metathesis product 57 in 25% yield. Protection of the hydroxy group of 54 using BOMCl/i-Pr2NEt provided BOM ether 58 (68%, two steps from 52). Upon exposure of 58 to K₂CO₃ in methanol, removal of the propionyl group and concomitant intramolecular oxa-Michael addition [58–60] occurred to give 2,6-cis-configured tetrahydropyran 59 albeit with only moderate diastereoselectivity (cis/trans ca. 2:1). Accordingly, the diastereomer mixture was treated with DBU (toluene, 100 °C) to achieve a thermodynamic equilibration of a retro-oxa-Michael/oxa-Michael sequence, giving 2,6-cis-configured tetrahydropyran 59 (53%, > 20:1 d.r.). Hydrolysis of 59 provided carboxylic acid 45 quantitatively.

Next, we synthesized alcohol 46 from (R)-epichlorohydrin (60) as depicted in Fig. 15.11. Nucleophilic attack of 2-lithio-1,3-dithiane to 60 gave epoxide 61 (90%). Addition of an organocuprate derived from EtMgBr/CuI to 61 afforded alcohol 62 (92%). PMB protection of 62 (92%) and hydrolytic removal of the dithiane (91%) led to aldehyde 63. Chelate-controlled addition of methallyltrimethylsilane to 63 under
the influence of MgBr$_2$·OEt$_2$ delivered homoallylic alcohol 64 in 73% yield with 15:1 d.r. Methylation of 64 and PMB deprotection then afforded alcohol 46 (91%, two steps).

Now the stage was set for assembly of the advanced intermediates (Fig. 15.12). Carboxylic acid 45 and alcohol 46 were esterified according to Yamaguchi conditions to deliver ester 44 (94%). Macrocyclic ring-closing metathesis of 44 required extensive optimization efforts owing to the moderate reactivity of the styryl group and the methallyl (2-methyl-2-propenyl) group; eventually it was found that a syringe pump addition of a solution of G-II complex in toluene over 6 h to a mixture of 44 and 1,4-benzoquinone [61] in toluene (3 mM, 100 °C) provided macrocycle 65 in 85% yield. The ring-closing metathesis of 44 could be carried out at higher concentration without significant decline of the product yield (82% at 10 mM and 75% at
40 mM). Stereoselective hydrogenation of the olefin and in situ deprotection of the BOM group by hydrogenolysis led to neopeltolide macro lactone (43) (93%, > 20:1 d.r.). Mitsunobu coupling of 43 with carboxylic acid 34 furnished (+)-neopeltolide (1) in 85% yield.

Our second-generation total synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide was achieved in 13 linear steps from trans-cinnamaldehyde (47) and in 31 total steps [62, 63]. The outline of the second-generation synthesis is summarized in Fig. 15.13. The advanced intermediates, carboxylic acid 45 and alcohol 46, were prepared in nine and seven steps, respectively. The point of convergence appeared at the tenth step. After assembly of 45 and 46, the synthesis was finished in just three steps. Thus, it is clear that the convergency of the second-generation synthesis is much higher than that of the first-generation synthesis. Another key feature of the second-generation synthesis is the minimization of concession steps throughout the synthesis. The styryl group of trans-cinnamaldehyde (47) was carried through most of the synthesis and used in the macrocyclization step. The α,β-unsaturated ester group of 58, served as a Michael acceptor to forge the tetrahydropyran ring, was used for subsequent esterification without oxidation state adjustments, thereby enabling expedient access to carboxylic acid 45. The two-fold use of nucleophilic epoxide-opening reactions facilitated short synthesis of alcohol 46.

Notably, our second-generation synthesis of 1 was applied to the construction of a 16-member (−)-8,9-dehydroneopeltolide stereoisomer library to investigate the structure–activity relationship in detail [63] and also to the synthesis of fluorescent-labeled analogues to examine the cellular target of 1 [31].
15.4 The Third-Generation Synthesis of (+)-Neopeltolide: The Tandem Macrocyclization/Transannular Pyran Cyclization Approach (2022)

In 2015, Hoveyda and co-workers disclosed a synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide (1), in which catalyst-controlled stereoselective olefin metathesis reactions were utilized extensively [64]. The Hoveyda synthesis of 1 proceeded in 11 linear steps (28 total steps). Motivated by this elegant work, we embarked on a third-generation synthesis of 1, which was based on the macrocyclization/transannular pyran cyclization strategy developed within our group [22, 65].

The third-generation synthesis blueprint toward 1, summarized in Fig. 15.14, featured not only an expedient access to neopeltolide macrolactone (43) on the basis of the macrocyclization/transannular pyran cyclization strategy but also a convergent synthesis of side chain carboxylic acid 34 through a two-fold application of palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions. Thus, 43 would be available from
propargylic alcohol 66, and the latter was traced back to carboxylic acid 67 and alcohol 68. Meanwhile, 34 was planned to be synthesized from iodoxazole 69 and alkyne 70.

The synthesis of carboxylic acid 67 is depicted in Fig. 15.15. Alcohol 71 was prepared from (R)-epichlorohydrin through a one-pot, sequential exposure to 2-lithio-1,3-dithiane and vinylMgBr/CuBr•SMe2 [66]. Benzylation of 71 (93%) followed by hydrolytic deprotection of the dithioacetal of 72 afforded aldehyde 73 (91%). Asymmetric Kiyooka aldol reaction of 73 and enol silane 74 (N-Ts-L-Val, BH3•THF) [67] provided alcohol 75 in 90% yield with 93:7 d.r. After protection of 75 (99%), saponification of the ester moiety of 76 delivered carboxylic acid 67 (88%).

Alcohol 68 was synthesized from (S)-epichlorohydrin (77) as shown in Fig. 15.16. Regioselective epoxide-opening of 77 with alkyne 78 (n-BuLi, BF3•OEt2) [68] gave chlorohydrin 79 (98%). After treatment of 79 with NaH, in situ regioselective ring-opening of the resultant epoxide with (vinyl)2Cu(CN)Li2 delivered homoallylic alcohol 80 (82%). Methylation of 80 (quantitative) and subsequent epoxidation of 81 with m-CBPA gave the corresponding epoxide in 94% yield with 54:45 d.r. Hydrolytic
Fig. 15.14  Third-generation synthetic blueprint toward (+)-neopeltolide (1)

Fig. 15.15  Synthesis of carboxylic acid 67

kinetic resolution using (R,R)-Co^{II}-salen complex [69] afforded epoxide 83 as a single
diastereomer (52%, > 95:5 d.r.), along with 1,2-diol 82 (40%, 82:18 d.r.), after sepa-
ration by silica gel flash column chromatography. Regioselective ring-opening of 83
with EtMgBr/CuCN furnished alcohol 68 (89%).

Carboxylic acid 34 was synthesized as illustrated in Fig. 15.17. Iodooxazole 69
was prepared from ethyl oxazole-4-carboxylate (LHMDS, 1,2-diiodoethane) in one
Fig. 15.16 Synthesis of alcohol 68

step [70]. Oshima–Yorimitsu cross-coupling [71] of 69 with alkyne 70 proceeded cleanly by treatment of 70 with InCl$_3$/DIBALH in the presence of Et$_3$B/air, followed by cross-coupling of the generated alkenylindium with 69 under the catalysis of Pd(PPh$_3$)$_4$, giving alkenyloxazole 84 in 80% yield. Half reduction of the ester of 84 provided aldehyde 85 (74%, rsm 24%), whose methylation under Takai conditions [72] delivered vinyl oxazole 86 (90%). Site-selective hydroboration of the vinyl group of 86, followed by cross-coupling [37] with ethyl cis-β-iodoacrylate (87) under Suzuki–Miyaura conditions, led to (Z)-α,β-unsaturated ester 88 (57%). Hydrolysis of 88 furnished carboxylic acid 34 (73%).

The third-generation total synthesis of 1 was achieved as shown in Fig. 15.18. Yamaguchi esterification of carboxylic acid 67 and alcohol 68, followed by in situ treatment with acidic ethanol to remove the THP groups, gave propargylic alcohol 66 (89%). Meyer–Schuster rearrangement of 66 under Au/Mo combo catalysis (IPrAuCl, AgOTf, MoO$_2$(acac)$_2$, toluene) [73] generated intermediary vinyl ketone 89, whose macrocyclic ring-closing metathesis under the catalysis of Zhan-1B complex [DCE (20 mM), 40 °C] proceeded with spontaneous transannular oxa-Michael addition of the intermediary α,β-unsaturated ketone 90, giving rise to 2,6-cis-substituted tetrahydropyran 91 (70%, single stereoisomer), after separation of undesired minor diastereomers by silica gel flash column chromatography. The diastereoselectivity of the transannular reaction was determined to be approximately 91:9 through careful inspection of the reaction mixture. A separate experiment on macrocyclic ring-closing metathesis of chromatographically purified 89 under Zhan-1B catalysis (DCE, 80 °C) resulted in macrocyclic α,β-unsaturated ketone 90 (87%, sole product). While in our previous work tandem olefin cross-metathesis/intramolecular oxa-Michael addition of olefinic alcohol derivatives was catalyzed by Ru species [74, 75], it appears that the cationic Au species derived from IPrAuCl/AgOTf was responsible for the transannular oxa-Michael addition of 90 to give tetrahydropyran
91 in the present tandem reaction. Takai methylation of 91 gave exo-olefin 92 (84%). Hydrogenation of the exo-olefin and hydrogenolytic removal of the benzyl group gave rise to neopeltolide macrolactone (43) (93%, 79:21 d.r.). Assembly of 43 with carboxylic acid 34 (DIAD, Ph3P) furnished (+)-neopeltolide (1) in 94% yield. The minor C9 diastereomer, i.e., 9-epi-neopeltolide (9-epi-1) [76], was separated by preparative reverse-phase HPLC. Notably, a single batch experiment provided 40 mg of spectroscopically pure 1 after HPLC purification.

The third-generation synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide (1) proceeded in 11 linear and 23 total steps from inexpensive commercially available materials [77, 78]. The outline of our third-generation synthesis is summarized in Fig. 15.19. The advanced intermediates, carboxylic acid 67 and alcohol 68, were synthesized from (R)- and (S)-epichlorohydrin, respectively, in six steps each. After coupling of these intermediates, propargylic alcohol 66 was advanced to neopeltolide macrolactone (43) in three steps. Meanwhile, alkenyloxazole 84 was available from ethyl 4-oxazolcarboxylate in two steps, and the former was transformed into carboxylic acid 34 in four steps.

The present synthesis represents the shortest access to 1 in terms of the longest linear sequence and the total number of steps. The third-generation synthesis has three significant features. First, the synthesis of key intermediates 67 and 68 was shortened as much as possible by exploiting regioselective epoxide ring-opening chemistry. Second, neopeltolide macrolactone (43) was constructed from propargylic alcohol 66 in an expedient manner by capitalizing on the macrocyclization/transannular pyran cyclization strategy. Third, the synthesis of side chain carboxylic acid 34
Fig. 15.18  Third-generation synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide (1)

was achieved in just six steps from ethyl 4-oxazolecarboxylate by exploiting two Pd-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions. Note that, in our first- and second-generation synthesis of 1, the synthesis of 34 was built on previous works by Leighton [47] and Kozmin [48] and required 11 steps from a commercially available material.
15.5 Summary

This chapter delineated our first-, second-, and third-generation total synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide (1). The synthetic efficiency in terms of step count was improved significantly during the course of these synthetic campaigns (Table 15.1).

### Table 15.1 Synthetic efficiency of our total syntheses of (+)-neopeltolide (1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Number of steps</th>
<th>1st Gen</th>
<th>2nd Gen</th>
<th>3rd Gen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Longest linear steps</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total steps</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 15.19 Summary of the third-generation synthesis of 1
In the first-generation synthesis, it was evident that multiple concession steps throughout the synthesis and lengthy transformations after the point of convergence made the synthesis inefficient. Such superfluous steps were avoided as much as possible upon planning the second- and third-generation synthesis. Nucleophilic epoxide-opening was the basis of short syntheses of key fragments. Macrocyclic ring-closing metathesis served as a powerful means to forge the macrocycle with high chemoselectivity, thereby minimizing extra functional group interconversions. Palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions enabled an expedient access to side chain carboxylic acid fragment.

As implemented in the third-generation synthesis, tandem reactions were effective for increasing step economy. In particular, our macrocyclization/transannular pyran cyclization strategy enabled an expedient construction of the 14-membered macrocyclic skeleton and the engrafted 2,6-cis-configured tetrahydropyran ring in just one step, thereby minimizing extra transformations after the point of convergence. Recently, we have also disclosed a 13-step synthesis of (−)-exiguolide (2) by taking advantage of the macrocyclization/transannular pyran cyclization strategy [22], further underscoring the validity of our synthetic planning. Because the benefits of tandem reactions, for example, reduction of labor, time, and wastes by omitting isolation and/or purification of intermediates, are widely accepted, such reactions should be appropriately reflected to metrics of synthetic efficiency, including step count. Moreover, the development of tandem reactions provides rich opportunities for the discovery of new reactivities and methods [79].

As a beneficial consequence of improving the efficiency in total synthesis of (+)-neopeltolide, we were able to synthesize not only the natural product itself but also various structural analogues that were useful for investigating the structure–activity relationship [63] and biological functions [29–31]. Pursuing step economy in total synthesis of marine macrolides will contribute to future advances in the chemical biology and medicinal chemistry of this promising class of natural products.

References


Chapter 16
Enantioselective Total Syntheses of (−)-Cochlearol B and (+)-Ganocin A

Tomoya Mashiko, Yuta Shingai, Jun Sakai, Shinya Adachi, Akinobu Matsuzawa, Shogo Kamo, and Kazuyuki Sugita

Abstract Herein, we describe the first total synthesis of (±)-cochlearol B and the enantioselective total syntheses of (−)-cochlearol and (+)-ganocin A. The key steps include Corey-Bakshi-Shibata reduction, oxidative phenolic cyclization, intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition, and intramolecular radical cyclization-benzylic oxidative cyclization, enabling efficient access to 4/5/6/6/6 and 5/5/6/6/6-fused pentacyclic frameworks of these natural products.

Keywords Total synthesis · Phenolic oxidative cyclization · Intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition · Intramolecular radical cyclization · Benzylic oxidative cyclization · Corey-Bakshi-Shibata reduction · Nozaki-Hiyama-Kishi reaction · Cochlearol B · Ganocin A

16.1 Introduction

Lingzhi, a fungus of the genus Ganoderma, which is widely distributed over tropical and subtropical latitudes in Asia, has been widely used as a traditional Chinese medicine for the treatment of cancer, hypertension, and asthma, particularly in China, Korea, and Japan [1]. In 2014, Cheng and co-workers reported the isolation of cochlearol B (1) in its racemic form from Ganoderma cochlear [2] (Fig. 16.1). In the same year, Qiu and co-workers isolated ganocin A (2) in its racemic form from the same fungus [3]. These two natural products are meroterpenoids, which have closely related fused pentacyclic structures. Natural product 1 possesses a substituted cyclobutane ring instead of the substituted tetrahydrofuran ring of 2 in its framework. With regard to biological activities, the (−)-enantiomer of 1, which was obtained after chiral HPLC separation, exhibited potent inhibitory activity against p-Smads, while the (+)-enantiomer was inactive [2]. Thus, (−)-1 is a potential lead for renoprotective agent. On the other hand, only anti-acetylcholinesterase activity...
Fig. 16.1 Structures of cochlearol B (1) and ganocin A (2)

study was examined for 2. However, no activity was observed [3]. We assumed that the enantiomer of 2 having the same configuration as (−)-1 would inhibit p-Smads. Accordingly, efficient synthetic methods are required to access these structurally intriguing natural products in order to evaluate their biological activities accurately.

To date, four groups have reported the total synthesis of these two natural products. In 2020, Zhao and co-workers reported the first total synthesis of racemic 2 [4], and in 2021, our group reported the first total synthesis of racemic 1 [5]. Subsequently, Schindler and co-workers reported the total synthesis of the (+)-1 by optical resolution in 2022 [6]. Further, in 2022, Hao and co-workers reported the total syntheses of racemic 1 and 2 [7]. In 2023, we reported the enantioselective total syntheses of (−)-1 and (+)-2, which are expected to show p-Smads inhibitory activity [8]. Here, we describe the enantioselective total syntheses of (−)-1 and (+)-2, together with the racemic total synthesis of (±)-1.

16.2 Retrosynthetic Analysis of Cochlearol B (1)

In order to develop a synthetic route that can be applied to the total synthesis of the optically active forms of 1 and 2, we first performed the retrosynthetic analysis of the racemic form of 1. The retrosynthetic analysis of 1 is shown in Scheme 16.1. The α,β-unsaturated aldehyde moiety, which seems to be the most labile in 1, should be incorporated in 3 at the final stage. One of the key steps in this synthesis is the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition of 4. We envisioned that the pentacyclic framework of 3 could be formed by photo irradiation of 4. The tricyclic structure of 4 was expected to be accessed by the phenolic oxidative cyclization of phenol 5. Incorporation of the alkenyl chain could be realized by the Nozaki-Hiyama-Kishi
Scheme 16.1  Retrosynthetic analysis of cochlearol B (1)

(NHK) reaction of iodide 6, which could be prepared from commercially available 7 in four steps, including a copper-catalyzed coupling reaction.

### 16.3 Synthesis of Diketone 15

Initially, we conducted a coupling reaction between the commercially available iodide 7 and cyclohexan-1,3-dione 8 using a catalytic amount of CuI and proline to obtain enol 9 in 93% yield (Scheme 16.2) [9]. Following this, the Appel-type reaction of enol 9 proceeded smoothly to give iodide 6 in 89% yield [10]. To prepare the metal reagent in the next step, the carbonyl group in 6 was protected as 1,3-dioxolane to produce dioxolane 10 in 90% yield. The resulting dioxolane 10 was treated with tBuLi or Mg to convert into a lithium or a Grignard reagents, but the addition reaction with ketone 11 did not proceed. This was probably because of the bulky structures around the reaction sites. To solve this problem, we employed the NHK reaction [11]. The coupling between iodide 6 and aldehyde 13 by the NHK reaction afforded alcohol 14 in 78% yield. Subsequently, the IBX oxidation of 14 produced diketone 15 in 90% yield [12].

### 16.4 Synthesis of Phenol 5

Next, we focused on the incorporation of the methyl group. Diketone 15 was reacted with a methyl magnesium bromide, resulting in the selective methylation of the carbonyl group in the six-membered ring, to give the undesired 17 in 59% yield.
Scheme 16.2  Synthesis of diketone 15

(Scheme 16.3). Based on this result, the reactivity of the carbonyl group in the six-membered ring toward nucleophiles was anticipated to be higher than that of the carbonyl group in the side chain. Accordingly, to obtain enone 5, we planned the synthesis such that the methyl group is incorporated into the carbonyl group in the side chain after reducing the more reactive carbonyl group in the six-membered ring, followed by oxidation. Consequently, the treatment of diketone 15 with sodium borohydride produced alcohol 18 regioselectively in 78% yield. Next, the methylation of 18 afforded diol 19 in 98% yield. For the phenolic oxidative cyclization, the benzyl group of 19 was cleaved by the lithium-naphthalene system, producing phenol 20 in 85% yield [13]. Subsequent Swern oxidation of 20 proceeded to afford phenol 5 in 89% yield [14].

The regioselectivity of the reduction of diketone 15 was next investigated. The conformational analysis of 15 was performed using DFT calculations (Scheme 16.4). In the conformation shown in Scheme 16.4, nucleophilic attack to the carbonyl group in the side chain was probably blocked by the benzene ring and the hydrogens in the cyclohexanone ring. Thus, it is likely that the carbonyl group in the six-membered ring, which is less hindered, reacted selectively to produce 18.
16 Enantioselective Total Syntheses of (−)-Cochlearol B and (+)-Ganocin A

Scheme 16.3 Synthesis of phenol 5

Scheme 16.4 Proposed mechanism of the regioselective reduction of diketone 15
16.5 Phenolic Oxidative Cyclization and Intramolecular [2+2] Photocycloaddition

With 5 in hand, we investigated the phenolic oxidative cyclization—the key reaction of this synthesis, to construct the tricyclic framework (Table 16.1) [15]. Initially, we expected to obtain hydroquinone derivative 4 as the main product. However, quinone hemiacetals 21 and 22 were obtained as a diastereomeric mixture, and 4 was not obtained under any conditions. First, the treatment of phenol 5 with iodobenzene diacetate (PIDA) in hexafluoro-2-propanol (HFIP) afforded a complex mixture of unknown compounds (Table 16.1, entry 1). In contrast, the oxidative cyclization did not proceed in dichloromethane (DCM) (entries 2 and 3). The reaction in the presence of bis(trifluoroacetoxy)iodobenzene (PIFA) in DCM or iodosobenzene (PhIO) in HFIP afforded a complex mixture of unknown compounds (entries 4 and 5). However, when 5 was treated with PIDA (1.2 eq) in HFIP/DCM (1/50), the desired tricyclic compounds were produced (entry 6). Eventually, the phenolic oxidative cyclization of 5 by the treatment with PIDA (5.0 eq) in HFIP/DCM (1/50) at −78 to −40 °C successfully afforded tricyclic compounds 21 (62% yield) and 22 (14% yield) (entry 7) [15].

We then focused on the next key reaction—the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition (Scheme 16.5). First, we investigated the conversion of the quinone hemiacetal 21 obtained as the main product to 4. As expected, the conversion of the quinone hemiacetal moiety to phenol was difficult. Consequently, Luche reduction at −78 °C afforded 4 in a low yield of 37% [16]. Subsequently, 4 was subjected to intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition upon irradiation with a mercury lamp [17]. Contrary to our expectations, the desired cyclized compound 3, as shown in the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Reagent (eq.)</th>
<th>Solvents</th>
<th>Temp. (°C)</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>PIDA (1.2)</td>
<td>HFIP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PIDA (1.2)</td>
<td>DCM</td>
<td>−78</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>PIDA (1.2)</td>
<td>DCM</td>
<td>rt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Almost 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>PIFA (1.2)</td>
<td>DCM</td>
<td>−78</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>PhIO (1.2)</td>
<td>HFIP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>PIDA (1.2)</td>
<td>HFIP/DCM = 1/50</td>
<td>−78</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5, 21, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PIDA (5.0)</td>
<td>HFIP/DCM = 1/50</td>
<td>−78 to −40</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>21 (62%), 22 (14%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
retrosynthetic analysis, was not produced; instead, a mixture of unknown compounds was obtained. On the other hand, in 21—the major product of the phenolic oxidative cyclization, the double bond of the cyclohexenone ring, which was the reaction center for the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition, was conjugated with the electron-withdrawing quinone hemiacetal ring. Therefore, the reactivity for the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition was thought to be much higher than that of the double bond of the cyclohexenone ring of 4. As expected, the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition of 21 proceeded smoothly to form four- and five-membered rings simultaneously, affording pentacyclic 23 in 74% yield. On the other hand, pentacyclic 24 was not formed from diastereomer 22. We assumed that the steric repulsion between the hydroxy group of the quinone hemiacetal and alkenyl chain inhibited the intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition. Moreover, it was found that 21 and 22 existed in equilibrium in DCM at room temperature, resulting in a mixture with a ratio of 3:1 to 4:1.

Scheme 16.5  Phenolic oxidative cyclization and intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition
16.6 Completion of the Total Synthesis of (±)-Cochlearol B (1)

The completion of the total synthesis of cochlearol B (1) is depicted in Scheme 16.6. Luche reduction of pentacyclic 23 proceeded smoothly to afford phenol 3. We spent a lot of time for the introduction of the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde moiety. After extensive experimentation, the following route was found to give the best result. Pivaloyl protection of phenol 3 followed by treatment with Bredereck’s reagent 26 afforded enaminone 27 in 89% yield from 3 [18]. After the conversion of enaminone 27 to triflate 28 using triflic anhydride [19] and the subsequent reduction of 28 by triethylsilane in the presence of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0), α,β-unsaturated aldehyde 29 was obtained in 64% yield from 27 [20]. Finally, cleavage of the pivaloyl group furnished (±)-cochlearol B (1) in 94% yield. This first total synthesis of 1 was achieved via the longest linear sequence of 16 steps in 9% overall yield.

Scheme 16.6 Completion of the total synthesis of (±)-cochlearol B (1)
16.7 Enantioselective Total Synthesis of (−)-Cochlearol B

Having succeeded in the total synthesis of (±)-1, we attempted to synthesize an optically active form of 1. According to reports, only the (−)-enantiomer of 1 exhibits inhibitory activity against p-Smads. In order to accurately evaluate the biological activities of any synthesized compounds, it is necessary to synthesize the compound in optically active forms. We planned the total synthesis of 1 in its optically active form, which could be utilized for the synthesis of 2 in its optically active form. To develop efficient enantioselective synthetic routes for 1 and 2 in their optically active forms, the introduction of a chiral center by the enantioselective reduction of 15 was thought to be effective.

16.8 Enantioselective Synthesis of Diol (+)-19

Enantioselective reduction, one of the key reactions of this enantioselective synthesis, was carried out on the common intermediate diketone 15 in racemic total synthesis of 1 (Scheme 16.7). The Corey-Bakshi-Shibata (CBS) reduction was selected for the enantioselective reduction of the common intermediate 15 to incorporate the chiral center, which would control all the subsequent stereogenic centers. Treatment of 15 with borane dimethylsulfide complex in the presence of (S)-CBS catalyst proceeded smoothly to furnish chiral alcohol (+)-18 in 73% yield with 93% ee [21]. The absolute configuration of (+)-18 was determined by comparing the calculated and experimental circular dichroism (CD) spectra (Fig. 16.2). High regioselectivity was achieved in this reduction, similar to that observed in the synthesis of (±)-1 using NaBH₄. Subsequent incorporation of a methyl group in (+)-18 produced diastereoselectively diols (+)-19a (74% yield) and 19b (24% yield). The proposed mechanism of this diastereoselective synthesis is depicted in Scheme 16.8.

To determine the absolute configuration, (+)-18 was converted to benzoyl ester 18-OBz. The calculated spectrum of (R)-18-OBz was obtained using TD-DFT calculations at the TDDFT-CAM-B3LYP/6-311G + (d,p) level with the solvent model density for MeCN, implemented in the Gaussian 16 program package [22]. The calculated spectrum of (R)-18-OBz (blue) agreed well with the experimental spectrum (red).

Our proposed mechanism of the diastereoselective methylation is shown in Scheme 16.8. One equivalent of methyl magnesium bromide deprotonated the hydroxy group of (+)-18, forming a salt bridge of Mg²⁺ through chelation. The methyl anion then attacked from the less-hindered side of the carbonyl group to afford (+)-19a with the desired stereochemistry.
Scheme 16.7  Enantioselective synthesis of diol (+)-19

Fig. 16.2  Comparison of calculated CD spectrum of (R)-18-OBz (blue) to experimental spectrum of synthetic 18-OBz (red)

Scheme 16.8  Proposed mechanism of the diastereoselective methylation of (+)-18
16.9 Synthesis of Quinone Hemiacetal (−)-21

The optically active (+)-19a was treated with lithium-naphthalene system to remove benzyl protection, affording diol (+)-20a in 94% yield (Scheme 16.9). Next, Swern oxidation of (+)-20a furnished enone (−)-5 in 89% yield. Phenolic oxidative cyclization of (−)-5 using PIDA produced tricyclic quinone hemiacetals (−)-21 in 62% yield and (−)-22 in 14% yield.

16.10 Completion of Enantioselective Total Synthesis of (−)-Cochlearol B (1)

Optically active tricyclic (−)-21 was subjected to intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition to afford pentacyclic (−)-23 bearing a four-membered ring in its framework in 74% yield (Scheme 16.10). Then, Luche reduction of quinone hemiacetal (−)-23 produced hydroquinone (+)-3 in 84% yield. Pivaloyl protection of (+)-3, followed by dimethylaminomethylation with Bredereck’s regent afforded (−)-27 in 88% yield over two steps. Treatment of (−)-27 with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride and subsequently with triethylsilane in the presence of a Pd (0) catalyst produced α,β-unsaturated aldehyde (−)-29 in 84% yield from (−)-27. Finally, treatment of (−)-29 with potassium carbonate in methanol furnished (−)-cochlearol B (1) in 94% yield.
16.11 Retrosynthetic Analysis of (+)-Ganocin A (2)

Having accomplished the total synthesis of (−)-cochlearol B (1), we aimed for the enantioselective total synthesis of ganocin A (2). Retrosynthetic analysis of the optically active form of 2, which is based on the synthetic strategy of (−)-1, is shown in Scheme 16.11. To introduce the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde unit, the same sequence as that in the synthesis of 1 was adopted. Compounds 1 and 2 are structurally different in that 1 bears a cyclobutane ring, while 2 bears a tetrahydrofuran ring. To construct the pentacyclic framework of 30, we envisioned the acid-mediated cascade cyclization of 21, which efficiently afforded the cyclopentane ring and tetrahydrofuran ring in a single step (route 1). Additionally, we expected that after the bromohydration of 21, sequential radical cyclization, -reduction, and -benzylic oxidation would furnish pentacyclic skeleton (route 2). Compound 21 is an optically active common synthetic intermediate in the synthesis of (−)-1.
We commenced the synthesis of (+)-2 from (−)-21 which is also an optically active intermediate in the synthesis of (−)-1. First, we proceeded to construct the pentacyclic skeleton. The acid-mediated cascade cyclization depicted in Scheme 16.11 was investigated as route 1 (Table 16.2). If this cascade cyclization could be realized, cyclopentane ring, tetrahydrofuran ring, and four stereogenic centers would be formed simultaneously. Treatment of (−)-21 with Fe$_2$(SO$_4$)$_3$ as the Lewis acid produced unknown compounds (entry 1) [23]. Thus, lanthanoid triflates that could be used in water were examined [24]. Contrary to expectations, spiro-compound 33, which was generated by the Michael addition of the hydroxy group formed by the ring opening of the cyclic hemiacetal of (−)-21, was afforded (entries 2 and 3). Moreover, when (−)-21 was treated with 6 M HCl aq., 33 was produced in 90% yield (entry 4). Based on the above results, we concluded that route 1 was difficult to complete.
Table 16.2  Attempted acid-mediated cascade cyclization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Solvents</th>
<th>Temp</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Fe$_2$(SO$_4$)$_3$</td>
<td>Dioxane/H$_2$O = 1/1</td>
<td>rt to 70 °C</td>
<td>3 h</td>
<td>Unknown compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Yb(OTf)$_3$</td>
<td>Dioxane/H$_2$O = 1/1</td>
<td>rt to 70 °C</td>
<td>5 h</td>
<td>33 (65%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sc(OTf)$_3$</td>
<td>Dioxane/H$_2$O = 1/1</td>
<td>rt to 70 °C</td>
<td>5 h</td>
<td>33 (52%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6 M HCl aq</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>0 °C</td>
<td>30 min</td>
<td>33 (90%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.13  Intramolecular Radical Cyclization and Benzylic Oxidative Cyclization

The key steps in route 2 are the intramolecular radical cyclization and benzylic oxidative cyclization. To obtain the precursor for the key steps, tricyclic (−)-21 was subjected to bromohydration using N-bromosuccinimide to produce bromohydrin (−)-32 in 93% yield [25] (Scheme 16.12). To our delight, the next intramolecular radical cyclization using tributyltinhydride and AIBN proceeded smoothly to produce pentacyclic compound (−)-34 in 63% yield [26], in a one pot manner via the formation of a cyclopentane ring, reduction of quinone hemiacetal, and subsequent cyclic hemiacetal formation. Compound (−)-35 was obtained in 95% yield upon pivaloyl protection of (−)-34, and intramolecular benzylic oxidative cyclization of (−)-35 upon treatment with ceric ammonium nitrate (CAN) successfully furnished pentacyclic compound (+)-36 in 92% yield [27].

16.14  Completion of the Enantioselective Total Synthesis of (+)-Ganocin A (2)

With pentacyclic (+)-36 in hand, we finally aimed to incorporate the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde moiety (Scheme 16.13). Following the synthesis of 1, (+)-36 was treated with Bredereck’s reagent, affording enamnone (+)-37 in 93% yield. (+)-37 was converted to triflate (+)-38 in 95% yield, with the formation of the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde moiety using triflic anhydride. Subsequent reduction of triflate (+)-38 using triethylsilane in the presence of a Pd (0) catalyst furnished (−)-39 in 98% yield. Finally, methanolysis of (−)-39 furnished (+)-ganocin A (2) in 99% yield. Here, the enantioselective total synthesis of (+)-2 was accomplished via the longest linear sequence of 17 steps in 9% overall yield.
Scheme 16.12  Intramolecular radical cyclization and benzylic oxidative cyclization

Scheme 16.13  Completion of the enantioselective total synthesis of (+)-ganocin A (2)

16.15  Determination of the Absolute Configuration of (+)-Ganocin A (2)

The absolute configuration of synthetic (+)-ganocin A (2) was determined by comparing the calculated and experimental circular dichroism (CD) spectra (Fig. 16.3). The calculated spectrum of (4aS,5S,7aR,12bR)-2 was obtained using TD-DFT calculations at the TDDFT-B3LYP/6-31G(d,p) level with the solvent model density for MeCN, implemented in the Gaussian 16 program package [22]. The calculated spectrum of (4aS,5S,7aR,12bR)-2 (blue) agreed well with the experimental spectrum (red).
Fig. 16.3  Comparison of calculated CD spectrum of (4aS,5S,7aR,12bR)-2 (blue) to experimental spectrum of synthetic (+)-ganocin A (2) (red)

16.16 Conclusion

The first total synthesis of (±)-cochlearol B (1) and the catalytic enantioselective total syntheses of (−)-cochlearol B (1) and (+)-ganocin A (2) were achieved. This is the first study to report the synthesis of the (−)-enantiomer of 1 which has been reported to show potent inhibitory activity against p-Smads. This is also the first study to report the enantioselective total synthesis of (+)-2.

These syntheses were accomplished through the NHK reaction, phenolic oxidative cyclization, enantioselective CBS reduction, intramolecular [2+2] photocycloaddition, intramolecular radical cyclization, oxidative benzylic cyclization, and Luche reduction. These total syntheses are expected to lead to new developments in the field of medicinal chemistry.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 17
Construction of Quinoline N-Oxides and Synthesis of Aurachins A and B: Discovery, Application, and Mechanistic Insight

Satoshi Yokoshima

Abstract A method to synthesize 3-hydroxyquinoline N-oxides from ketones having a 2-nitrophenyl group at the α-position relative to the carbonyl group was developed. The substrates were easily prepared via a S_NAr reaction or a Sonogashira coupling, and treatment with sodium tert-butoxide in dimethyl sulfoxide produced the corresponding quinoline N-oxides. The method was successfully applied to the total synthesis of aurachins A and B. On the basis of the quinoline N-oxide synthesis, related reactions of α-(2-nitrophenyl)ketones, including nitrone formation and photoinduced rearrangement, were also investigated. These investigations provided clues about the reaction mechanism, and the following mechanism for the quinoline N-oxide synthesis is proposed: Deprotonation of the α-position of α-(2-nitrophenyl)ketone with tert-butoxide generates an enolate, which reacts with a nitro group via single-electron transfer to form an α-hydroxyketone having a nitroso group. An intramolecular alkoxide-mediated hydride shift reduces the nitroso group, and condensation of the resultant hydroxylamine and diketone moieties produces a 3-hydroxyquinoline N-oxide.

Keywords Enolate · Ketone · Nitro group · Nitroso group · Photoirradiation

17.1 Discovery of the Quinoline N-Oxide Synthesis

We investigated a reaction of a compound that had ketone and 2-nitrobenzenesulfonamide (nosyl amide) moieties (Scheme 17.1). Upon treatment of compound 1 with potassium carbonate in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) at 90 °C, Smiles rearrangement occurred. Thus, formation of enolate 2 under basic conditions,
followed by the enolate attacking the electron-deficient benzene ring of the sulfonamide, led to Meisenheimer complex 3, which collapsed into ketone 4, which had a nitrophenyl group. Under these conditions, the sulfonamide was converted into an amine, which was reacted with the ketone, and the resultant enamine 5 was obtained as a product. Reduction of the nitro group of 5 with zinc in aqueous acetic acid produced tryptamine 6, an indole having a 2-aminoethyl group at the 3-position of the indole moiety. This two-step process produces tryptamines from ketones having a nosyl amide moiety, and we speculated that this process might be useful for the synthesis of indole alkaloids.

The shortcoming of the process, at that time, was the low yield of the first step. To improve the yield, we investigated various basic conditions. When sodium tert-butoxide in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) was used at room temperature, the starting material was smoothly consumed but the desired enamine 5 was not obtained. Instead, another compound (compound A) was obtained; analysis of this compound by electrospray ionization mass spectrometry (ESI–MS) showed that its molecular weight was the same as that of enamine 5 (m/z 337). Thus, under the conditions using sodium tert-butoxide, the Smiles rearrangement occurred to form aminoketone 4, which underwent a dehydrative transformation. IR spectroscopic analysis of compound A confirmed the presence of functional groups. The resultant IR spectrum unexpectedly showed the absence of peaks for both carbonyl and nitro groups.

We considered likely reactions after the Smiles rearrangement under these conditions to elucidate the structure of compound A. Deprotonation of the ketone by tert-butoxide would form enolate 7 (Scheme 17.2). Because the nitro group had to disappear, the enolate likely reacted with the nitro group as in an aldol condensation, during which water is eliminated, to form a C–N double bond. Enolization of the resultant ketone 8 would generate an aromatic compound. The structure that would be obtained is a 3-hydroxyquinoline N-oxide, which can explain the results of the MS and IR analyses showing m/z 337 and a lack of nitro and carbonyl groups, respectively. The structure, however, was so unfamiliar to us that we did not trust...
our assumptions. To determine whether related molecules were known, we searched a database (SciFinder). As a result, we found a natural product: aurachin B [1].

The $^1$H-NMR data reported for aurachin B in the literature are similar to those of our compound [2]. The chemical shift of the proton at the 8-position of the quinoline core in aurachin B was reported to be 8.75 ppm, whereas the corresponding peak in the $^1$H-NMR spectrum of our compound was observed at 8.76 ppm. We speculate that these peaks were substantially shifted downfield because of the influence of the $N$-oxide. After obtaining additional spectroscopic data, including 2D-NMR spectra, we concluded that compound A was a quinoline $N$-oxide.

Although intramolecular reactions of a nitro group with a carbanion have been reported to form quinoline $N$-oxides [3–9], reports on reactions of ketones that have a 2-nitrophenyl group are limited. Zaki and Iskander disclosed a reaction of ketoester 9 with sodium ethoxide to produce substituted naphthalene 10 in 1943 (Scheme 17.3) [10]. Loudon and Tennant pointed out in 1964 that the structure of the product should be a quinoline $N$-oxide [11].
17.2 Application of the Quinoline N-Oxide Synthesis and Total Synthesis of Aurachins a and B

Ketones having a 2-nitrophenyl group were easily prepared (Scheme 17.4). A $S_N$Ar reaction of 2-fluoronitrobenzene (11) with $\beta$-ketoesters and subsequent dealkoxy-carbonylation produced ketones 12a [12, 13]. Alternatively, 2-alkynylnitrobenzenes 14, which were synthesized via Sonogashira coupling, could be converted into the requisite ketones 12b via addition of pyrrolidine onto the alkyne moiety, followed by acidic hydrolysis of the resultant enamines 15 [14]. Alkylation of ketones 12 with alkyl halides under basic conditions occurred selectively at the benzylic position (Scheme 17.5). Treatment of the resultant compounds 16 with sodium tert-butoxide in DMSO produced quinoline N-oxides 17 in moderate to good yields. Primary or secondary alkyl groups were introduced onto the 2- or 4-position of the quinoline N-oxides. A methoxy or nitro group on the benzene ring was tolerated in this transformation. Alkylation with farnesyl bromide, followed by treatment with sodium tert-butoxide in DMSO, afforded aurachin B in good yield (Scheme 17.6) [15]. When the alkylation was performed using epoxy iodide 18 in the presence of sodium hydride in N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), the alkylation, the cyclization to form the quinoline N-oxide core, and cleavage of the epoxide proceeded sequentially to afford aurachin A in 38% yield.

17.3 Mechanistic Insight into the Quinoline N-Oxide Synthesis

Starting from unexpected observations, we developed a quinoline N-oxide synthesis and successfully applied it to the synthesis of aurachins A and B. We were next interested in the mechanism of the reaction. One attractive idea involved an electrocyclic reaction (Scheme 17.7a). Under basic conditions, enolate 19 and/or 19'...
would be formed via deprotonation; further deprotonation would generate dianion 20, which would undergo an electrocyclic reaction. Our observations, however, ruled out this possibility. Even when the reaction was performed with 0.5 equivalents of sodium tert-butoxide, the quinoline N-oxide formation occurred to afford the product in 49% yield, indicating that formation of the dianion was unlikely. In addition, the 2-nitrophenyl group could apparently not facilitate the second deprotonation because the appropriate conformations are disrupted by the steric repulsion of the nitro group with the substituent.

These considerations led us to speculate that the reaction might proceed via the formation of enolate 19', which would react with the nitro group to form a C–N bond
However, this idea has a serious problem. The benzylic position of the alkylated ketone (compound 16) is apparently highly acidic because of the carbonyl and 2-nitrophenyl groups. Indeed, the alkylation of ketone 12a occurred selectively at the benzylic position.

To confirm the acidity, we conducted deuteration experiments. Upon treatment of ketone 12a, which has no alkyl group at the benzylic position, with diisopropylamine in methanol-\(d_4\), deuteration selectively occurred at the benzylic position and was completed within 15 min. By contrast, deuteration of ketone 16a, which has an alkyl group at the benzylic position, under the same conditions proceeded much more slowly; only partial deuteration was observed even after 120 min. More notably, both \(\alpha\)-positions of the ketone were almost equally deuterated, clearly showing that the acidity of the benzylic position changes upon the introduction of an alkyl group at the benzylic position. This behavior can be rationalized as follows (Scheme 17.8).

In the absence of an alkyl group at the benzylic position, the ketone can adopt a conformation in which both the carbonyl and 2-nitrophenyl groups can activate the benzylic position. After the alkyl group is introduced at the benzylic position, the 2-nitrophenyl cannot adopt a conformation in which the 2-nitrophenyl group activates the benzylic position because of the steric repulsion between the alkyl and nitro
groups. In the favorable conformation, the benzene ring and the C–H bond at the benzylic position are coplanar [16–18].

These results lead to the conclusion that deprotonation of the ketone occurs equally at both α-positions of the ketone. Deprotonation at the benzylic position might be a non-productive pathway, and deprotonation at the other α-position is followed by a reaction with the nitro group to form a C–N bond.

### 17.4 Nitrone Formation

The conclusion in Sect. 17.3 leads to a question: Does the reaction between the enolate and the nitro group occur without the proton at the benzylic position? The product of such a reaction was assumed to be a nitrone. We speculated that the reaction might support the mechanism of the quinoline N-oxide synthesis and therefore attempted it [19].

The requisite substrate was prepared as shown in Scheme 17.9. Sequential alkylations of 2-nitrophenylacetate 22 gave product 23, which had a quaternary carbon. A reduction–oxidation sequence afforded aldehyde 24, and an aldol reaction with tert-butyl propionate, followed by oxidation with Dess–Martin periodinane, gave ketoester 26. Cleavage of the tert-butyl group with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) and subsequent decarboxylation by heating in toluene produced the requisite ketone 27.
Unfortunately, treatment of ketone 27 with sodium tert-butoxide in DMSO did not produce the desired nitrone; however, a reaction with sodium hydroxide in diluted methanol (1.25 mM) produced nitrone 28 in 71% yield, accompanied by the formation of N-hydroxyindolinone 29 in 17% yield (Scheme 17.10). Interestingly, when the reaction was run at a higher concentration (12.5 mM), nitrone 28 was only obtained in 8% yield and N-hydroxyindolinone 29 was obtained in 65% yield instead.

### 17.5 Closer Consideration of the Reaction Mechanism

The results presented in Sect. 17.4 indicate that the enolate is capable of reacting with a nitro group. How does this reaction between the enolate and nitro group occur? There are two possible positions for the reaction of a nitro group with a nucleophile: N-attack or O-attack (Scheme 17.11). Although not fully conclusive, according to the reported results, O-attack, which occurs via single-electron transfer followed by coupling of the resultant radical and radical anion, is likely [20–22]. In our cases, the O-attack produces seven-membered intermediate 32, which is converted into α-hydroxyketone X with a nitroso group. For the further transformation of X, the nitroso aldol reaction, involving nucleophilic attack of the nitroso group by enolate 33 derived from the α-hydroxyketone under basic conditions, is a possible pathway. Subsequent elimination of a hydroxy group leads to the nitrone. However, deuterium experiments, in which α-hydroxyketone 34 was reacted under the same conditions for nitrone formation in methanol-d_4, showed that formation of the enolate occurred only partially. This result indicates that the aforementioned nitroso aldol reaction is not a major pathway for forming the nitrone. Another plausible mechanism involves a hydride shift from the alkoxide to the nitroso group, forming 1,2-diketone 35 having a hydroxylamine moiety, whose condensation with the carbonyl group produces the nitrone.

Although the α-hydroxyketone could not be isolated or detected as an intermediate, isolation of N-hydroxyindolinone 29 under the same conditions supported formation of the α-hydroxyketone. A plausible mechanism for the formation of N-hydroxyindolinone 29 via the α-hydroxyketone is shown in Scheme 17.12. Nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group by the nitrogen atom in the nitroso group, accompanied by C–C bond cleavage promoted by electron donation from the alkoxide anion, produces N-hydroxyindolinone 29. According to this mechanism, an aldehyde should be formed in the reaction mixture. When a 2-pyridylmethyl ketone (R’ = 2-pyridyl)
was used as a substrate, formation of the corresponding aldehyde 36 was detected. Using density functional theory (DFT) calculations, we successfully obtained the transition states for the N-hydroxyindolinone formation with appropriate activation barriers (+10.7 kcal/mol) [19].
17.6 Consideration of an Alternative Mechanism

We mentioned in Sect. 17.3 that deprotonation of the substrate at the benzylic position might be a nonproductive pathway. After investigating the nitrone formation, we realized that a mechanism starting from the deprotonation at the benzylic position could be drawn as shown in Scheme 17.13. Under this alternative mechanism, the reaction of enolate 19 with a nitro group gives α-hydroxyketone 38 having a nitroso group, which is attacked intramolecularly by an enolate to form a C–N bond. Subsequent elimination of a hydroxide ion and aromatization produce quinoline N-oxide 17.

To evaluate the feasibility of the alternative mechanism, we attempted a reaction of tert-butyl ketone 16b, which has only one α-proton at the benzylic position (Scheme 17.14) [23]. Photoirradiation of the tert-butyl ketone in methanol at −78 °C gave cyclic hydroxamate 44 in 83% yield. In general, photoirradiation of an o-alkynitrobenzene induces oxygen transfer via hydrogen abstraction by the excited nitro group to produce a nitroso compound having a hydroxy group at the benzylic position [24, 24–26]. When tert-butyl ketone 16b was used as a substrate,
α-hydroxyketone 38b having a nitroso group would be generated as an intermediate. Reaction of the α-hydroxyketone moiety with the nitroso group, like that of compound X, gave cyclic hydroxamate 44 via acyl transfer and hemiacetal formation. Upon treatment with sodium hydroxide in methanol, cyclic hydroxamate 44 was converted into benzoisoxazole 45.

Treatment of tert-butyl ketone 16b with sodium hydroxide in methanol afforded benzoisoxazole 45 in 47% yield. The reaction of o-pentynitrobenzene (46) did not give benzoisoxazole 45 at all, ruling out deacylation of tert-butyl ketone 16b to form o-pentynitrobenzene (46) as a reaction mechanism [27]. The reaction of enolate 19b with a nitro group in an O-attack manner would form α-hydroxyketone 38b. A subsequent sequence involving the acyl transfer, hemiacetal formation, and hydrolysis might produce benzoisoxazole 45.

Photoirradiation of ethyl ketone 16a also produced, via α-hydroxyketone 38a, cyclic hydroxamate 44a in a comparable yield (Scheme 17.15). The formation of cyclic hydroxamates occurred even at −78 °C under neutral conditions. When the

Scheme 17.14  Attempted reactions of an α-(2-nitrophenyl)ketone
enolate is reacted with a nitro group in an $O$-attack manner at the benzylic position under the conditions for the quinoline $N$-oxides synthesis, the hydroxamate 44a or benzoisoxazole 45 might form. However, in the quinoline $N$-oxide synthesis, these products were not detected. These considerations and observations ruled out the reaction pathway involving $O$-attack at the benzylic position in the quinoline $N$-oxide synthesis.

17.7 Conclusion

A method to synthesize 3-hydroxyquinoline $N$-oxides from ketones having a 2-nitrophenyl group at the $\alpha$-position of the carbonyl group was developed. The reaction was unexpectedly discovered and was successfully applied to the synthesis of various quinoline $N$-oxides, including aurachins A and B. On the basis of the quinoline $N$-oxide synthesis, related reactions of $\alpha$-(2-nitrophenyl)ketones, including nitrone formation and photoinduced rearrangement to afford cyclic hydroxamates, were also investigated. These investigations provided clues about the reaction mechanism, leading us to propose the following mechanism (Scheme 17.16). Deprotonation of the $\alpha$-position of $\alpha$-(2-nitrophenyl)ketone with tert-butoxide forms an enolate. Single-electron transfer from the enolate to the nitro group generates a radical and a radical anion, which are coupled to form a C–O bond. Subsequent cleavage of a N–O bond produces an $\alpha$-hydroxyketone having a nitroso group. An alkoxide-mediated hydride shift reduces the nitroso group, and condensation of the resultant hydroxylamine and diketone moieties, followed by tautomerization, produces a 3-hydroxyquinoline $N$-oxide.
Acknowledgements This work was supported by JSPS KAKENHI (JP17H01523) and by the Platform Project for Supporting Drug Discovery and Life Science Research (Basis for Supporting Innovative Drug Discovery and Life Science Research; BINDS) from the Japan Agency for Medical Research and Development (AMED) under Grant Number JP20am0101099 and JP22ama121044.

References


22. When a methyl ketone (R’ = methyl in Figure 17.11a) was used as a substrate, 52% of the starting material was recovered under the condition for the nitrone formation. This supported the mechanism via single-electron transfer as the resultant radical is an unfavorable primary radical.


Chapter 18
Total Synthesis of Avenaol

Chihiro Tsukano, Motohiro Yasui, and Yoshiji Takemoto

Abstract Avenaol is a terpene with a unique all-cis cyclopropane in which all bulky substituents are oriented in the same direction. It is categorized into a non-canonical strigolactone. We have synthesized alkylidencyclopropanes by Rh-catalyzed intramolecular cyclopropanation of allenes, followed by iridium-catalyzed diastereoselective double bond isomerization to construct all-cis cyclopropanes. Subsequently, distinction of the two hydroxymethyl groups of 1,3-diol by an intramolecular S_N1-type reaction, followed by cleavage of the tetrahydropyranyl ring by regioselective C–H oxidation, led to the desired stereochemistry at the C-ring lactone. Using these key steps, the first racemic total synthesis of avenaol was achieved, and the proposed relative configuration of avenaol was proved synthetically. Furthermore, we developed a stereoselective introduction of D-ring butenolide via chiral thiourea-quaternary ammonium salt-catalyzed dynamic kinetic optical resolution. Then, by applying this method to synthetic intermediates, (+)-avenaol was successfully synthesized. This chapter details the total synthesis of avenaol, including failed attempts.

Keywords Strigolactone · Cyclopropane · Isomerization · C–H oxidation · Thiourea · Quaternary ammonium

C. Tsukano (✉) · M. Yasui · Y. Takemoto
Graduate School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Kyoto University, Yoshida, Sakyoku, Kyoto 606-8501, Japan
e-mail: tsukano.chihiro.2w@kyoto-u.ac.jp

M. Yasui
e-mail: myasui@kit.ac.jp

Y. Takemoto
e-mail: takemoto@pharm.kyoto-u.ac.jp

C. Tsukano
Graduate School of Agriculture, Kyoto University, Kitashirakawa-Oiwakecho, Sakyoku, Kyoto 606-8502, Japan

M. Yasui
Graduate School of Science and Technology, Kyoto Institute of Technology, Masugasaki, Sakyoku, Kyoto 606-8585, Japan

© The Author(s) 2024
M. Nakada et al. (eds.), Modern Natural Product Synthesis,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-97-1619-7_18
18.1 Introduction

18.1.1 Structure and Properties of Avenaol

Strigolactones (SLs) are plant-produced terpenes that act as rhizosphere-signaling substances to induce mycelial branching in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and are responsible for the symbiotic relationship between plants and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi [1]. They also inhibit branching and are recognized as plant hormones. The basic skeleton of a SL is composed of a tricyclic lactone (ABC ring moiety) and a butenolide (D ring) with an acetal, which are connected via an enol ether, as represented by strigol and orobanchol (Fig. 18.1a). In 2014, avenaol (1), a SL with a novel structure that differs from the basic skeleton, was isolated from root secretions of *Avena strigosa* by Yoneyama et al. (Fig. 18.1b) [2]. The structural features of avenaol include (1) the AB-fused ring system is a bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone skeleton in which 3- and 6-membered rings are fused, (2) the B ring is a cyclopropane with all bulkier substituents oriented in the same direction (this structure is hereinafter labeled as all-cis cyclopropane), (3) the number of carbons is one more than other SLs with a typical parent skeleton, and (4) the enol ether structure connecting the C and D rings is common to other SLs. The relative stereochemistry has been determined by 2D NMR, including COSY and NOESY, and the absolute stereochemistry has been inferred from homology with related SLs. Avenaol shows seed germination-stimulating activity. Although seeds of *Orobanche minor* and *Striga hermonthica* did not germinate in a 10 nM solution, 49% germination was observed for seeds of *Pinguicula ramose*. We have conducted synthetic studies of avenaol to confirm its unique structure and its relative and absolute stereochemistry, to elucidate the structure–activity relationship using synthetic analogs, and to develop a new method for the construction of the all-cis cyclopropane ring.

18.1.2 Preliminary Investigations

The ABC ring skeleton of avenaol is completely different from that in other natural products, while the enol ether structure is common to other SLs. Therefore, the challenges for the synthesis of avenaol are (1) the construction of a bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone skeleton containing an all-cis cyclopropane (i.e., the AB ring skeleton) and (2) the control of stereochemistry at C8 of the C-ring moiety and C3 of the A-ring moiety [3–14]. Initially, cyclopropanation by the Corey–Chaykovsky reaction was attempted for construction of the AB ring skeleton [3]. Cyclohexenone 2 and sulfonium salt 3 were treated with various bases in several solvents, but the desired product with a bicyclic skeleton was not obtained (Scheme 18.1a) [15]. For the synthesis of the bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone skeleton, intramolecular cyclopropanation of diazo compounds had been reported to give a product with a cage-like structure. Thus, we attempted intramolecular cyclopropanation of diazo compounds
with trisubstituted alkenes. The reaction of cyclic alkene 5 with Rh$_2$(cap)$_4$ yielded
only a complex mixture and no bicyclic product (Scheme 18.1b), and the reaction
with Cu(tbs)$_2$ did not yield the desired product and only dimerized product 8 was
observed (Scheme 18.1b). Other non-cyclic alkenes 9 were also examined, but the
cyclopropanation did not proceed (Scheme 18.1c). Comparing these results with
previous reports by Corey et al., the positions of the substituents on the olefins
are different [4]. Thus, it was assumed that cyclopropanation of 5 and 9 did not
proceed because of steric repulsion between the substituent methyl group and the
metal carbenoid in the transition state, which would make the cyclopropanation
pathway unfavorable.

These initial investigations suggested that the construction of the
bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone skeleton by cyclopropanation of these alkenes was
not suitable for avenaol synthesis.

18.2 Racemic Total Synthesis of Avenaol

18.2.1 Construction of Alkylidenecyclopropane

Because of the difficulties encountered with cyclopropanation of trisubstituted
alkenes, other approaches were required to synthesize the bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone
skeleton with an all-cis structure. It was important to set appropriate synthetic inter-
mediates taking into consideration the risk for cleavage of the cyclopropanes by
introducing electron-withdrawing groups and the suppression of the formation of
cage-like structures [12, 16]. Therefore, we focused on an alkylidenecyclopropane as
a key intermediate to synthesize all-cis cyclopropanes. In a previous report, Sarpong et al. successfully constructed the bicyclo[3.1.0]hexanone skeleton by intramolecular cyclopropanation of an allene [17]. Charette et al. showed that the reactivities of metal carbenes in intermolecular cyclopropanation depend on the substituent on the carbene carbon [18]. According to these reports, we expected to synthesize alkylidene cyclopropanes by an intramolecular cyclopropanation of diazo compounds with allenes, following a diastereoselective conversion to all-cis cyclopropanes.

The retrosynthetic analysis is shown in Scheme 18.2. Avenaol (1) would be constructed by coupling bromobutenolide 11a, which is the D-ring moiety, with enol 12, as in other SL syntheses [19–35]. Enol 12 would be synthesized from lactone 13 via the stereoselective introduction of a hydroxy group on C3. Lactone 13 would be accessed by constructing the C ring and introducing two carbon units into 14. The all-cis cyclopropane of 14 would be constructed from alkylidene cyclopropane 15. Although various approaches might be possible to convert alkylidene cyclopropanes to the all-cis structure, we initially planned to use hydrogenation because it is the simplest method. As described above, alkylidene cyclopropanes 15 would be synthesized by intramolecular cyclopropanation of diazoketone 16 with dimethyl groups and oxygen functionality. Diazoketone 16 would be accessed from a known aldehyde 17, which could be prepared in one step from inexpensive starting materials.
To investigate intramolecular cyclopropanation, diazoketone derivatives 16a–e with a methyl group, a nitrile, and an ester as a substituent were synthesized (Scheme 18.3). The known aldehyde 17 was treated with tetrahydropropyranyl (THP)-protected propargylic alcohol and benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide to afford the secondary alcohol 18a [36, 37]. This transformation could be replaced with asymmetric nucleophilic addition. Following Carreira’s procedure, treatment of 17 with p-methoxybenzyl (PMB)-protected propargylic alcohol in the presence of Zn(OTf)2 and (−)-methyleneephedrine as a ligand successfully gave alcohol 18b [38]. Racemic 18a was used for further investigation because of ease and cost of the synthesis. The secondary hydroxy group of the resulting 18a was converted to the propargylic alcohol 19 by methylation and acidic treatment to remove the THP group. Hydroalumination of 19 followed by treatment with iodine gave allene 20 [39]. After the formation of a benzyl ether from 20, selective hydroboration of a terminal olefin, followed by oxidation to carboxylic acid 21a by reaction with either 9-azanoradamantane N-oxyl (nor-AZADO) or sulfur trioxide pyridine complex followed by NaClO2 [40]. Similarly, methoxymethyl (MOM) ether 21b and triisopropylsilyl (TIPS) ether 21c were synthesized. Diazo ketone 16a was obtained in low yield via conversion of 21a to acid chloride with Ghosez reagent, followed by treatment with freshly prepared diazoethane and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP). Carboxylic acid 21a was converted to a β-ketoester using Masamune’s procedure and then to β-keto-α-diazo ester 16b by diazotransfer with 4-acetamidobenzenesulfonyl azide (ABSA) [41, 42]. After esterification of 21a–c via acid anhydrides and conversion to β-ketonitriles, β-keto-α-diazonitriles 16c–e were synthesized by diazotransfer using (imid)SO2N3 [43].

Next, the rhodium- and copper-catalyzed intramolecular cyclopropanation of allenes 16a–e was investigated to synthesize alkylidenecyclopropanes 15a–e (Table 18.1). Initially, methyl diazoketone 16a was used because 15a would not require subsequent functional group transformation, which would reduce the number of synthetic steps. However, treatment of 16a with a catalytic amount of Rh2(OAc)4 in dichloromethane gave no desired product and carboxylic acid 21a in 26% yield.
Scheme 18.3  Synthesis of diazo compounds bearing an allenyl group

(entry 1). This result could be attributed to the instability of rhodium carbenes arising from 16a. Thus, β-keto-α-diazo ester 16b was used because a carbenoid derived from 16b was expected to be a more stable but still reactive. The reaction of 16b with Rh2(OAc)4 was unsuccessful (entry 2). In the case of Cu(CH3CN)4PF6, the reaction gave a complex mixture (entry 3). On the other hand, when the substrate was changed to β-keto-α-diazonitrile 16c, the reaction smoothly proceeded to give the desired alkylidenecyclopropane 15c in 85% yield as a single diastereomer with a double bond in the E configuration (entry 4). The relative stereochemistry of 15c was determined by NOE correlation. Like Charette et al., we speculated that the high electrophilicity of the cyanorhodium carbene contributed to the acceleration of this reaction \[18\]. The cyclopropanation of 16d bearing MOM ether gave 15d in 96% yield, and the cyclopropanation of 16e bearing TIPS ether gave 15e in 99% yield (entries 5 and 6).

Only (E)-olefins were obtained presumably because steric repulsion between the benzyl (or methoxymethyl or silyl) ether of the allene substituent and the ligand coordinating to the rhodium carbene favored the transition state TS-A over TS-B. Consequently, cyclopropanation would proceed from the opposite side of the benzyl ether (Scheme 18.4).
## Table 18.1 Intramolecular cyclopropanation of allenes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>R&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>R&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Catalyst</th>
<th>Yield</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Rh&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;(OAc)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ND (21a 26%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>CO&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;Et</td>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Rh&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;(OAc)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ND (21a 35%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CO&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;Et</td>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Cu(CH&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;CN)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;Pf&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CN</td>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Rh&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;(OAc)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>15c (85%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>CN</td>
<td>MOM</td>
<td>Rh&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;(OAc)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>15d (96%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>CN</td>
<td>TIPS</td>
<td>Rh&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;(OAc)&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>15e (99%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram]

**Scheme 18.4** Explanation for the diastereoselectivity

The cyano group of the resulting alkylidene cyclopropane 15d was converted to a methyl group. A ketone of 15d was diastereoselectively reduced to a secondary alcohol by treatment with sodium borohydride in the presence of cerium chloride, and then the alcohol was converted to PMB ether 22a (Scheme 18.5). The reason for the high diastereoselectivity in the first step is that the reductant approached from the opposite side of the face of the alkylidene cyclopropane. The cyano group of 22a was converted to an aldehyde by diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL-H) reduction followed by treatment with sodium borohydride to give primary alcohol 23a. The Appel reaction of 23a gave an alkyl iodide which was treated with sodium borohydride at 80 °C in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) to give a reduced product 24a.
Scheme 18.5 Reduction of the cyano group to a methyl group

[44]. Compound 24b was also synthesized from alkylidenecyclopropane 15e bearing a TIPS group by a similar route.

18.2.2 Initial Attempt to Construct an All-Cis Cyclopropane Using Hydrogenation and Radical Cyclization

Next, we investigated the construction of an all-cis cyclopropane from 24. Shibatomi and Iwasa et al. reported that a hydrogen source approached from the convex side of the oxabicyclo[3.1.0]hexanone skeleton in hydrogenation of alkylidenecyclopropanes [8]. Thus, we used these conditions to investigate whether hydrogenation of 24 would proceed in the same manner for the structurally similar bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanone skeleton (Scheme 18.6).

Unfortunately, hydrogenation of 24b in methanol yielded all-cis cyclopropane 14a and trans-cyclopropane 7-epi-14a as a 1:2 diastereomeric mixture (Scheme 18.7). After tetrapropylammonium perruthenate (TPAP) oxidation of this mixture, NOE correlations and coupling constants of the resulting ketone revealed that 7-epi-25 was the major product. The substrate used by Shibatomi and Iwasa et al. for the

Scheme 18.6 Working hypothesis for hydrogenation
hydrogenation had no substituent in the angular position \([8]\). Thus, it was assumed that the methyl group in the angular position in \(24b\) may have caused steric hindrance, which avoided the approach from the convex side.

We also attempted radical reactions for the construction of all-\(cis\) cyclopropanes. When bromoacetal \(27\), which was derived from \(24\), is treated with a radical initiator and reductant, a 5-\(exo\)-trig radical cyclization reaction might occur [45]. If both the cyclization and reduction proceed from the convex side of the fused ring system, the stereochemistry on the C ring and the cyclopropane could be controlled in one step (Scheme 18.8).

After removal of the TIPS group of \(24b\), the resulting primary alcohol \(24c\) was treated with ethyl vinyl ether and \(N\)-bromosuccinimide (NBS) to give bromoacetal \(27\) (Scheme 18.9). The obtained \(27\) was reacted with triethylborane as a radical initiator and tributyltin hydride as a reductant at \(-78\) °C under an oxygen atmosphere in toluene. This gave the cyclized product \(26\) in 63% yield as a diastereomeric mixture. The diastereomeric ratio was determined after derivatization to lactones \(28\) and 7-\(epi\)-\(28\) via removal of the PMB group, hydrolysis of acetal, and TPAP

![Scheme 18.7 Hydrogenation of alkylidenecyclopropane](image)

![Scheme 18.8 Retrosynthesis for the radical cyclization](image)
oxidation. Unfortunately, the undesired trans-cyclopropanes 7-epi-28 were obtained as major products in diastereomeric mixtures on C8, along with small amount of all-cis cyclopropanes 28 (28:7-epi-28 = 1:11). The relative stereochemistry of the C7 of 7-epi-28 was determined from the coupling constant between C6 and C7. The coupling constant for a trans-cyclopropane was less than 6 Hz and different from the coupling constant (9.0 Hz) for avenaol (1) bearing all-cis cyclopropane.

The diastereoselectivity of this reaction could be rationalized as follows. The intramolecular addition of the alkyl radical to the olefin could proceed via conformation A or B (Scheme 18.10). Because the p-methoxybenzyl group (PMBO) on the cyclohexane ring of A and B was in an equatorial position, there was no steric hindrance around the double bond. Consequently, the addition proceeded through either A or B, and the selectivity on C8 was not expressed (diastereomeric ratio (dr) of 1.4:1 for C8). After formation of the five-membered ring, the reaction with the hydrogen source (M-H) would proceed via conformations C and D. Because these radicals in intermediates C and D have sp^3 properties compared with olefins in A and B, steric repulsion would occur with the PMBO group in the equatorial position. Therefore, the reaction via D would be more favorable than the reaction via C.

**18.2.3 First-Generation Approach to All-Cis Cyclopropane Using Palladium-Catalyzed Reduction of Allyl Carbonates**

Although hydrogenation and radical cyclization preferentially yielded undesired products with a trans-substituted cyclopropane, these results suggested that steric repulsion with substituents on the cyclohexane ring affected the selectivity. Therefore, we focused on the palladium-catalyzed reduction of allyl carbonates for
constructing all-\( cis \) cyclopropane as follows \cite{46,47}. Lactone 13 would be synthesized by the diastereoselective 1,4-reduction of butenolide 29, which would be prepared from all-\( cis \) vinylcyclopropane 31 via dihydroxylation, esterification, and the intramolecular Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction of phosphonate ester 30 (Scheme 18.11). It was envisioned that the all-\( cis \) cyclopropane structure of 31 would be constructed by diastereoselective reduction of allyl carbonate ester 24d because the bulky palladium center of a π-allyl palladium complex generated from 24d would be positioned at the outside of the molecule as shown in Scheme 18.11.

After conversion of allyl alcohol 24c to allyl carbonate 24d, construction of all-\( cis \) cyclopropanes was examined (Scheme 18.12). As expected, treatment of 24d with Pd(dba)\(_2\), PBu\(_3\), formic acid, and triethylamine in tetrahydrofuran (THF) under reflux gave all-\( cis \) cyclopropane 31 in 95% yield in a diastereoselective manner (9.5:1). Having obtained the all-\( cis \) cyclopropane with high diastereoselectivity, we then attempted to construct the C-ring moiety. Dihydroxylation of alkene 31 with OsO\(_4\) was followed by condensation of the resulting diol 32 with diethyl carboxymethylphosphonate in a primary alcohol-selective manner. The secondary hydroxy group of the resulting phosphonate ester was converted to ketone 30 by
Scheme 18.11  Retrosynthesis for the Pd-catalyzed reduction of allyl carbonates

TPAP oxidation, followed by treatment with potassium tert-butoxide in THF to afford butenolide 29a in 67% yield [74% based on recovered starting material (brsm)] via an intramolecular Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction. The PMB group was removed by treatment with 2,3-dichloro-5,6-dicyano-p-benzoquinone (DDQ) to give the secondary alcohol 29b.

The 1,4-reduction of butenolides 29a and 29b was then examined. When 29b was treated with Crabtree’s catalyst in dichloromethane under a hydrogen atmosphere (6 atm), the reaction did not proceed (Table 18.2, entry 1). When magnesium metal was used as a single-electron reductant, a complex mixture was obtained (entry 2). On the other hand, when SmI2 was used, trans-cyclopropane 7-epi-29b was obtained (entry 3) [48]. The hydride reductant was then investigated and the reaction with

Scheme 18.12  Pd-catalyzed reduction of allyl carbonate and construction of the C ring
Stryker’s reagent did not proceed at all when the reaction was heated to reflux in benzene (entry 4) [49]. These results suggested that one-electron reductants and Cu–H are not effective for this transformation. On the other hand, the reaction with NaBH$_4$ in the presence of CoCl$_2$ gave the desired lactone 13b as a diastereomeric mixture, which was difficult to separate (entry 5) [50]. In the case of 29a with a PMB group, the reaction using Cu–H generated in situ did not proceed (entry 6). Next, conditions established by Lipshutz et al. were examined and expected to result a higher diastereoselectivity using the asymmetric ligand, but no selectivity was observed (entry 7) [51]. The reaction with NaBH$_4$, which generated Co–H, gave the desired product in 83% yield, but no selectivity was observed (entry 8) [50].

Unfortunately, we could not identify conditions for diastereoselective 1,4-reduction of the butenolide. Additionally, it was difficult to separate the diastereomeric mixture of the reduced products 13a and 13b. Therefore, we reconsidered the synthetic route to establish a more efficient route.

### Table 18.2 1,4-Reduction of butenolides 29a and 29b

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Yield (dr for C8)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>[Ir(cod)pyr(Cy$_3$P)]PF$_6$ (39 mol%) H$_2$ (6 atm), CH$_2$Cl$_2$, rt</td>
<td>N.R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Mg (excess), MeOH, rt</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>SmI$_2$ (1.5 equiv), MeOH (1 drop) THF-DMA (8:1), rt</td>
<td>7-epi-29b 33%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>[(PPh$_3$)CuH]$_6$, benzene, reflux</td>
<td>N.R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>NaBH$_4$, CoCl$_2$, MeOH, $-40$ °C to $-20$ °C</td>
<td>13b 79%, dr 1:1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>PMB</td>
<td>NaBH$_4$, CuCl, MeOH, $-40$ °C to $-20$ °C</td>
<td>N.R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PMB</td>
<td>(R)-DTBM-SENGPHOS (20 mol%) [(P$_3$P)CuH]$_6$ (20 mol%), PMHS rBuOH, THF, 0 °C to 40 °C</td>
<td>13a 10%, dr 1:1.2 (88% recovered)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>PMB</td>
<td>NaBH$_4$, CoCl$_2$, MeOH, $-40$ °C to $-20$ °C</td>
<td>13a 83%, dr 1:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.2.4 Second-Generation Approach to All-Cis Cyclopropane Using Iridium-Catalyzed Double Bond Isomerization

Although it was problematic to convert butenolides 29a and 29b synthesized from all-cis cyclopropane 31, the all-cis structure was selectively constructed by the palladium-catalyzed reduction of allyl carbonate esters 24d. These results suggested that the all-cis structure could be selectively constructed via a formation of the metal complex intermediate by approaching the bulky metal catalyst from the convex face of the bicyclic ring system. Thus, we focused on the iridium-catalyzed double bond isomerization in which the oxygen-functional group works as a directing group [52, 53]. In other words, the all-cis cyclopropane 35 could be constructed by the iridium-catalyzed double bond isomerization of alkylidenecyclopropane 24c through an intermediate in which a bulky iridium hydride approaches from the convex face of the molecule to form the complex. To avoid going through the butenolide structure (i.e., 29a and 29b) enroute to lactone 13, 1,3-diol 34 was set as an intermediate. This intermediate could be converted to nitrile 33 by distinguishing the reactivities of the two hydroxy groups (Scheme 18.13). Then, 1,3-diol 34 could be synthesized by introduction of a hydroxymethyl group at the α-position of aldehyde in 35.

The iridium-catalyzed double bond isomerization using a directing group was investigated using 22a, 23a, 23b, 24b, and 24c. The isomerization did not proceed when nitrile 22a was treated under a hydrogen atmosphere in the presence of Crabtree’s catalyst ([Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]PF6) (Scheme 18.14a). These results suggested that the cyano group contributed to inactivation rather than working as a directing group. On the other hand, when alcohol 23a was treated under the same conditions, the isomerization proceeded smoothly to give enol ether 37a as a single diastereomer. Similarly, the reaction of 23b having a TIPS group gave the all-cis cyclopropane 37b in 92% yield as a single diastereomer. However, further derivatization of 37a and 37b was difficult because side reactions, including ring-opening

![Scheme 18.13 Retrosynthesis for the iridium-catalyzed double bond isomerization](image-url)
of the cyclopropane, occurred rather than deoxygenation. Therefore, we examined the double bond isomerization of a deoxygenated substrate 24b. The reaction under a hydrogen atmosphere in the presence of Crabtree’s catalyst gave 38d in low yield (Scheme 18.14b). To improve the reactivity of the iridium catalyst, [Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]BARF having a non-coordinating counter anion (tetrakis[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]borate [BARF]) was used. Although the starting material was completely consumed, only the undesired trans-substituted cyclopropanes 38d’ and 38d” were obtained. On the other hand, the reaction of allyl alcohol 24c with Crabtree’s catalyst gave the desired all-cis cyclopropane as a major product, albeit with low selectivity (2.7:1). The diastereoselectivity improved to 10:1 when using [Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]BARF (Scheme 18.14c).

The selectivity of the double bond isomerization can be rationalized as follows. When alcohols 23a and 23b are used as substrates, the hydroxymethyl group coordinated to the iridium center (i.e., intermediate E) and the C–H bond formed from only one side, which gave the all-cis cyclopropane (Scheme 18.15a). In the case of 24b, which had a methyl group substituent instead of a hydroxymethyl group, we speculated that double bond isomerization using [Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]PF6 (Crabtree’s catalyst) proceeded without coordination to iridium center. This was primarily because of the lower coordinating abilities of the oxygen-functional groups, such as TIPS and PMB ether, compared with the hydroxy group. This resulted in production of the isomerized product 38d in low yield with moderate diastereoselectivity. On the other hand, the trans-cyclopropane 38d’ could be obtained when [Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]BARF, which was susceptible to coordination, was used. The PMB ether, which was less sterically hindered than the TIPS ether, served as a coordinating group to give the trans isomer through intermediate F (Scheme 18.15b). The high ratio of the reduced product 38d” was attributed to the ease of hydrogenating the resulting disubstituted olefin of trans-substituted cyclopropane because of its lower steric hindrance. When allyl alcohol 24c was used as a substrate, the metal center of [Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy3)]BARF formed a strong coordination bond with the hydroxy group instead of the PMB ether, and then steric repulsion with the ligand resulted in formation of all-cis cyclopropane 35 through intermediate I (Scheme 18.15c).

1 Deoxygenation of all-cis cyclopropane 37b with an enol ether moiety was attempted (see below). Ozonolysis was followed by the Wittig reaction to give α,β-unsaturated ester N1. Iodination of N1 resulted in the cleavage of cyclopropane instead of the formation of an alkyl iodide. This result indicated that a leaving group at the α-position in the cyclopropane would cause ring-opening of cyclopropane. Various attempts to derivatize N1 were also unsuccessful. Therefore, we decided to derivatize deoxygenated all-cis cyclopropanes 35.
We also speculated that when Crabtree’s catalyst, which had weaker coordination ability than \([\text{Ir}(\text{cod})(\text{pyr})(\text{PCy}_3)]\text{BArF}\), was used, the isomerization proceeded without coordination and led to low \textit{cis}-selectivity.

Next, aldehyde 35 was converted to 1,3-diol 34 through aldol reaction with formaldehyde, 1,2-reduction of the resulting \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated aldehyde, and hydroboration–oxidation of an exo-methylene (Scheme 18.16). Diol 34 was then treated with DDQ to try to differentiate one hydroxy group from the other to obtain \(p\)-methoxybenzylidene acetal 39. Unfortunately, 39 was not obtained at all. Instead, tetrahydropyran 40a was obtained, albeit in low yield.

Despite the unexpected formation of the ether ring, we were able to distinguish one hydroxymethyl group of 1,3-diol 34 selectively albeit low yield. Thus, we investigated an optimization of this reaction (Table 18.3). Initially, considering the possibility that DDQ acted as an oxidant in the reaction, several copper catalysts were examined. The reaction did not proceed at all in the case of Cu(OAc)$_2$, while the reaction with Cu(OTf)$_2$ yielded a trace amount of the cyclized product 40b (entries 1 and 2). In sharp contrast, use of Cu(ClO$_4$)$_2$, which has a high Lewis acidity, dramatically improved the yields of 40a and 40b (entry 3). Next, we examined the Lewis acids Zn(OTf)$_2$, Sc(OTf)$_3$, and BF$_3$·OEt$_2$. The cyclized products 40a and 40b were obtained in approximately 80% combined yield when BF$_3$·OEt$_2$ was used (entries 4–6). We also obtained 40a and 40b quantitatively using pTsOH as a Brønsted acid.
(a) with $[\text{Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy}_3\text{)]PF}_6$

(b) with $[\text{Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy}_3\text{)]BArF}$

(c) with $[\text{Ir(cod)(pyr)(PCy}_3\text{)]BArF}$

Scheme 18.15 Discussion of the cis/trans selectivity

Scheme 18.16 Initial trial of the differentiation of diol 34

(entr 7). Considering these results, we speculated that $p$TsOH or BF$_3$·OEt$_2$ effectively eliminated the PMBO group. Finally, the reaction with $p$TsOH was conducted in the presence of an excess amount of PhSH to capture the oxonium cation derived from the PMB group. This gave alcohol 40a in 88% yield in a chemoselective manner (entry 8).
Table 18.3 Differentiation of diol 34

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Catalyst</th>
<th>Yield</th>
<th>40b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Cu(OAc)₂</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cu(OTf)₂</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cu(ClO₄)₂</td>
<td>41%</td>
<td>21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Zn(OTf)₂</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sc(OTf)₃</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>36%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>BF₃·OEt₂</td>
<td>64%</td>
<td>17%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>pTsOH</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>65%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>pTsOH, PhSH&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> 10 equivalent of PhSH was used

In this reaction, <i>p</i>-methoxybenzyl alcohol 41 and bis(<i>p</i>-methoxybenzyl) ether 42 were obtained as by-products (Scheme 18.17). From these results, we hypothesized that the PMB ether 40b was formed through the following steps. First, elimination of the <i>p</i>-methoxybenzyl ether of 34 by acid-activation, which gave oxonium cation <i>J</i> and triol <i>K</i>, was followed by the formation of carbocation <i>L</i>-1 by elimination of a hydroxy group. Alternatively, the <i>p</i>-methoxybenzylxoy group of 34 could be directly eliminated to produce <i>L</i>-1. This secondary cation <i>L</i>-1 would be stabilized by the <i>σ</i>-donation of the cyclopropyl group [54]. The cation of <i>L</i>-1 was then reacted with the intramolecular hydroxy group to give tetrahydropyran 40a. Finally, the reaction of 40a with oxonium cation <i>J</i> led to the formation of PMB ether 40b.

The reaction proceeded in a stereoselective manner at C8. The newly formed stereochromatic configuration was determined by NOESY experiments of 40c, which was obtained via silylation of 40a. The stereoselectivity could be rationalized as follows. Although two conformations, <i>L</i>-1 and <i>L</i>-2, are possible for this cyclization, the methylene moiety of one of the hydroxymethyl groups of <i>L</i>-2 would experience steric repulsion with the hydrogen on C4 and the methyl group of C5 on the six-membered ring. Consequently, conformation <i>L</i>-1 was favored, leading to the formation of 40a. Although this reaction might be reversible, 40a would be thermodynamically more stable than 8-<i>epi</i>-40a because of similar steric repulsion.

The C–H oxidation was then examined for the ring-opening of the THP ring after formation of benzoxy ester from 40a. Oxidation using stoichiometric amounts of CrO₃ or a combination of RuCl₃ catalyst and NaIO₄ gave undesired lactone 45.
and carboxylic acids 46 because of oxidation of a methylene instead of a methine (Table 18.4, entries 1 and 2) [55, 56]. In the case of (S,S)-Fe(pdp), reported by Chen and White, the reaction gave the desired keto alcohol 44 regioselectively in 65% yield, but required stoichiometric amounts of iron complexes (entry 3) [57]. When oxidation with dimethyldioxirane (DMDO) was attempted, the reaction did not complete even after 24 h although 44 was obtained in 22% yield. On the other hand, treatment with trifluoromethyl(methyl)dioxirane (TFDO) at 0 °C resulted in low regioselectivity because of the high reactivity of TFDO (entries 4, 5) [58]. Finally, when using TFDO at −78 °C, regioselective C–H oxidation proceeded to give 44 in 96% yield (entry 6).

Next our attention turned to constructing the C-ring moiety to complete the total synthesis of avenaol (1).2 The keto alcohol 44 was elongated through mesylation and S_N_2 substitution with cyanide (Scheme 18.18). After DIBAL-H reduction of the

---

2 We also explored the introduction of a hydroxy group at C3 from a 1:1 diastereomeric mixture of lactone 13b and 8-epi-13b, which had been prepared via palladium-catalyzed reduction of allyl carbonate and 1,4-reduction of butenolide (as detailed in Table 18.2). Oxidation of a diastereomeric mixture of 13b and 8-epi-13b with TPAP produced ketones 28 and 8-epi-28. Treatment of the diastereomeric mixture 28 with TBSOTf and triethylamine gave silyl enol ethers N4 and 8-epi-N4 along with an intramolecular aldol adduct N3, which could not be separated by silica gel column chromatography. Thus, this mixture N3, N4 and 8-epi-N4 was treated with OsO4, which yielded α-hydroxyketones N5 and 8-epi-N5 in 68% yield (with a N5:8-epi-N5 ratio of 1:3.4) and recovered N3. The configuration of the newly formed C3 was established by NOE correlation between hydrogens on C3 and C8 of acetylated N6. Our findings revealed that while 8-epi-13b with undesired stereochemistry at C8 could be converted to hydroxyketone 8-epi-N5 through the formation of a silyl enol ether and subsequent dihydroxylation, 13b with the desired stereochemistry could not be
**Table 18.4** C–H oxidation of tetrahydropyran

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Yield</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CrO₃, AcOH, rt</td>
<td>0% (45: 35%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RuCl₃, NaIO₄, CCl₄-MeCN-pH 7 buffer</td>
<td>0% (45: 7%, 46: 33%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(S,S)-Fe(pdp), AcOH, aq. H₂O₂, rt</td>
<td>65%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>DMDO, CH₂Cl₂, rt</td>
<td>22% (30%, brsm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>TFDO, CH₂Cl₂, 0 °C</td>
<td>24% (45: 36%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>TFDO, CH₂Cl₂, −78 °C</td>
<td>96%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
resulting nitrile 33, hydrolysis under basic conditions was followed by treatment with an acid to yield a mixture of lactone 13b and alkene 47. This mixture was directly treated with pTsOH, resulting in the conversion of 13b to 47. Dihydroxylation of 47 gave a diol in a diastereoselective manner because OsO₄ was approached from the convex face. After regioselective silylation, the resulting triethylsilyle (TES) ether 48 was treated with methyl formate in the presence of potassium tert-butoxide to afford the formylated product [19]. Coupling of the product with bromobutenolide 11a afforded enol ether 49, which is a core structure of avenaol, as a diastereomeric mixture with the 2′-epimer. Dess–Martin oxidation of 49 gave protected avenaol 50 and 2′-epi-50, which were separated by silica gel column chromatography. The alcohol was oxidized after the formylation and introduction of the butenolide because cyclization via intramolecular aldol reaction during formylation and butenolide introduction would occur if it was oxidized first. Finally, treatment of 50 with HF-pyridine completed the total synthesis of avenaol (1). The spectral data, including ¹H, ¹³C NMR, FTIR, and ESI-MS spectra, of the synthetic avenaol were identical to those transformed into the desired silyl enol ether N4 without a side reaction (i.e., intramolecular aldol reaction).
of the natural product reported by Yoneyama et al. [2]. The epimer of avenaol, 2'-epi-1, was also synthesized by removing the TES group from 2'-epi-50 by treatment with HF-pyridine. The relative configuration of 2'-epi-1 was determined by X-ray crystallography. These results indicate that the structure of avenaol and its relative configuration are correct, albeit indirectly.

### 18.3 Synthesis of (+)-Avenaol from a Racemic Synthetic Intermediate

After achieving the total synthesis of racemic avenaol, we focused on its asymmetric synthesis. If the synthetic intermediate 18b, obtained by the asymmetric nucleophilic addition as shown in Scheme 18.3, was derivatized without epimerization through the established synthetic route, the optically active avenaol could be accessed. However, the asymmetric nucleophilic addition required a stoichiometric amount of a chiral ligand whose use is restricted by law. This method might be inefficient for the synthesis of enantiomers of the ABC ring moiety because the
optically active \textit{ent-18b} needed to be prepared in an early stage of the synthesis. Additionally, the introduction of the D-ring moiety did not occur stereoselectively. It has been reported that SL with an \textit{R} configuration on C2’ of the D ring, which is the same as in the natural product, exhibits more germination-stimulating activity than that having a \textit{S} configuration [59]. Therefore, we envisioned that the enantioselective introduction of the D-ring moiety using racemic synthetic intermediates would both enable efficient synthesis of optically active avenaol and provide a highly general method for the asymmetric synthesis of SLs. After various investigations, we found that a SL structural analog with a 1-indanone skeleton, enol 51a, reacted with racemic chlorobutenolide 11b in the presence of cesium carbonate and chiral thiourea-ammonium salt catalyst PTC-1 in chlorobenzene–water (20:1) to give 52a in 72% yield with an enantiomeric ratio (er) of 94:6 (Table 18.5, entry 1) [60]. This reaction could apply to enol 51b with two methyl groups at C5 and C6 and enol 51c fused at C6 and C7, which is a bulkier substrate (entries 2 and 3). Furthermore, diastereoselective introduction of the D-ring moiety into enantiomerically pure 51d was possible to form the artificial SL GR24 (52d, entry 4).

The optimized reaction conditions could be applied to the diastereomeric acetalization of several racemic enols that are the SL precursors. Racemic enol 51d was converted to (+)-(3a\textit{R},8b\textit{S},2’\textit{R})-52d (GR24, 54% yield, 82:18 er) and its diastereomer (−)-(3a\textit{S},8b\textit{R},2’\textit{R})-52d (40% yield, 88:12 er) (Scheme 18.19). Similarly, the bicyclic SLs (+)-(3a\textit{R},6a\textit{S},2’\textit{R})-52e (GR7, 41% yield, 81:19 er) and (−)-(3a\textit{S},6a\textit{R},2’\textit{R})-52e (34% yield, 85:15 er) were obtained from enol (±)-51e.

Finally, this diastereoselective acetalization was applied to the asymmetric synthesis of avenaol. A key synthetic intermediate (±)-53 was reacted under the optimum conditions and yielded a mixture of enol ether 49 (45%) and \textit{ent-2’-epi-49} (30%) on introduction of the D-ring moiety (Scheme 18.20). Dess–Martin oxidation of the mixture was followed by separation by silica gel column chromatography to give (+)-50 and (−)-\textit{ent-2’-epi-50}. The protected avenaol (+)-50 was treated with HF-pyridine to obtain avenaol (+)-1 in an 81:19 er. The circular dichroism spectrum of (+)-1 was consistent with the reported Cotton effect, which confirmed this compound had the same absolute configuration as the natural product [2]. Because the 2’-(\textit{R}) epimer would be obtained in the case of PTC-1, it was strongly suggested that the absolute configuration of the natural product was 2’-(\textit{R}) as in the proposed structure. Similarly, the enantioselectivity of (−)-\textit{ent-2’-epi-1} obtained by removing the TES group of (−)-\textit{ent-2’-epi-50} was 96:4.

### 18.4 Conclusions

We achieved the first total synthesis of avenaol (1) using the following key reactions: (1) rhodium-catalyzed intramolecular cyclopropanation of allenes to synthesize alkylidencyclopropanes, (2) iridium-catalyzed diastereoselective double bond isomerization to construct all-\textit{cis} cyclopropane, (3) distinction of two hydroxymethyl groups on the 1,3-diol via intramolecular \textit{S}_\text{N}1-type reactions, and (4) cleavage of the
Table 18.5 Enantioselective acetalization for introduction of the D-ring butenolide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Substrate</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Yield ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>94:6 er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>79%</td>
<td>95:5 er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Quant</td>
<td>94:6 er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>92:8 dr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THP ring by regioselective C–H oxidation (Scheme 18.21). This is the first synthetic proof of the proposed relative stereo configuration of avenaol. After this study, we succeeded in the total synthesis of shagene A and B by extending the synthetic strategy of all-cis cyclopropanes developed in this study [61]. It is expected that these synthetic strategies, including other attempts such as hydrogenation, radical cyclization, and palladium-catalyzed reduction of alkylidencyclopropane derivatives, described in this manuscript will be widely used in the future. Furthermore, we have developed a stereoselective D ring introduction method for SL by acetal formation with γ-chlorobutenolide via chiral thiourea-quaternary ammonium salt-catalyzed dynamic kinetic resolution. By applying the developed reaction conditions
Scheme 18.19  Synthesis of SLs by PTC-catalyzed stereoselective acetalization to racemic substrates, optically active SLs could be readily synthesized. Finally, we succeeded in synthesizing optically active avenaol and confirming its absolute configuration. This method is expected to be used for various substrates as a stereoselective introduction of the strigolactone D-ring moiety.
Scheme 18.20  Synthesis of (+)-avenaol by PTC-catalyzed stereoselective acetalization
Scheme 18.21  Overview of strategies for access to all-cis cyclopropanes and total synthesis of avenaol

Acknowledgements We gratefully thank Prof. K. Yoneyama, and Dr. X. Xie for providing $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR spectra of natural avenaol, which were used for comparison with synthetic samples. This work was supported by JSPS KAKENHI (Grant Number 17H05051, 21H02131) to C.T., JSPS fellowship to M.Y., and a Grant-in-Aid from the Shorai Foundation for Science and Technology, Japan (C.T.).

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 19
Nonbiomimetic Total Synthesis of Polycyclic Alkaloids

Hiroaki Ohno, Norihito Arichi, and Shinsuke Inuki

Abstract In nonbiomimetic natural product synthesis, there are no restrictions on the design of synthetic routes; however, the feasibility of the planned routes is often completely unknown. To discover more efficient and creative syntheses of natural products, and to identify bioactive natural product derivatives that have never been synthesized in nature, our group is engaged in the nonbiomimetic total synthesis of indole alkaloids. In this chapter, we describe our nonbiomimetic total syntheses of quinocarcin, dictyodendrins A–F, and zephycarinatines C and D, by employing alkyne-based approaches and reductive radical spirocyclization. We also describe our efforts in the identification of bioactive alkaloid derivatives.

Keywords Cascade reactions · Nonbiomimetic synthesis · Indole alkaloids

19.1 Introduction

‘Biomimetic’ and ‘nonbiomimetic’ are important classifications in natural product synthesis. Biomimetic synthesis [1], which takes inspiration from biosynthetic pathways, is a rational and efficient approach to natural product synthesis; this is because (1) the common synthetic intermediates of nature can be used, leading to the diversity-oriented synthesis of a series of natural products, and (2) cheap and easily accessible starting materials can be used. Furthermore, the structures of the natural products are restricted to those accessible by biosynthesis [2–5]. It is also important to note that the routes of biomimetic syntheses have already been realized in nature, albeit in reaction environments that employ enzymes. Although the structures of natural products have been optimized and refined in nature through evolutionary selection, which can be considered a compound screening in nature [6–8], biomimetic total synthesis can also efficiently synthesize structurally novel natural product derivatives by utilizing synthons that are not available in nature.
In contrast, nonbiomimetic total synthesis does not mimic the bond formation patterns or key intermediates of biosynthetic pathways; rather, it seeks more efficient and creative synthetic routes to natural products \[9, 10\]. There are no restrictions in the design of these synthetic routes, although the feasibility of the routes is completely unknown. Another important point is that nonbiomimetic synthesis can often produce natural product derivatives that have never been synthesized in nature \[11, 12\].

Our group is engaged in the nonbiomimetic total synthesis of indole alkaloids with a focus on alkyne-based strategies \[13–15\] and photoredox catalysis \[16\]. Alkynes are extremely important tools in the design of nonbiomimetic syntheses. Although nature can synthesize alkyne-containing natural products, such as acetylenic fatty acids, acetylenic amino acids, enediyynes, and bacterial polyynes \[9\], reactions of alkynes are rarely used in nature; this is illustrated by bio-orthogonal reactions that often rely on alkyne chemistry. Radical-based reductive cyclization onto aromatic rings is another important method in the design of nonbiomimetic synthetic routes because biosynthesis extensively uses oxidative radical reactions, but not their reductive counterparts.

In this chapter, we describe our recent achievements in the nonbiomimetic total synthesis of quinocarcin (1) \[17, 18\], dictyodendrins A–F (2a–f) \[19, 20\], and zephyrcarinatines C and D (3a, 3b) \[21\] (Fig. 19.1), using alkyne-based approaches or reductive radical spirocyclization. Our efforts in the identification of alkaloid derivatives for drug discovery, which are not accessible by biomimetic approaches, are also described.

![Fig. 19.1 Structures of quinocarcin, dictyodendrins, and zephyrcarinatines](image)
19.2 Total Synthesis of Quinocarcin

The tetrahydroisoquinoline (THIQ) antibiotics constitute a large class of alkaloids (over 60 members) that possess a wide range of structural diversity and biological activities (Fig. 19.2) [22, 23]. In 1983, quinocarcin (1) was isolated from a culture of *Streptomyces melanovinaceus* by Takahashi and Tomita [24, 25] and was demonstrated to show antiproliferative activity against lymphocytic leukemia. Quinocarcinamide is the oxidized surrogate of quinocarcin, and has a tetracyclic lactam core with a primary alcohol moiety. Tetrazomine and lemomycin are also members of the quinocarcin family, sharing a 3,8-diazabicyclo[3.2.1]octane core structure. Saframycin A and ecteinascidin 743 are well-known THIQ alkaloids with potent antitumor activity that share the alternative 3,9-diazabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane core structure.

A biosynthetic pathway to quinocarcin, based on a nonribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS) composed of five modules (Qcn12, 13, 15, 17, and 19), was proposed by Oikawa and co-workers in 2013 [26] (Scheme 19.1). Glyoxal derivative 5 is biosynthesized by the Qcn13/12-catalyzed condensation of a long-chain fatty acid with L-alanine, followed by glyceryl unit transfer and reductive cleavage of the resulting thioester. The Pictet-Spengler (PS) reaction of *m*-tyrosine (4) (derived from phenylalanine) with aldehyde 5, catalyzed by the Qcn17 PS domain, produces thioester 6 with a tetrahydroisoquinoline scaffold, which is reductively converted to bicyclic aldehyde 7. A Mannich reaction of aldehyde 7 with tethered 4,5-dehydroarginine affords pyrrolidine-substituted tetrahydroisoquinoline 9, which can be converted to tetracyclic product 10 via reductive release and N-cyclization. It should be noted that the final transformation of 10 to quinocarcin (1), which may include aminal formation, N- and O-methylation, and oxidation, was not proposed.

Fig. 19.2 Structures of quinocarcin and related tetrahydroisoquinoline alkaloids
Our retrosynthetic disconnections for quinocarcin (1) are depicted in Scheme 19.2. According to the published procedure by Zhu and Stoltz [27, 28], quinocarcin can be synthesized from the quinocarcinamide derivative 11. This amide would be accessible from 12 via hydrogenation and lactam formation, and compound 12 would be obtained by gold-catalyzed hydroamination [29] of benzylamine derivative 13 bearing an alkynyl pyrrolidine moiety (the first key reaction of this synthesis). The benzylamine derivative 13 could be easily prepared by Sonogashira coupling between phenylglycinol derivative 14 and 2,5-cis-2-alkynylpyrrolidine 15. The pyrrolidine would be stereoselectively synthesized by the base-promoted cyclization of bromoallene 16 (the second key reaction in our synthesis); the 2,5-cis-isomer can be selectively produced from both diastereomers of the bromoallene [30]. Comparing the green bonds in the biosynthetic route (Scheme 19.1) to the red bonds in our synthetic route (Scheme 19.2), it can clearly be seen that our synthetic method does not mimic biosynthesis.

Our synthesis began with TBDPS-protected γ-butyrolactone 17 (Scheme 19.3). Stereoselective α-propargylation, reductive ring-opening of the resulting 3,5-trans-18 with LiBH₄, and acetylation gave protected triol 19 in good overall yield. Introduction of the nitrogen functional group under Mitsunobu conditions and propargylic oxidation with SeO₂ afforded 20 as a diastereomeric mixture, which was then converted to bromoallene 16a (dr = 55:45) via mesylation, CuBr-SMe₂/LiBr-mediated bromination [31], and removal of the Boc group. As expected, NaH-promoted cyclization of 16a in DMF produced 2,5-cis-pyrrolidine 21 in a highly stereoselective manner (2,5-cis:trans = 96:4; 95% yield) [30]. Finally, 2,5-cis-21 was converted to the pyrrolidine unit (2,5-cis-15), ready for the Sonogashira coupling, via deprotection, oxidation, esterification, and N-methylation.
Next, we proceeded with the asymmetric synthesis of phenylglycinol synthon \((R)-14\) (Scheme 19.4). We were forced to synthesize the furan derivative \(14a\) to solve the regioselectivity issue in the key hydroamination reaction (vide infra). Regioselective lithiation of \(23\) with LDA, formylation with DMF, and Wittig reaction of the resulting dihalobenzaldehyde gave styrene derivative \(24\). Enantioenriched diol \(25\) (81% ee) was obtained by Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation of \(24\), which was recrystallized from CHCl\(_3\) to afford the optically pure diol \(25\) (> 99% ee). An azido group was introduced into \(25\) with DPPA under Mitsunobu conditions, and \(t\)-BuOK-promoted S\(_N\)Ar reaction of \(26\) gave dihydrofuran derivative \(27\). Finally, reduction of the azide and Boc protection gave the phenylglycinol unit \((R)-14a\) in good yield.

With the two building blocks required for the coupling reaction in hand, we proceeded with the total synthesis of quinocarcin (Scheme 19.5). Sonogashira
coupling between equimolar amounts of \((R)-14a\) and 2,5-cis-15 provided 13a in 92% yield. After removal of the Boc group, gold-catalyzed hydroamination of 13b in dichloroethane (DCE) successfully produced the desired product through 6-endo-dig cyclization. The resulting unstable enamine was directly converted to tetrahydroisoquinoline derivative 28 (90%, 2 steps) via reduction with NaBH₃(CN) in a stereoselective manner. Lactamation of the piperidine with one of the ester groups in 28 was efficiently promoted by heating in acetic acid, forming the quinocarcin core structure. The challenging ring cleavage reaction of dihydrobenzofuran in 11a was achieved via Lewis acid-mediated ring-opening chlorination using BF₃·Et₂O and SiCl₄ in DCE, followed by treatment with CsCl (10 equiv.) in MeCN, to produce phenol derivative 30 in 92% yield [32]. This reaction would proceed through chlorination of the oxazolidinium intermediate 29, formed by treatment of 11a with BF₃·Et₂O and SiCl₄ [33]. Finally, methylation of the phenol with dimethyl sulfate, hydrolysis of the chloromethyl group using AgNO₃ in a mixed solvent of acetone/H₂O, and hydrolysis and reduction of known intermediate 31 using Stoltz’s procedure [28] successfully produced quinocarcin (1). The spectroscopic data of (–)-quinocarcin we synthesized were consistent with those reported previously.

Next, we would like to describe some of the challenges we experienced in this synthesis and how we serendipitously overcame them. In our model experiments of the hydroamination reaction using simplified substrates 32a, Au(I), as well as a range of other transition-metals such as Cu(I), Pt(II), In(III), and Rh(I), turned out to be ineffective for the desired 6-endo-dig cyclization (Scheme 19.6). Instead, 5-exo-dig cyclization produced 34a as the major product in all cases we examined. One important factor that determines the regioselectivity of this reaction would be the electronic nature of the alkyne; transition-metal complexes increase the cationic character of the alkyne carbon that bears the aryl substituent, thus promoting the 5-exo-cyclization. We then focused on the modification of the substrate by introducing a ring fusion; we expected that the fixing of the nitrogen functional group may change the angle of nucleophilic attack. As expected, the use of the seven-membered acetonide-type substrates 32b and 32c enhanced the 6-endo-dig cyclization, affording 33b in 61% yield and 33c in 31–37%, respectively. Next, to further improve the

**Scheme 19.4** Synthesis of \((R)-14a\)
Scheme 19.5  Total synthesis of (−)-quinocarcin

regioselectivity to withstand the total synthesis, we examined seven-membered ring substrates with a carbonate moiety.

To prepare the seven-membered carbonate 36, we treated diol 35 with triphosgene under basic conditions (Scheme 19.7). Contrary to expectation, we obtained dihydrobenzofuran derivative 36', presumably through five-membered ring formation from the chlorocarbonate intermediate. Considering that the five-membered ring fusion would strongly promote the desired 6-endo-dig cyclization due to the ring strain of the 6/5/5 ring system in 34d, we proceeded to prepare the hydroamination precursor 32d; this was achieved via the reduction of the azide, Boc protection, and Sonogashira coupling. Fortunately, the gold-catalyzed reaction of 32d using cat. A (5 mol %) in DCE gave the desired six-membered ring 33d in 73% yield as the sole regioisomer. Although we were concerned about how to convert the dihydrobenzofuran to the methyl ether in quinocarcin, we decided to proceed with the total synthesis using a benzofuran-type substrate, taking advantage of the perfect regioselectivity.

Next, we prepared benzofuran-type substrate 13a and submitted it to the hydroamination reaction. Our initial attempt using the N-Boc derivative was unsuccessful,
Scheme 19.6 Model experiments of hydroamination reaction

Scheme 19.7 Serendipity: unexpected formation of the dihydrofuran derivative and its regioselective hydroamination

resulting in either the recovery of 13a or a low catalyst turnover (Scheme 19.8). We speculated that the steric repulsion between one of the methoxycarbonyl groups and the Boc group might inhibit the hydroamination reaction. Thus, we investigated the reaction using free-amine substrate 13b and obtained the desired product 28b (90%) after NaBH₃CN reduction, as described; although, increased catalyst loading was necessary.

As we anticipated, the ring-opening of the dihydrobenzofuran ring was troublesome. In 2004, Zewge reported an efficient C–O bond cleavage of dihydrobenzofuran ring using LiI with SiCl₄ and BF₃·AcOH (Scheme 19.9) [33]. With these reaction conditions in mind, we expected that the carbonyl oxygen of the adjacent
lactam would facilitate the ring-opening of benzofuran under the Lewis acidic conditions to generate oxazolidinium intermediate 29, which could lead to the phenylglycinol derivative. Thus, we treated the dihydrobenzofuran derivative 11a with SiCl4 and BF3·AcOH and observed the formation of a suspension, from which we expected the in-situ generation of oxazolidinium intermediate 29. Unfortunately, our initial attempt at hydrolysis provided only recovered starting material, which can be ascribed to the undesired hydrolytic cleavage of the silyl ether which occurred before the required ring-opening of the oxazolidinium moiety. Reductive treatment of the suspension with Et3SiH, for the preparation of 40, only produced the amino alcohol derivative as the over-reduction product. On the contrary, treatment with t-BuNH2 gave amidine 41 in 52% yield in 2 steps, which strongly suggested the formation of the ring-opening intermediate 29. However, all our efforts to convert 41 to quinocarcin were unsuccessful. After considerable experimentation, we finally found that work-up with excess CsCl gave the chloromethyl derivative 30 in 92% yield [32], which led to the successful total synthesis (Scheme 19.5), as well as the formal synthesis of (−)-quinocarcinamide. This total synthesis was only possible because of the remarkable efforts of Dr. Hiroaki Chiba, whose ‘prepared mind’ allowed him to translate good fortune into success.

19.3 Total Synthesis of Dictyodendrins

Dictyodendrins (Fig. 19.1) were isolated from the Japanese marine sponge by the Fusetani group (in 2003) [34] and the Australian marine sponge by the Capon group (in 2012) [35]. They possess broad biological activities, including inhibitory activities toward telomerase and β-site amyloid-cleaving enzyme 1 (BACE1), and are thus potential drug leads for addressing cancer and Alzheimer’s disease. Their pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazole core decorated with various substituents has gathered significant attention from synthetic chemists, and several total syntheses have been reported [36]. However, a diversity-oriented synthetic strategy of dictyodendrins based on the early-stage assembly of the core scaffold, followed by the installation of the substituents, was not reported when we began our study.
In 2017, Ready proposed a biosynthetic pathway to dictyodendrins (Scheme 19.10) [36]. Oxidative coupling of tryptophan (42) and tyrosine (43) affords diketone 44, which is transferred to pyrrole 45 by a Paal-Knorr type condensation with a second molecule of tyrosine. Oxidative decarboxylation of 45 to 46 and the subsequent oxidative aldol-type condensation with a third molecule of tyrosine gives 47. There are two pathways from compound 47 to dictyodendrin A (2a): in the first pathway, oxidative cyclization of 47 to dictyodendrin F (2f) is followed by condensation with another tyrosine molecule to produce dictyodendrin A (2a). In the second pathway, the prior coupling of 47 with tyrosine gives 48, which is transformed into dictyodendrin A (2a) via benzene ring construction. Dictyodendrin A (2a) and F (2f) can be considered key intermediates in the biosynthesis of other dictyodendrins.

We envisaged developing an efficient method for the assembly of the dictyodendrin core scaffold followed by the installation of the substituents in a regioselective manner, leading to diversity-oriented synthesis and applications in medicinal chemistry of dictyodendrin derivatives. In 2015, we reported a gold-catalyzed [4 + 2] indole synthesis using conjugated diynes and pyrroles (Scheme 19.11) [37], which proceeds via a double-hydroarylation cascade. We envisaged that this reaction, which efficiently produces 4,7-diarylindoles, could be used to construct the dictyodendrin core structure in combination with nitrene chemistry.

Our initial approach to the pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazole is shown in Scheme 19.12. The gold-catalyzed cyclization of diyne 49 with pyrroles would give 4,7-diarylindole 50 bearing an azido group, and subsequent thermal or transition-metal-catalyzed nitrene insertion would produce pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazole derivative 52. We anticipated that
the control of regioselectivity in the gold-catalyzed [4 + 2] annulation to obtain the desired isomer 50 over 51 would be key to the success of this strategy.

Thus, Ms. Yuka Matsuda, who developed the gold-catalyzed [4 + 2] indole synthesis [37], investigated the gold-catalyzed reaction between diyne 49 and pyrrole. She unexpectedly found that the reaction directly produced the pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazoles 52 and 53 as an isomeric mixture. We rationalized this result by the generation of α-iminogold carbene intermediate A, subsequent arylation with pyrrole and intramolecular hydroarylation of the resulting pyrrolylindoles B and C [38]. Although the formation of α-iminogold from simple alkynylanilines and the subsequent reaction with nucleophiles, such as alcohol and anisole, was already reported by Gagosz [39] and Zhang [40], the reaction of diynes with pyrrole as the coupling partner, and the cascade cyclization were not reported. Encouraged by this result, we revised our plan for the total synthesis of dictyodendrins via a gold-catalyzed annulation for the direct formation of pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazole derivatives.
Our retrosynthetic analysis for the diversity-oriented synthesis of dictyodendrins is shown in Scheme 19.13. Dictyodendrins A–F would be obtained by functional group modification of appropriately substituted pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazoles 54, 55, and 56. The precursor 54 for dictyodendrin A [41] would be obtained from 55 by the installation of the C2 substituent via acylation with (COCl)₂ and Grignard reaction. The intermediate 55 (precursor of dictyodendrins C, D, and F [41]) and 56 (precursor of dictyodendrin E [41]) would be obtained from 57 via bromination and Ullmann coupling with methanol, and addition to p-anisaldehyde where necessary. Sequential functionalization of gold-catalyzed annulation product 52a would afford intermediate 57 through Suzuki–Miyaura coupling and N-alkylation. The conjugated diyne 49a would be prepared by the Cadiot–Chodkiewicz coupling [42] of alkynes 58 and 59. Our synthetic strategy is completely different from the proposed biosynthetic pathway, as can be clearly seen by comparing the green bonds in the biosynthesis (Scheme 19.10) and red bonds in our synthesis (Scheme 19.13).

First, we developed a regioselective synthesis of pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazole 52a that could withstand the total synthesis (Scheme 19.14). Sonogashira coupling of iodoaniline derivative 60 bearing a tert-butoxy group with trimethylsilylacetylene gave alkyn 61. Desilylation and Cadiot–Chodkiewicz coupling [42] with bromoalkyne 59 gave the conjugated diyne 62, which was transformed into the cyclization precursor 49a via removal of the Boc group and azide formation. After optimizing the gold-catalyzed cyclization, we found that exposure of 49a to \( N \)-Boc pyrrole to BrettPhosAu(MeCN)SbF₆ (5 mol%) in DCE at 80 °C gave the desired pyrrolo[2,3-c]carbazoles 52a with good regioselectivity \((52a:53a = 84:16)\) [38]. A gram-scale reaction using 49a (2.76 g) and BrettPhosAu(MeCN)SbF₆ (162 mg, 2 mol%) also worked well, resulting in the isolation of 52a (2.27 g) in 58% yield.
With pyrrolocarbazole derivative 52a in hand, we investigated the total and formal synthesis of dictyodendrins C, D, and F, all of which do not possess C2 substituents (Scheme 19.15). Deprotection of the Boc group gave 64 in 92% yield; this compound is the common intermediate for the synthesis of the series of dictyodendrins. Dr. Junpei Matsuoka struggled with the low reactivity of the pyrrolocarbazole derivative, which behaved like a stone, as well as the instability of brominated pyrrolocarbazole derivatives. After many unsuccessful attempts, he found that bromination with N-bromosuccinimide (NBS), alkylation with bromide 65a under aqueous conditions, and Suzuki-coupling with boronic acid 66 worked well for the introduction of the C1 and N3 substituents, producing 57a in 42% yield over 3 steps. Although the
installation of the hydroxy group at the C5 position of 57a was also troublesome, we succeeded in dibrominating the compound with NBS, followed by mono-selective debromination using NaBH₄ and PdCl₂(dppf), to obtain the C5-brominated product 68 in 55% yield. Introduction of the methoxy group via Ullmann coupling between 68 and NaOMe afforded the methoxy derivative 55a, the known precursor of dictyodendrin C, which was converted to dictyodendrin F (2f) by deprotection with BBr₃, according to the literature protocol reported by Tokuyama [41]. The total synthesis of dictyodendrin D (2d) was also achieved from 64 using benzyl-protected bromide 65b.

Next, we moved on to the total synthesis of dictyodendrin A (2a), which has a (4-hydroxyphenyl)acetate moiety as the C2 substituent (Scheme 19.16). Acylation of the methoxy derivative 55a with oxalyl chloride, followed by treatment with methanol, gave keto-ester 69 (87%). The anisyl group was introduced into 69 by Grignard reaction of the carboxylic acid derived from 69; the resulting ester 54 was obtained in 33% yield (4 steps) after esterification and removal of the hydroxy group. It should be noted that the addition of the Grignard reagent to the keto-ester 69 gave a complex mixture, producing only low yield of the ester 54 (9% after reduction). According to a reported procedure [41], the total synthesis of dictyodendrin A (2a) was accomplished through the removal of the protecting groups.

The total synthesis of dictyodendrin B is shown in Scheme 19.17. To introduce the acyl group at the C2 position, the lithiation-acylation protocol reported by Fürstner was employed [43]. Thus, mono-selective installation of a bromine atom on 57a using 1.05 equiv. of NBS, lithiation with MeLi/n-BuLi, and nucleophilic addition to anisaldehyde gave alcohol 71. C5-selective bromination with NBS, Ley–Griffith oxidation, and Ullmann coupling of 73 with NaOMe gave ketone 56, a known precursor of dictyodendrin E (2e) [41]. Finally, BCl₃-mediated cleavage of
Nonbiomimetic Total Synthesis of Polycyclic Alkaloids

Scheme 19.15  Total and formal syntheses of dictyodendrins C, D, and F

Scheme 19.16  Total synthesis of dictyodendrin A

the tert-butyl group and functional group modifications [41] gave dictyodendrin B (2b).

We then performed the biological evaluation of the synthesized dictyodendrins and derivatives thereof, which are not accessible by biomimetic synthesis. Because a previous report showed that dictyodendrin F exhibited cytotoxicity to human colon cancer HCT116 cells (IC$_{50}$ = 27.0 μM) [44], the cytotoxicity of several dictyodendrin analogs toward HCT116 cells was tested. Representative cytotoxicities at 30 μM are shown in Fig. 19.3. Interestingly, the cytotoxicities of the simplified analogs 52a and 64 without C1- and C2-substituents (44–64% cell viability) are comparable to
that of dictyodendrin F (55%). However, no cytotoxicity was observed for pyrrolocarbazoles 55a, 56, 57a, and 70–72. Furthermore, some of the simplified analogs of the dictyodendrins displayed CDK2/CycA2 and GSK3β inhibitory activity (data not shown).

Thus, we have successfully completed the total and formal syntheses of dictyodendrins A–F by using a gold-catalyzed annulation on diynes to construct the pyrrolocarbazole core. The late-stage modification of the core structure allowed for the diversity-oriented synthesis of a series of dictyodendrins. The simplified dictyodendrin analogs showed promising biological activities, exemplifying the utility of nonbiomimetic synthesis in natural product-based drug discovery.

**Scheme 19.17** Total and formal syntheses of dictyodendrins B and E

**Fig. 19.3** Cytotoxicities (HCT116) after treatment with dictyodendrin derivatives at 30 μM
Zephycarinatines (3) were isolated from *Zephyranthes carinata* Herbert in 2017 by Yao et al. (Scheme 19.18) [45, 46]. These compounds belong to the plicamine-type alkaloids, which are characterized by a unique 6,6-spirocyclic core; the structural analogs zephygranditines (74) and plicamine (75) also belong to this class of alkaloids (75) (Scheme 19.18). The plicamine-type alkaloids and derivatives thereof exhibit a variety of biological activities. For example, zephygranditines (74) display cytotoxicity to cancer cell lines and anti-inflammatory effects by inhibiting NO production in lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-activated macrophages [47]. In contrast, information regarding the bioactivities of zephycarinatines is limited.

A proposed biosynthetic pathway to the plicamine-type alkaloids is shown in Scheme 19.19 [48]. The biosynthesis begins with phenylalanine (76) and tyrosine (43), which undergo several enzymatic processes to yield 4′-O-methylnorbelladine (77). Intramolecular phenol–phenol coupling of 4′-O-methylnorbelladine (77) and 1,4-addition of the amine to the α,β-unsaturated ketone in 78 affords noroxomaritidine (79). Following reduction, oxidation, and methylation, haemanthadine (80) is formed; subsequent ring cleavage of 80 and N-methylation leads to the aldehyde 81, which is then condensed with various amines to provide plicamine-type alkaloids.

Due to their biological relevance and intriguing structural characteristics, plicamine-type alkaloids have been the focus of numerous synthetic investigations [46]. While there is no report of the total synthesis of zephycarinatines (3), the total synthesis of plicamine (75) has been accomplished [49–51]. Plicamine (75) bears a (p-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl group attached to the B-ring nitrogen atom and a methoxy group on the C-ring. Interestingly, its configuration is opposite to that of the zephycarinatines (3). A pivotal step in the synthesis of plicamine-type alkaloids is the construction of the quaternary carbon in the core structure. Previous total synthesis of plicamine (75) employed an intramolecular oxidative coupling of electron-rich

**Scheme 19.18** Structures of zephycarinatine and related alkaloids, and synthetic strategy to zephycarinatines
Proposed biosynthetic pathway to plicamine-type alkaloids

Radical *ips*o-cyclizations can be categorized as either oxidative or reductive, and both types have attracted attention as powerful tools for the preparation of spirocyclic compounds (Scheme 19.20) [52]. In particular, numerous effective approaches have been developed for oxidative cyclization [52], for instance, the pioneering work by Curran on the *ips*o-cyclization of aryl radicals onto *p*-O-aryl-substituted benzanilide [53]. In contrast, reductive *ips*o-cyclization is relatively scarce in the literature. Our group reported a reductive *ips*o-cyclization mediated by samarium(II), which involves an intramolecular addition of ketyl radicals onto aromatic rings [54, 55]. Yoshimi et al. developed an intramolecular *ips*o-cyclization that proceeds via the photoinduced decarboxylation of an amino acid analog with an *N*-(2-phenyl)benzoyl group [56]. More recently, Jui reported a photocatalytic dearomative hydroarylation initiated by the reduction of an aryl halide [57]. However, the application of these methods to total synthesis is still limited, probably due to the difficulty in achieving stereoselective *ips*o-cyclization of highly functionalized substrates.

[Scheme 19.19: Proposed biosynthetic pathway to plicamine-type alkaloids]
To achieve stereoselective ipso-cyclization, we selected the visible-light-mediated decarboxylation reaction of amino acid derivatives. This reaction, which generates carbon radicals under mild conditions using LED irradiation \([58, 59]\), facilitated the total synthesis of plicamine-type alkaloids and their derivatives with various functional groups.

The retrosynthetic analysis of zephycarinatines (3) is depicted in Scheme 19.21. We envisaged incorporating the \(R^1\) group in the last stage of the synthesis, thereby enabling the preparation of a diverse range of analogs with different N-substituents. The methoxy group would originate from ketone moiety of 82. Oxidation of the 1,4-diene of 83, followed by 1,4-addition, would allow for the formation of the D ring. The amide 83 was expected to result from the functionalization of the hemiaminal 84. We anticipated that the radical ipso-cyclization of carboxylic acid 85, mediated by visible light, would provide the hemiaminal 84. This process is the pivotal step in the synthesis, necessitating the ipso-cyclization of the \(\alpha\)-amino carbon radical intermediate A, derived from the carboxyl radical, in a stereoselective manner. To address this challenge, the oxazolidine substrate 85 was designed with the intention of controlling the chiral center at the \(\alpha\)-position, inspired by the self-regeneration of stereocenters (SRS) principle reported by Seebach et al. \([60]\). The carboxylic acid 85 would derive from carboxylic acid 86 and L-serine 87.

Initially, the condensation between the known biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid derivative 86 \([61]\) and oxazolidine 88 \([62]\), derived from L-serine (87), was carried out...
The addition of mesyl chloride to a mixture of 86, 88, and Et₃N provided the amide 89 in 66% yield as a single stereoisomer [63]. The predominant formation of cis-89 could result from the selective acylation of cis-88, arising from the steric difference between the equilibrated cis- and trans-88 via a ring-opening reaction [64]. Subsequently, hydrolysis of the ester 89 was performed with LiOH·H₂O to give carboxylic acid 85.

Next, we investigated the ipso-cyclization of a radical derived from carboxylic acid 85. After optimizing the reaction conditions, we found that treatment of 85 with K₂CO₃ and photocatalyst [Ir{dF(CF₃)ppy}₂(dtbbpy)}PF₆ in MeCN under visible-light irradiation gave the desired product 84 in 58% yield. We then adapted the photochemistry to a continuous flow system to improve the irradiation efficiency of the reaction over the batch process [65]. The optimized condition of the batch process was unsuitable for the flow reaction because K₂CO₃ exhibits limited solubility in MeCN. Therefore, we investigated reaction conditions that result in a homogeneous

**Scheme 19.22** Total synthesis of zephycarinatines C and D (3a and b)
mixture. When using a soluble base, such as 1,1,3,3-tetramethylguanidine (TMG), instead of K$_2$CO$_3$, the flow reaction afforded the desired product 84 in 48% yield.

With the requisite spirocyclic core in hand, we went on to investigate the formation of the zephycarinatine D-ring. Hemiaminal 84 underwent transformation into $N$-methyl amide 83 by the removal of the $N,O$-acetal group, oxidation of the alcohol with 2-hydroxy-2-azaadamantane (AZADOL) [66], and condensation of the resulting carboxylic acid with methylamine. We then explored the oxidation of 1,4-diene and found that the use of tetrapropylammonium perruthenate (TPAP) and NMO [67] facilitated the oxidation of cyclic 1,4-hexadiene followed by simultaneous 1,4-addition of the $N$-methyl amide, affording keto derivative 82 in 70% yield.

Next, we turned our attention to the total syntheses of zephycarinatines C and D, which required the conversion of the carbonyl group to the methoxy group. While our initial attempts using NaBH$_4$/CeCl$_3$ and DIBAL-H proved unsuccessful, treatment of 82 with LiAlH$_4$ successfully reduced the carbonyl group, stereoselectively yielding alcohol 90 as the sole diastereomer in 74% yield. We then sought stereoinvertive installation of the C3-methoxy group. In the total synthesis of the plicamine analog obliquequine, Ley et al. introduced the methoxy group via the nucleophilic substitution with MeOH at the mesylate derived from the corresponding alcohol and MsCl [68]. Thus, we attempted the mesylation of the alcohol 90 using MsCl and Et$_3$N. However, the desired mesylate was not isolated; instead, an undesired chloride likely formed due to the displacement with chloride originating from MsCl. As an alternative approach, we accomplished the mesylation of 90 with Ms$_2$O, and followed this with MeOH treatment to install the methoxy group with inversion of the stereochemistry, which did not require purification. The following $N$-alkylation using isopentyl bromide and NaH allowed for completion of the total synthesis of zephycarinatine C (3a) in 23% over 3 steps from 90. When we used MeI as the electrophile, the total synthesis of zephycarinatine D (3b) was achieved in 52% over 3 steps. All spectroscopic data of the synthetic zephycarinatines C and D were in accordance with those documented in the literature [45].

Finally, we assessed the inhibitory effects of zephycarinatine derivatives on NO production using LPS-stimulated RAW264.7 cells [47]. While the natural zephycarinatines C (3a) and D (3b) did not exhibit significant inhibitory activities, synthetic intermediate 82, a keto derivative, demonstrated inhibition of NO production in a dose-dependent manner (IC$_{50} = 65.3$ μM).

In summary, we achieved the first total synthesis of zephycarinatines C (2.1% overall yield) and D (4.7% overall yield) from the known acid 86 in 11 steps. The synthesis underscores a nonbiomimetic approach for the stereoselective formation of the B-ring via photocatalytic reductive radical ipso-cyclization. It is worth noting that ketone 82 exhibited a moderate inhibitory effect on LPS-induced NO production. This approach has the potential to broaden the chemical space of plicamine-type alkaloids that are typically not accessible with biomimetic approaches. This total synthesis was accomplished through Ms. Haruka Takeuchi’s unwavering dedication.
19.5 Conclusion

We have achieved nonbiomimetic total syntheses of quinocarcin, a series of dictyodendrins, and zephycaratinines C and D, by employing gold-catalyzed cyclization and reductive radical spirocyclization. These synthetic routes, which are very different from the proposed biosynthetic pathways, not only facilitate diversity-oriented synthesis but also exemplify the contribution of synthetic chemistry to drug discovery. Our efforts in nonbiomimetic synthesis will potentially lead to natural product-derived drugs that have never been synthesized in nature.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the Uehara Memorial Foundation.

References


Chapter 20
Sequential Site-Selective Functionalization: A Strategy for Total Synthesis of Natural Glycosides

Yoshihiro Ueda and Takeo Kawabata

Abstract Total synthesis of several ellagitannins, strictinin (1), pterocarinin C (2), cercidinin A (3), and tellimagrandin II (19), is described. The key issues for the synthetic strategy rely on the catalyst-controlled site-selective acylation and stereoselective glycosylation with unprotected glucose. Total synthesis of punicafolin (5) with a glucose core in $1C_4$ (chair) conformation and macaranganin (30) with a glucose core in $5S_1$ (skew boat) conformation was also accomplished based on a similar unconventional retrosynthetic route. For success in the synthesis of 5 and 30, the flipping behavior of the pyranose ring from the stable $4C_1$ conformer to the unstable axial-rich $1C_4$ conformer is the key. Because no protective groups for glucose were employed throughout the synthesis of these natural glycosides, the total synthesis was achieved in extremely short overall steps.

Keywords Total synthesis · Natural glycosides · Site selectivity · Organocatalysis · Acylation · Glycosylation

20.1 Introduction

Sugars are involved in a wide range of biochemical pathways [1]. Precise synthesis of the related natural products is essential to elucidate the biological phenomena and to develop pharmaceuticals based on natural products. Because sugars have multiple hydroxy groups and their structures are diversified by the position and the number of substitutions of the hydroxy groups, “distinction of hydroxy groups” is inevitably
the key to their synthesis. Conventionally, protection/deprotection sequence in accordance with the original reactivity of the multiple hydroxy groups has been required for the distinction of them. Although protection/deprotection strategy has already been established as a reliable strategy for the synthesis, it generally leads to complicated synthetic routes and low efficiency for the total synthesis.

Ellagitannin is one of the hydrolyzable tannins containing the general structure of glucose esterified by gallic acid derivatives (Fig. 20.1) [2]. There are more than one thousand natural products contingent on the position and number of modifications by gallic acid derivatives and the mode of oligomerization. Since it has been reported that ellagitannins show various attractive biological activities, such as antiviral and immunostimulatory activity, synthetic studies on ellagitannins have been actively performed [2–4]. The conventional synthesis has been developed based on the protection/deprotection strategy as described above, which led to almost half of the synthetic processes being devoted to protection and deprotection steps (Fig. 20.1, route A).

In contrast to the protection/deprotection strategy, we have planned an unconventional strategy for the synthesis of ellagitannins. An efficient and short-step total synthesis of ellagitannins would be enabled by direct and sequential site-selective functionalization of D-glucose (Fig. 20.1, route B) [5]. The motivation was derived

![Fig. 20.1 Structures of selected examples of ellagitannins and their synthetic strategy](image-url)
from the catalytic site-selective acylation reaction that we had reported in 2007 (Scheme 20.1) [6–8]. With organocatalyst 6, acylation takes place highly selectively at the C(4) of β-D-glucopyranoside. The important point is that the reaction proceeds selectively at an intrinsically less reactive secondary hydroxy group in a catalyst-controlled manner, even in the presence of the primary hydroxy group. Molecular recognition process between the substrate and the catalyst through multiple H-bonding interactions seems to be critically involved in achieving the catalyst-controlled selectivity (Fig. 20.2). We envisioned that the method for the selective functionalization of the desired hydroxy group of the sugar moiety streamlines the synthetic scheme by excluding protection and deprotection steps. Herein we describe our efforts for developing the protocol for the direct functionalization of a particular hydroxy group of glucose. The practical utility of the proposed synthetic strategy was demonstrated by the total syntheses of some ellagitannins.

20.2 Total Synthesis of Strictinin

Strictinin (1) was isolated by Okuda et al. in 1982 from the leaves of Casuarina Stricta (Casuarinaceae) [9, 10] (Scheme 20.2). Here, 1 possesses a galloyl group at C(1)-OH and hexahydroxydiphenoyl (HHDP) group with $S$ axial configuration at C(4)- and C(6)-OH of $\alpha$-glucose. Extensive studies on the biological activities of
Scheme 20.2  Retrosynthetic analysis of strictinin (1), MOM = methoxymethyl

1 indicated the potential utility of 1 for therapeutic applications, including antiallergic and immunostimulating agents [11–18]. Khanbabae [19] and Yamada [20] reported pioneering studies on the total synthesis of 1, focusing on the introduction or construction of HHDP moiety stereoselectively. Our retrosynthetic analysis of 1 based on the sequential site-selective functionalization strategy is described in Scheme 20.2. We expected that oxidative phenol coupling between the galloyl groups at the C(4) and C(6) of 9 would construct the HHDP moiety of 1 with high diastereoselectivity, according to Yamada’s precedent [20]. Coupling precursor 9 was planned to be synthesized by the introduction of two galloyl groups with adequate protective groups at C(4)- and C(6)-OHs into β-glucopyranoside 10 in a catalyst-controlled and substrate-controlled manner, respectively. Stereoselective glycosylation of gallic acid derivative using unprotected glucose would allow us to commence the scheme for the streamlined total synthesis of strictinin (1) without the protection of glucose hydroxy groups.

Investigation for the first step, stereoselective glycosylation of unprotected glucose, was summarized in Table 20.1. In 1979, Grynkiewicz reported that the Mitsunobu reaction of glucose with phenol successfully provided the phenol glycoside (α/β = 1/8) [21]. Referring to the procedure, treatment of glucose and gallic acid derivative with diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD) and triphenylphosphine in N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) provided the desired glycoside in 60% yield (entry 1). However, the α:β ratio was not satisfactory (α/β = 50/50). To improve the stereoselectivity, the effects of solvent were investigated. The reaction using tetrahydrofuran (THF) as a solvent dramatically increased the β-selectivity, while the yield of the glycoside significantly decreased (entry 2, 17% yield, α/β = 1/99). Product analysis indicated that the major side product was 1,6-diacylated product, which was derived from further Mitsunobu reaction at C(6)-OH of the β-glycoside. 1,4-dioxane was found to be the best solvent for our purpose to give the β-glycoside 10 in 64% yield, although glucose was scarcely soluble in 1,4-dioxane (entry 3). Finally, the use of excess amounts of glucose and Mitsunobu reagents improved the reaction yield to provide the glycoside 10 in 78% yield (entry 5).
Table 20.1 Optimization of Mitsunobu glycosylation using glucose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Time (min)</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
<th>α/β</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>DMF</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>50/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>THF</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1/99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>1/99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>1/99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>1/99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glc (3.0 eq.), DIAD (2.0 eq.), and PPh₃ (2.0 eq.) were used
To elucidate the origin of the high stereoselectivity, a mechanistic analysis was performed. To begin with, we did not pay attention to the configuration of the anomeric carbon of commercial glucose. In the course of the mechanistic study, we recognized that commercial d-glucose is supplied as an almost pure α-form in most cases (Fig. 20.3). Selective crystallization of α-anomer of glucose is supposed to take place during the manufacturing of commercial d-glucose [22], although there was no description of the anomeric ratio on the label of the commercial reagent which we had employed at the initial study. To verify the possibility of the inversion of the anomeric stereogenic center, the reactions were performed using partially anomered glucone (Fig. 20.4). Benzylation of α-glucose under Mitsunobu condition in 1,4-dioxane gave the β-glycoside with high stereoselectivity. An increase in the β-anomer content in the starting d-glucose led to an increase in the α-anomer ratio of the product. In addition to these results, the $^{13}$C kinetic isotope effect experiments [23, 24] convinced us that Mitsunobu glycosylation in dioxane proceeds via a direct $S_N2$ mechanism to give the inversion product, while the reaction in DMF gave almost 1:1 mixture of the α- and β-glycoside via an $S_N1$ mechanism [25].

**Fig. 20.3** $^1$H NMR spectrum of commercial D-glucose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>α/β ratio of D-glucose</th>
<th>solvent</th>
<th>yield of 13 (%)</th>
<th>α/β ratio of 13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100 / 0</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>2 / 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78 / 22</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>18 / 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 / 49</td>
<td>1,4-dioxane</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>38 / 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 / 0</td>
<td>DMF</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>48 / 52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 20.4** Analysis of stereochemical course depending on solvents, Bz = benzoyl
We then investigated the second step, the organocatalytic C(4)-OH selective acylation of the β-glycoside 10 (Table 20.2). Acylation of 10 catalyzed by 6 with anhydride 14 under the previously optimized conditions [7, 8] was sluggish to give the desired 4-O-gallate in low yield (entry 1, 18% yield). The use of 2,4,6-collidine as a part of the solvent (CHCl₃/2,4,6-dollidine = 9/1) afforded 15 in a much better yield (entry 2, 83% yield). This is probably because a large amount of collidine contributes to avoiding protonative deactivation of the catalyst by the in situ generated carboxylic acid from anhydride 14, even though the basicity of collidine is significantly lower than that of the catalyst (Fig. 20.5). Finally, the yield of the desired 1,4-digallate was improved to be 91% in a reaction with a substrate concentration of 0.04 M (entry 3).

In the third step, the selective galloylation of the C(6)-OH of 15 was examined (Scheme 20.3). Initially, the third step was not assumed to be difficult because of the intrinsically high reactivity of the primary hydroxy group. However, a considerable amount of examination was required to achieve a satisfactory selectivity. The introduction of a galloyl group to the C(6)-OH was accomplished by treatment with gallic acid derivative 16 and 2-chloro-1,3-dimethylimidazolium chloride (DMC) to give 1,4,6-trigallate 17 in 72% yield. The second and third steps, the introduction of galloyl groups at the C(4)-OH and C(6)-OH, were successfully accomplished in a one-pot procedure through the activation of gallic acid 16, in situ generated from anhydride 15, by the addition of DMC to the reaction medium after the estimated completion of the C(4)-OH acylation (Scheme 20.4). The one-pot transformation was applicable to gram-scale synthesis of the 1,4,6-gallate 17.

Synthetic scheme toward strictinin (1) was summarized in Scheme 5. Based on our original protocol for the sequential site-selective functionalization of glucose, the key intermediate, 1,4,6-trigallate 17, was obtained by only 2 steps from d-glucose. The precursor 18 for the stereoselective oxidative phenol coupling was obtained by hydrogenolytic removal of the Bn groups of 17. On the treatment of 18 with CuCl₂ and butylamine, the oxidative coupling proceeded smoothly to construct the HHDP group with the desired S axial configuration, as expected from Yamada’s report [20]. Finally, global deprotection of MOM groups under acidic conditions provided strictinin (1). By virtue of the sequentially selective modification of glucose –OHs, total synthesis of 1 was achieved in 5 overall steps from d-glucose [26]. The extremely short-step total synthesis stems from avoiding protective groups for glucose.

### 20.3 Total Synthesis of Tellimagrandin II and Pterocarinin C

The sequential site-selective functionalization strategy established for the total synthesis of strictinin (1) was then applied to the synthesis of tellimagrandin II (19) and pterocarinin C (2) (Fig. 20.6). Tellimagrandin II (19) [27], isolated from Tellima grandiflora in 1976 by Wilkins and Bohm, is a 4,6-HHDP-type ellagittannin,
Table 20.2  Optimization of organocatalytic C(4)-OH selective acylation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Temp. (°C)</th>
<th>Conc. (M)</th>
<th>Yield of 15 (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CHCl₃</td>
<td>– 45</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>CHCl₃/collidine (9/1)</td>
<td>– 40</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CHCl₃/collidine (9/1)</td>
<td>– 40</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. 20.5  Regeneration of the active catalyst by proton exchange process between the catalyst and the excess weak base

Scheme 20.3  Site-selective acylation of C(6)-OH of 1,4-digallate 15

Scheme 20.4  One-pot procedure for acylation of C(4)- and C(6)-OHs

Scheme 20.5  Total synthesis of strictinin (1)
showing potent antiviral activity [28, 29]. Pterocarinin C (2) is a regioisomeric natural product of tellimagrandin II, possessing an HHDP group at the C(2)- and C(3)-OHs of glucose. Pterocarinin C (2) was first isolated from the leaves of *Tibouchina semidecandra* by Okuda et al. [30] and reported to show neuroprotective activity [31]. The total syntheses of 19 and 2 were achieved by Feldman [32] and Khambabae [33], respectively. In both cases, protected d-glucose derivatives (20, 21), in which C(4)- and C(6)-OHs are differentiated from C(2)- and C(3)-OHs by proper protective groups, were employed for the total syntheses. In contrast, we envisioned that the application of our strategy for the sequential functionalization of C(1)-OH, C(4)-OH, and C(6)-OH allowed us to accomplish the total syntheses of 19 and 2 by almost the same synthetic scheme without protection of glucose –OHs.

The synthetic schemes of 19 and 2 were described in Scheme 20.6. The β-glycoside 10 was prepared by direct glycosylation of unprotected d-glucose. The differently protected galloyl groups (G²) were introduced at C(4)- and C(6)-OHs in a similar manner for the synthesis of strictinin (1). Introduction of all-MOM-protected galloyl groups (G¹) at C(2)- and C(3)-OHs followed by deprotection of the benzyl groups of G² provided coupling precursor 22. Oxidative HHDP construction and global deprotection of MOM groups gave tellimagrandin II (19) in 6 overall steps. Similarly, the site-selective introduction of G¹ and G² groups into glycoside 10 provided the precursor 23 for the oxidative construction of the 2,3-HHDP group. As we had expected, total synthesis of pterocarinin C (2) was also achieved by the oxidative coupling of 23 and the acidic deprotection of the MOM groups [34].

![Diagram showing structures and retrosynthesis of tellimagrandin II and pterocarinin C](image)

**Fig. 20.6** Structures and retrosynthesis of tellimagrandin II and pterocarinin C
In nature, 19 is proposed to be produced without protective groups by sequential enzymatic reactions (Scheme 20.7a) [35]. β-Glucogallin, derived from enzymatic glycosylation of uridine 5’-diphosphate (UDP)-glucose, is sequentially converted to β-pentagalloyl glucose by several acyltransferases. Surprisingly, site-selective construction of the 4,6-HHDP group from 25 was accomplished by a particular oxidase to furnish tellimagrandin II (19). Unexpectedly, our synthetic scheme became similar to the biosynthetic pathway (Scheme 7b). Direct stereoselective glycosylation of glucose provided the first intermediate, β-glycoside, and the second intermediate, a pentagalloyl glucose derivative, generated by sequential site-selective galloylation of the β-glycoside. The similarity in both synthetic schemes seems to be closely related to the high efficiency of the synthesis.

20.4 Total Synthesis of Cercidinin A

Cercidinin A (3) (Fig. 20.7) was isolated from the fresh bark of Cercidiphyllum japonicum by Nishioka in 1989 [36]. After a revision of the first proposed structure [37], the revised structure 3 with the 3,4-HHDP group was confirmed to be correct through the total synthesis by Yamada’s group [38]. For the synthesis of 3, the differentiation of C(3)- and C(4)-OHs from C(2)- and C(6)-OHs is essential. However, differentiation of the two secondary hydroxy groups at C(2) from at C(3) has never been accomplished so far by our strategy for the sequential site-selective functionalization described above (Scheme 20.8). To synthesize cercidinin A (3), it was necessary to further develop the site-selective acylation strategy.

In the synthesis of strictinin (1), tellimagrandin II (19), and pterocarinin C (2), selective acylation of the primary hydroxy group was accomplished based on its
Scheme 20.7  Comparison between a biosynthetic pathway and b our synthetic route for tellimagrandin II (19)

Fig. 20.7  Structures of cercidinin A and the issue in synthesis

Scheme 20.8  Outline of synthesis of cercidinin A based on sequential site-selective functionalization
intrinsic high reactivity among the three free hydroxy groups of the 1,4-digallate (Scheme 20.3) [26, 34]. Actually, acylation took place selectively on the C(6)-OH simply by using condensation agent DMC. On the other hand, by treatment with acid anhydride 14, 15 underwent preferential acylation at C(3)-OH (Scheme 20.9).

Unexpectedly, under these conditions, the primary C(6)-OH was totally unreactive. The dramatic reactivity change of the three hydroxy groups of the 1,4-digallates may be attributed to the effects of the counteranion of the reactive catalytic intermediate [39–41]. The counteranion of acylpyridinium salts (ArCOO\(^-\)) could possibly form dual H-bonds with C(2)- and C(3)-OHs, resulting in the selective acylation of these hydroxy groups in the presence of the primary C(6)-OH (Fig. 20.8).

Having been able to distinguish the C(2)-OH from C(3)-OH of the 1,4-digallate 15, we worked on the total synthesis of cercidinin A (3) (Scheme 20.10). The oxidative coupling reaction of phenol 28, prepared via galloylation of the free hydroxy groups at C(2) and C(6) of 26 followed by deprotection of the benzyl groups, successfully took place to give coupling product 29 with the desired R configuration as a single diastereomer. However, a serious problem arose during the final deprotection step. Under usual acidic conditions (HCl in i-PrOH/THF), 3 was not obtained because of the degradation of 29 and uncompleted partial deprotection. Under these circumstances, we noticed Sajiki’s report that deprotection of the acid-sensitive protective groups was feasible under the conditions of hydrogenation with Pd/C in MeOH or
According to the report, 29 was subjected to the hydrogenation conditions in CHCl₃/MeOH (1/1) to afford cercidinin A (3) in 63% yield via removal of the MOM groups with minimal degradation of 29. Thus, total synthesis of cercidinin A (3) was also completed without protection of the hydroxy groups of the glucose moiety [43].

**20.5 Total Synthesis of Punicafolin and Macaranganin**

The final targeted natural products in this chapter are punicafolin (5) and macaranganin (30) (Fig. 20.9). Nishioka and co-workers reported the isolation of 5 from the leaves of *Punica granatum* in 1985 [44] and 30 from *Macaranga tanarius* in 1990 [45], respectively. Because of their characteristic 3,6-HHDP bridged structure, the pyranose ring is proposed to be in axial-rich conformation such as 1\(C_4\) conformation. The difference between the two natural products is the configuration of the axial chirality in the HHDP moiety. The \(R\)-isomer 5 shows the inhibitory activity of invasion of HT1080 fibrosarcoma cells [46], while \(S\)-isomer 30 exhibits the inhibitory effect of prolyl endopeptidase [47]. Due to their unique structural features, two challenging issues were identified for the synthesis: differentiation of the hydroxy groups and stereoselective formation of a 3,6-HHDP group with a less stable axial-rich conformer of glucose. Several examples emphasized the difficulties in the construction of the 3,6-HHDP bridge via the flipping process of the pyranose ring [48, 49].

Yamada et al. reported an excellent strategy for the total synthesis of a 3,6-HHDP-type ellagitannin, (−)-corilagin (33) in 2008 (Scheme 20.11) [50]. They overcame the conformational problem by using the ring-opened intermediate 31. After the coupling
reaction of 31, reconstruction of the pyranose ring led to the first total synthesis of 33. Under these backgrounds, we planned to construct the HHDP group directly from a pentagalloylglucose derivative without opening the pyranose ring.

Our retrosynthetic analysis of punicafolin (5) is outlined in Fig. 20.10. We expected that the oxidative phenol coupling reaction of pentagalloylglucose derivative 34 could proceed via an unstable $^1C_4$ conformation. The possibility was already suggested by Yamada in 2017 in the direct oxidative coupling reactions of the related pentagalloylglucose \[51\]. Inspired by the precedents, conformational analysis with molecular mechanics and density functional theory (DFT) calculation of $\beta$-glucose and pentabenzoylglucose was performed. The difference in the potential energy between the $^4C_1$ and $^1C_4$ conformers of $\beta$-glucose was found to be significant. On the other hand, to our surprise, the energy difference between those of pentabenzoylglucose was found to be only 1.0 kcal/mol. Natural bond orbital (NBO) analysis of both stable conformers suggested that the stronger anomeric effects in pentabenzoylglucose contribute to the relatively high stability of the axial-rich $^1C_4$ conformer. The stronger anomeric effects \[52–55\] may result from the lowering of the energy level of the non-bonding $\sigma^*$ orbital of the C(1)-OBz bond by the electron-withdrawing group. Then, we decided to challenge the direct oxidative phenol coupling of the properly protected pentagalloylglucose derivative via the $^4C_1$ to $^1C_4$ ring flipping process of the pyranose ring.

Site-selective acylation of 1,4-digallate 35 with gallic acid anhydride 36 was investigated (Table 20.3). Digallate 35 was prepared by our established protocol including
stereoselective Mitsunobu glycosylation and organocatalytic C(4)-OH acylation. DMAP-catalyzed acylation of 35 took place at the secondary hydroxy groups at the C(2)- and C(3)-OHs, with a slight preference for the C(2)-OH acylation (entry 1). With the expectation that H-bonding interactions between the substrate and catalyst affect the site selectivity [5, 56], the effects of catalyst 6 on the site selectivity of acylation were examined. However, the site selectivity was not improved (entry 2, 57% site selectivity). Then, its diastereomeric catalysts 39, ent-6, and ent-39 were examined to find that acylation catalyzed by 39 exhibited the highest site selectivity (entry 3, 70% site selectivity). To investigate the effects of the side chain of the catalyst, further screening of catalysts 40–42 with the same configuration as that of catalyst 39 was performed (entries 6–8). The highest improvement of the site selectivity was observed in the case of catalyst 42 (entry 8, 75% site selectivity). Finally, treatment of 35 with excess amounts of 36 (2.2 eq.) slightly improved the yield of 2-O-acylate 37 and site selectivity (entry 9, 51% yield of 37, 78% site selectivity).

With pentagalloyl glucose derivative 43 obtained by 2 steps sequence from 37, the challenging oxidative phenol coupling was investigated (Scheme 20.12). When 43 was treated with CuCl2 and butylamine, a standard protocol for the oxidative phenol coupling for the total synthesis of strictinin (1), only decomposition of 43 was observed. We then investigated the effects of the chiral ligands. In 2017, Quideau and Deffieux reported that sparteine acts as an efficient ligand for copper-mediated oxidative phenol coupling [57]. Fortunately, the CuCl2/sparteine system was found to be also effective for our purpose. The 3,6-HHDP bridge was successfully constructed by treatment of 43 with CuCl2 and (+)-sparteine. It is noteworthy that the axial configuration was completely controlled to be R under these conditions. In contrast, the use
Table 20.3  Investigation for the C(2)-OH selective acylation of 1,4-digallate 35

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Catalyst</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
<th>Site selectivity (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>DMAP</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ent-4</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ent-39</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ent-39</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* 2.2 eq) and iPr2NEt (3.0) were used.
of (−)-sparteine instead of (+)-sparteine resulted in the formation of (S)-congener 45 as a single diastereomer. Thus, we developed a method for ligand-controlled stereoselective construction of the 3,6-HHDP bridge via the flipping process of the pyranose ring [58].

Finally, deprotection of the MOM groups under hydrogenation conditions, as in the case of synthesis of cercidinin A (3), provided punicafolin (5) and macaranganin (30) (Scheme 20.13). Development of the catalytic C(2)-OH selective acylation and ligand-controlled stereoselective HHDP construction enabled us to achieve stereodivergent total synthesis of 5 and 30 from the common intermediate 43. Thus, the first total synthesis of complicated natural glycosides punicafolin (5) and macaranganin (30) has been achieved in only 7 steps from D-glucose [59].
20.6 Conclusion

We described our synthetic studies of ellagitannins based on a sequential site-selective functionalization strategy. The catalyst-controlled site-selective acylation led to the proposal of the non-conventional unique strategy. In the course of the studies on the total syntheses, we developed a method for stereoselective glycosylation using unprotected glucose and catalyst-controlled site-selective acylation of the desired position of 1,4-digallate. Although the protection/deprotection process has been considered inevitable for the synthesis of sugar-related compounds, the sequential site-selective functionalization strategy enabled to avoid protective groups for glucose throughout the total synthesis. The proposal of the novel retrosynthetic analysis and its realization in the actual total synthesis of natural products should contribute to the advancement of synthetic organic chemistry toward the dreams of truly protecting-group-free total synthesis.

References


Chapter 21
Synthetic Study of Bio-functional Glycans

Koichi Fukase, Atsushi Shimoyama, and Yoshiyuki Manabe

Abstract  The molecular structures responsible for the immune functions of complex glycans were unraveled by synthetic studies. We focused on developing efficient methods for synthesizing glycans and conducting diverse chemical syntheses of these compounds, to identify the molecular structures responsible for activating or modulating innate immunity. Many natural glycans contain multiple active structures, potentially leading to emergent higher-order functions through their synergistic interactions. Therefore, by employing a conjugation-based approach, we successfully created immune-regulating complex glycoconjugates.

Keywords  Glycan · Glycosylation · Glycoconjugate · Conjugation · Immunity

21.1 Introduction

Glycans play pivotal roles in various biological events, such as intercellular interactions, protein quality control, and activation or modulation of immune responses. They are also closely associated with the onset of many diseases. Natural glycans exhibit structural diversity and heterogeneity, often harboring several recognition sites for various enzymes and lectins. By synthesizing homogeneous oligosaccharides chemically and subjecting them to bioactivity assays, we have contributed to identifying glycan structures responsible for recognition (active units).

In this paper, we describe our synthetic studies on bacterial-derived glycoconjugates that activate or modulate innate immunity, focusing on the immunomodulatory functions in parasite and symbiont-derived lipid A.

We also describe a diacetyl strategy developed for synthesizing NHAc-containing glycans and its application in synthesis of asparagine-linked glycoprotein glycans (N-glycans).

K. Fukase (✉) · A. Shimoyama · Y. Manabe
Department of Chemistry, Graduate School of Science, Osaka University, 1-1 Machikaneyama, Toyonaka 560-0043, Osaka, Japan
e-mail: koichi@chem.sci.osaka-u.ac.jp

© The Author(s) 2024
M. Nakada et al. (eds.), Modern Natural Product Synthesis, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-97-1619-7_21
Many natural glycans have multiple units responsible for recognition, facilitating the manifestation of higher-order functions through various unit actions, including multivalent interactions. Consequently, combining these active units enables the creation of higher-order functional molecules. Successful generation of new immunomodulatory compounds was achieved by conjugating synthetic glycans and glycan dendrimers.

21.2 Development of Innate Immune Regulatory Molecules Based on Host-Bacteria Interactions and Their Application as Novel Adjuvants

We have been investigating the synthesis of immunostimulatory glycoconjugates derived from bacteria, such as bacterial cell wall peptidoglycans and lipopolysaccharides (LPS) from gram negative bacteria, to elucidate the mechanism of action in innate immunity [1, 2].

In canonical Escherichia coli LPS, the lipid A portion 1 (Fig. 21.1) binds to the Toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4)-myeloid differentiation factor 2 (MD2) complex, activating multiple downstream pathways, including two primary pathways alongside the caspase pathway, thereby activating the acquired immune system [3]. However, this activation also leads to toxic effects, such as lethal inflammation, due to its potent inflammatory activity. Extensive structure–activity relationship studies, including those conducted by our group, led to the discovery that mono-phosphoryl lipid A (MPL) including 2 and 3 exhibit mild immune-potentiating effects with low toxicity [4–6]. The 3D-MPL 3 developed by GlaxoSmithKline has proven effective as an adjuvant (a substance that enhances the efficacy of vaccines) for viral vaccines [6] and has been utilized in several vaccines in practical applications [7, 8]. Meanwhile, the development of mucosal vaccines capable of efficiently inducing immunity at the mucosal entry points of pathogens has been underway. However, MPL does not activate mucosal immunity, leaving the exploration of safe adjuvants for mucosal vaccines unexplored.

Therefore, we focused on bacteria that inhabit or parasitize mucosal tissues such as the oral cavity, stomach, and intestines. We hypothesized that these bacteria express molecules possessing immunomodulatory effects due to co-evolution with the host. By synthesizing lipid A and LPS partial structures from symbiotic and parasitic bacteria, we demonstrated that these structures exhibit characteristic immune-enhancing or immunomodulatory effects with low toxicity.

Parasitic bacteria such as Helicobacter pylori, associated with gastric ulcers, and the periodontal pathogen Porphyromonas gingivalis possess characteristic lipid A structures, which differ from the canonical E. coli lipid A 1 (Fig. 21.1). They contain longer chain fatty acids but in smaller numbers compared to E. coli lipid A, and mono-phosphoryl lipid A structures, some of which are ethanolamine modified. We developed a diversity-oriented synthetic strategy (Fig. 21.2), in which fatty acids
are introduced sequentially to the common synthetic precursor, to synthesize ten structural variations of lipid A and Kdo-lipid A 4–10 [9, 10].

For the α-selective glycosylation reaction of Kdo, we devised Kdo donor 13 wherein the 6-membered ring was constrained into a boat-like conformation to promote the glycosyl acceptor’s attack from the α-orientation (Fig. 21.2) [9, 11]. However, the β-elimination reaction considerably occurred, leading to formation of glycal 17 due to the distortion of the 6-membered ring in the boat-like conformation. Efficient mixing using a microflow reactor promoted intermolecular glycosylation reactions and suppressed glycal formation to afford trisaccharide 16 in good yields (Fig. 21.3).

These compounds did not exhibited potent inflammatory effects; Kdo-lipid A 6a and 6b were found to act as an antagonist of TLR4-MD2, whereas ethanol amine modified lipid A 4b and 5b showed weak agonistic activity. These results revealed that Kdo-lipid A 6a and 6b plays an essential role in H. pylori LPS, contrary to the
conventional understanding that lipid A is the active component of LPS. These results suggest that LPS derived from parasitic bacteria contributes to evading the bactericidal effects caused by acute inflammation. Conversely, all compounds induced the production of IL-18, associated with chronic inflammation. This highlights the importance of parasitic bacterial LPS as a molecule regulating host immune responses and suggests its involvement in chronic inflammation while circumventing acute inflammation.

\textit{Alcaligenes faecalis}, known as an opportunistic Gram negative bacterium, was found to inhabit the gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) known as Peyer’s patches, playing a crucial role in maintaining homeostasis. In collaboration with Kiyono and Kunisawa, we extracted LPS fractions from dried \textit{A. faecalis} and found that \textit{A. faecalis} LPS fraction exhibited no harmful effects but significantly promoted the production of IgA antibodies comparable to the toxic \textit{E. coli} LPS \cite{12}. Given that these effects were TLR4-dependent, \textit{A. faecalis} lipid A was anticipated as a
promising and safe adjuvant candidate. We then determined the structure of the *A. faecalis* LPS in collaboration with Molinaro and Di Lorenzo. We also found that the lipid A from *A. faecalis* is a mixture comprising compounds 18–20 with 4–6 fatty acid chains [13] (Fig. 21.4).

We designed the key disaccharide intermediate 14 with orthogonal protecting group patterns applicable to various lipid A syntheses with different acyl patterns and established a diversity-oriented strategy for lipid A synthesis (Fig. 21.5). Each protecting group of disaccharide intermediate 14, 1-0-allyl, 2-N-allyloxycarbonyl (Alloc), 2′-N-2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl (Troc), 3′-0-p-methoxybenzyl (MPM), and 4′,6′-benzylidene, could be selectively removed to sequentially introduce acyl and phosphate groups at appropriate positions. Figure 21.5 illustrates a detailed synthetic scheme of *A. faecalis* lipid A 20 starting from intermediate 14. Fatty acid 21 was introduced at the 3-position of 14 in the presence of MNBA to obtain 22. Subsequently, removal of the 2′-N-Troc group of 22 using Zn-Cu couple, followed by acylation of the free amino group with fatty acid 23 using MNBA, was performed. Next, removal of the 2-N-Alloc group of 24 using Pd(PPh₃)₄ and TMSDMA, followed by the introduction of fatty acid 25 to the free 2-amino group using HATU, yielded 26. After cleaving the 3-position MPM group via oxidation with 2,3-dichloro-5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone (DDQ), fatty acid 27 was introduced using MNBA to obtain 28. Subsequently, removal of the 4′,6′-O-benzylidene group of 28 using trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) followed by the selective introduction of a trityl (Tr) group at the 6′-position was conducted. Then, removal of the 1-O-allyl group of 29 led to the formation of 1,4′-dihydroxy 30. Simultaneous phosphitylation of the 1- and 4′-positions using phosphoramidite followed by DMDO oxidation yielded the desired 1,4′-O-diphosphate 31. Finally, all benzyl-type protecting groups were removed by catalytic hydrogenolysis to give *A. faecalis* lipid A 20 [13].

Among the synthesized compounds, only the hexa-acylated *A. faecalis* lipid A 20 exhibited immune-activating activity. Confirming its similarity to the extracted *A. faecalis* LPS, it was verified that *A. faecalis* lipid A 20 opposed the activity of *A. faecalis* LPS. Further in vivo experiments using mice demonstrated that *A. faecalis*
lipid A 20 exhibited useful adjuvant effects without toxicity, enhancing antigen-specific IgA and IgG production and reinforcing defensive immunity via Th17 [13–17]. Particularly, enhanced antigen-specific IgA and IgG production was observed in mice administered with antigen and A. faecalis lipid A 20 adjuvant via intranasal administration. The effectiveness of 20 as a safe intranasal vaccine adjuvant was demonstrated in a pneumococcal infection model [15]. Lipid A 20 is anticipated to be a safe and promising adjuvant capable of activating mucosal and systemic immunity.

### 21.3 Synthetic Studies of Sialylated N-glycans by Diacetyl Strategy

Asparagine-linked (N-linked) glycans in glycoproteins (N-glycans) are oligosaccharides present in both eukaryotes and some prokaryotes with a wide range of structural variations. These glycans fall into three primary categories: high-mannose type, complex type, and hybrid type. Even within specific glycosylation sites, N-glycans typically display considerable heterogeneity. Complex N-glycans hold pivotal roles in diverse biological mechanisms and diseases, influencing glycoprotein dynamics, cell development, immune responses, and the progression of cancer invasion.

We developed a diacetyl strategy by temporarily converting NHAc to diacetyl imide (NAC2) for the synthesis of acetamide (NHAc) containing glycans [18], since protected glycans containing NHAc tend to form intermolecular hydrogen bonds...
in organic solvents, greatly reducing the reactivity of glycosylation. The diacetyl strategy presents two advantages for oligosaccharide synthesis. The NAc₂ protection of NHAc substantially enhances glycosylation reactions, resulting in increased yields. Moreover, NAc₂ can be readily converted to NHAc by removing one acetyl group under mild basic conditions.

The disialylated tetrasaccharide (Neu5Ac(α<sub>2,3</sub>)Gal(β<sub>1,3</sub>)[Neu5Ac(α<sub>2,6</sub>)GlcNAc), a structural motif present in the N-glycans of human Factor X and fetuin, was successfully synthesized using the diacetyl strategy [19]. The impact of NAc₂ was immense (Fig. 21.6). Glycosylation reactions between two sialyl disaccharides 32 and 33 with NHAc at the C5 position of sialic acid residues did not progress at all. However, the reactivity of NAc₂-protected sialyl fragments 35 and 36 significantly improved, resulting in the quantitative formation of the desired tetrasaccharide 37.

We then describe the synthesis of a core fucose-containing disialylated N-glycan, and two asymmetrically deuterated sialyl N-glycans, wherein one of the terminal sialic acids has been deuterium-labeled by replacing its NHAc.

We utilized the diacetyl strategy in synthesizing the non-reducing-end tetrasaccharide within the core-fucosylated N-glycan [20] (Fig. 21.7). Glycosylation of the NAc₂-protected sialylated disaccharide donor 39 with the disaccharide acceptor 40 proceeded rapidly at 0 °C, yielding the desired tetrasaccharide 42 at 96% yield. In contrast, glycosylation between the NHAc-containing sialyl disaccharide donor 38 and the disaccharide acceptor 40 only afforded the desired tetrasaccharide 41 at 52% yield, even after increasing the temperature to room temperature.

Another pivotal aspect in synthesizing the core fucose-containing glycan was the solvent selection for the glycosylation process between the reducing-end tetrasaccharide 42 and the non-reducing-end tetrasaccharide 43. Using ether-based solvents, particularly cyclopentyl methyl ether (CPME), yielded the targeted octasaccharide 44 at a 91% yield. The employment of ether solvents likely prolonged the stability of the intermediate oxocarbenium ion through coordination, albeit with a moderate stereoselectivity in glycosylation (α/β = 3/1). After removing the benzylidene group from the obtained octasaccharide, the α-isomer 45 was separated. Subsequent glycosylation at the 6th position of the branched mannose in 45 displayed a high yield of the desired product 46 when CPME was used as the solvent. However, α/β selectivity remained poor, resulting in a 1/1 mixture for compound 46. The global deprotection
Fig. 21.7 Synthesis of core-fucosylated N-glycan
of 46 was then investigated. The allyl ester in 46 was cleaved using a Pd catalyst. The resulting carboxylic acid was then treated with aqueous LiOH to remove Troc, acyl groups, and methyl esters, and subsequent N-acetylation and separation of the α and β anomers by HPLC afforded 47. All benzyl-type protecting groups were removed by catalytic hydrogenolysis, resulting in the core fucose-containing N-glycan 48.

Next, we applied the diacetyl strategy to the synthesis of two asymmetrically deuterated sialyl N-glycans, 58 and 59 (Fig. 21.8) [21]. Using the deuterium-labeled N-glycan 58, we demonstrated the preferential cleavage of sialic acid on the α1,3 branch over the α1,6 branch by neuraminidase derived from the H1N1 influenza virus [22].

In the synthesis of deuterated N-glycans 58 and 59, glycosylation was initially performed at the 3-position of the branching mannose in trisaccharide 51 using sialyl

\[
\text{Fig. 21.8  Synthesis of asymmetrically deuterium-labeled biantennary N-glycans}
\]
tetrasaccharides 49 or 50. Subsequently, glycosylation occurred at the 6-position of the branching mannose. We applied the remote participation method, previously described by Kim et al., for α-mannosylation. This technique involves acyl protection of the mannosyl donors at the O-3 and O-6 positions to enhance α-selectivity (Fig. 21.9).

Ether solvent effect was also used in the glycosylation between 49 and 51. Using a stoichiometric amount of TMSOTf in Et2O, the desired heptasaccharide 52 was obtained in 71% yield with perfect α-selectivity. After removal of benzylidene in 52, the glycosylation of the resulting 54 with the azide sialyl tetrasaccharide 50 was then investigated. Due to the poor solubility of 54 in Et2O, the [7 + 4] glycosylation between 54 and 50 was conducted in a mixed solvent system of Et2O/CH2Cl2 = 1/1. The desired undecasaccharide 56 was thus obtained in 85% yield with perfect α-selectivity.

Glycosylation of the azide-containing sialyl tetrasaccharide 50 with 51 was also carried out in Et2O. The subsequent deprotection of benzylidene in 53 afforded 55 in good yield. Glycosylation between 55 and 49 under similar conditions afforded 57 in 54% yield (BRSM: 63%).

The desired deuterated N-glycans, 58 and 59, were synthesized from 56 and 57 through the incorporation of a deuterated acetyl group, followed by a global deprotection process. During the alkaline treatment to eliminate acyl and Troc groups, a deuterium-hydrogen exchange occurred to cause a reduction in the deuterium ratio of 58–42% and that of 59–63%, respectively.

Within naturally occurring N-glycans, the tetrasialylated N-glycan holds significance in assessing the effects of multivalency. The fully sialylated tetraantennary N-glycan 64 was synthesized by a similar approach to that of 58 and 59 (Fig. 21.10) [21]. The glycosylation between trisaccharide 51 and the heptasaccharide donor 60, in a mixed solvent of Et2O/CH2Cl2 = 1/1, gave the desired decasaccharide with complete α-selectivity. Subsequent cleavage of the benzylidene group led to a 33% yield of 61 (BRSM: 49%) in two steps. The choice of Lewis acid, solvent, and temperature played a pivotal role in the subsequent glycosidation between decasaccharide 61 and heptasaccharide donor 62. Glycosylation of 61 and 62 was accomplished using TBDPSOTf at 0 °C in a high-ether ratio mixed solvent (Et2O/CH2Cl2 = 5/1), resulting in a 36% yield of compound 63. Upon the deprotection of 63 and Fmoc introduction, the fully sialylated tetraantennary N-glycan 64 was obtained.
As described above, the utilization of the diacetyl strategy led to the successful synthesis of various sialyl N-glycans, marking the world’s first chemical synthesis of a tetraantennary sialyl N-glycan.

### 21.4 Synthesis of Glycan Dendrimers and Their Applications to Biofunctional Studies

The interaction between glycans and glycan-binding proteins is typically weak, except for certain innate immune receptors. Polysaccharides and numerous glycans found on cell surfaces possess multiple binding sites, playing a role in multivalent interactions between glycans and glycan-binding molecules like lectins. This represents a pivotal aspect of glycan function, where high avidity and significant selectivity are achieved through multivalent interactions. Consequently, there have been a growing interest in developing multivalent glycan complexes containing multiple glycans, capable of reconstructing multivalent interactions and demonstrating strong avidity towards receptors. Various platforms, including polymers,
nanoparticles, liposomes, self-assembled materials, oligovalent scaffolds (such as calixarenes, cyclodextrins, and cyclopeptides), and dendrimers, have been employed to achieve multivalency.

Dendrimers, especially, offer uniform assemblies of glycans. We found that histidine facilitates Cu(I)-mediated Huisgen 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition [22, 23]. By incorporating the \( N^{Im} \)-benzylhistidine residue into the peptide substrate, we achieved an efficient ‘self-activating’ click reaction between azide and alkyne-containing peptides, yielding an almost quantitative reaction. Using this ‘self-activating’ click reaction [22] (Fig. 21.11), we synthesized diverse glycodendrimers [24–29].

We successfully synthesized glycodendrimers comprising biantennary type \( N \)-glycans, encompassing 16 molecules on a polylysine core [24]. The self-activating click reaction proceeded almost quantitatively, and subsequent labeling via \( \sigma \pi \) azaelectrocyclization afforded PET probes \( 70a, 71a, 72a \) and fluorescent probes \( 70b, 71b, 72b \). Employing positron emission tomography (PET) and fluorescence imaging of sialylated and asialylated \( N \)-glycan dendrimers, we visualized the sialic acid-dependent circulation and retention in vivo (Fig. 21.12).

Multivalency plays a crucial role in pathogen recognition of host cells, facilitating strong adhesion of pathogens to these cells. In the pursuit of developing inhibitors to prevent pathogenic infections, there have been reports of synthesizing numerous glycan clusters exhibiting multivalent effects. Using the self-activating click chemistry method developed by our group, we synthesized antipathogenic glycodendrimers [28]. The remarkable reactivity of this method enabled the efficient preparation of dendrimers containing anti-influenza sialyl trisaccharide \( 75 \) (Fig. 21.13) or Gb3 trisaccharide \( 79 \) (Fig. 21.14). These dendrimers exhibited strong avidity toward hemagglutinin on the influenza virus and the Shiga toxin B subunit, respectively. These glycodendrimers are anticipated to be effective antipathogenic compounds.

We synthesized 16-mer B-antigen-displaying dendrimers \( 88, 89, \) and \( 90 \) of various sizes and assessed their interaction with \( IgM \) antibodies to explore the critical factors influencing effective multivalency [29]. Surprisingly, even the smallest dendrimer \( 88 \), unable to fully occupy \( IgM \)’s multiple binding sites, demonstrated distinct multivalent behavior with affinity levels comparable to or surpassing those of larger dendrimers \( 89 \) and \( 90 \). These findings highlight the significance of the statistical rebinding model, suggesting that the rapid exchange of clustered glycans significantly contributes to glycodendrimers’ multivalent interactions. This indicates that high-density glycan

Fig. 21.11 Self-activating click reaction
presentation for enhanced statistical rebinding is crucial for multivalent interaction. This contrasts with the prevailing emphasis on the chelation model. Consequently, our study offers novel insights and essential guidelines for crafting glycodendrimers at a molecular level (Fig. 21.15).
The majority of animals possess α-gal, an antigenic glycan that is absent in old world monkeys, apes, and humans. Instead, these primates possess a substantial amount of natural anti-Gal antibodies against α-gal. Consequently, α-gal can trigger intense immune reactions in these primates. We engineered a conjugation of α-gal with anti-tumor antibody anti-CD20 or its half-antibody (hAb) [27]. These conjugated antibodies recognized cancer cells, recruiting anti-Gal antibodies to these cells, thereby initiating an additional immune response from the anti-Gal antibodies. α-Gal and dendrimerized α-gal conjugates were conjugated with the hAb to obtain α-gal-hAb conjugates, and while the hAb exhibited almost no complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), the α-gal-hAb conjugates exhibited stronger CDC,
Fig. 21.16 Synthesis of conjugates of α-gal dendrimers with half-antibody and their complement-dependent cytotoxicity

dependent on the amount of introduced glycans (Fig. 21.16). This approach shows promise in reducing antibody dosages and revitalizing antibodies with insufficient activity.

21.5 Conclusion

The chemical synthesis of A. faecalis lipid A has unveiled its capacity to modulate immune signals; it efficiently activates the immune system without triggering excessive inflammation, and effectively induce IgA for mucosal immunity and IgG for systemic immunity, making it an exceptional vaccine adjuvant.

Sialic acid-containing N-glycans were synthesized successfully using the diacetyl strategy. Our study, employing asymmetrically deuterium-labeled biantennary N-glycans, revealed the H1N1 neuraminidase’s preference for cleaving the sialic acid residue in the α1,3 branch of the biantennary N-glycan. We have been advancing the mechanistic analysis of immune regulation by N-glycans [30–33].

We successfully synthesized glycan dendrimers using self-activating click reactions. The complexes formed between the natural antibody ligand, α-gal dendrimers, and the anti-tumor antibody CD20 exhibited significant complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) activity.
In conclusion, our endeavors in chemical synthesis have resulted in the creation of molecules capable of modulating the immune system.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Chapter 22
Total Synthesis of a Marine Bromotriterpenoid Isodehydrothyrsiferol

Keisuke Nishikawa and Yoshiki Morimoto

Abstract  The thyrsiferol family natural products are marine triterpene polyethers biogenetically derived from squalene and structurally characterized by a bromine atom and some six- and five-membered ethereal rings. Their stereostructures cannot easily be determined by modern spectroscopic analysis, because there are acyclic tetrasubstituted chiral centers and the remote stereoclusters. In these cases, asymmetric total synthesis demonstrates its power. Herein, to determine the entire stereostructure of the thyrsiferol family member isodehydrothyrsiferol, isolated from the red alga Laurencia viridis, the asymmetric total synthesis has been performed. The key steps are the convergent and effective synthetic strategy using a Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling, a one-pot construction of the tetrahydropyranyl C ring via a stoichiometric Katsuki-Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation and 6-exo oxacyclization in situ promoted by Ti chelation, and 6-endo bromoetherification for the A ring formation. Through the enantioselective total synthesis, we have accomplished complete assignment of the entire stereostructure for isodehydrothyrsiferol and found the absolute configuration of the ABC ring system is opposite to that common to the other congeners from the same red algae. In addition, such enantiodivergency also occurred between dehydrothyrsiferol and isodehydrothyrsiferol originating from the identical red alga Laurencia viridis. There are no these findings without asymmetric total synthesis.

Keyword  Bromotriterpenoid · Stereostructure elucidation · Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling · 6-exo oxacyclization · 6-endo bromoetherification · Phenomenon of enantiodivergence

K. Nishikawa · Y. Morimoto (✉)
Department of Chemistry, Graduate School of Science, Osaka Metropolitan University, 3-3-138 Sugimoto, Sumiyoshi-ku, Osaka 558-8585, Japan
e-mail: yoshiki@omu.ac.jp

© The Author(s) 2024
M. Nakada et al. (eds.), Modern Natural Product Synthesis,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-97-1619-7_22
22.1 Introduction

Marine red algae of the genus *Laurencia* have produced the thyrsiferol family natural products, triterpene polyethers biogenetically derived from squalene, and the family possess a variety of biological activities [1]. In 1978, Munro group isolated the first member thyrsiferol (1) from *Laurencia thyrsifera* [2], and afterward, dehydrothyrsiferol (2) [3], thyrsiferyl 23-acetate (3) [4], venustatriol (4) [5], (Fig. 22.1) and total about 30 congeners have been reported so far [6]. These compounds show eminent growth inhibitory activities on P388 murine leukemia cell lines (IC$_{50}$ = 0.47–17 nM) [1]. The structures 1–4 have been determined based on NMR spectroscopy, X-ray crystallography, and chemical conversion, and have a bromine-bearing tetrahydropyran (THP) ring attached to C7 of a dioxabicyclo[4.4.0]decane framework (ABC ring system), common to the thyrsiferol family, and various alkyl substituents at C14. In the THP C ring, a twist-boat form was observed due to undesirable steric repulsion by C10- and C14-substituents in the chair conformation. The absolute configuration of 4 could successfully be elucidated by X-ray analysis; however, the relative and absolute configurations of the thyrsiferol family cannot easily be determined even by modern spectroscopic analysis, because there are acyclic tetrasubstituted chiral centers (red arrows) and the remote relationship between the stereoclusters ABC and D ring moieties. These examples show the limitations in modern NMR technology for the structure determination of complex natural products. In these cases, asymmetric total synthesis demonstrates its power [7, 8].

![Fig. 22.1 Structures of the representative thyrsiferol family 1–4 and isodehydrothyrsiferol](image)

---

These unique structures and prominent biological properties, combined with the entire stereostructure elucidation, have promoted studies on total synthesis of the thyrsiferol family by the synthetic community. The first total syntheses of thyrsiferol and venustatriol were achieved by Shirahama and co-workers in 1988 [9–11], and subsequently Corey and Ha reported the total synthesis of venustatriol [12]. The absolute configuration of thyrsiferol (1) was determined by the asymmetric total synthesis of 1 by Shirahama et al., resulting in determination of the absolute configuration of dehydrothyrsiferol (2) which had chemically been converted into 1 [3]. Shirahama et al. have also reported the chemical synthesis and the absolute stereochemistry of thyrsiferyl 23-acetate (3) (IC$_{50}$ = 0.47 nM on P388 cells), an inhibitor of serine/threonine protein phosphatase 2A [13], in 1988 [11, 14]. In 2000, the total syntheses of 1 and 3 have been reported by González and Forsyth [15, 16].

In 1996, Norte and co-workers reported a minor metabolite isodehydrothyrsiferol isolated from acetone extracts of Laurencia viridis, together with a major constituent dehydrothyrsiferol (2) [17, 18]. The compound exhibits cytotoxic activity with IC$_{50}$ = 17 nM on P388 cells. The NMR analysis revealed the stereostructure of the ABC skeleton common to the thyrsiferol family and the relative configuration around the D ring moiety, but the relative configuration between the remote stereocenters ABC and D moieties and the absolute stereochemistry of the compound remained undetermined. The structure of 5a represents one of possible stereostructures for isodehydrothyrsiferol. Although the absolute stereostructure of the ABC skeleton of isodehydrothyrsiferol was deduced to be of course the same as that of 2, there was no experimental evidence. Thus, we planned to determine the entire stereostructure of isodehydrothyrsiferol through the asymmetric total synthesis.

### 22.2 First Generation Retrosynthetic Analysis

The retrosynthetic analysis of isodehydrothyrsiferol is shown in Scheme 22.1. The disconnection at the C15–C16 bond predicted a convergent and effective strategy, wherein the ABC skeleton 6 and a borane unit 7 or its enantiomer ent-7 are linked using a cross-coupling reaction developed by Suzuki and Miyaura [19], due to the undetermined relative configuration between both segments. The A ring of 6 could be formed by challenging 6-endo bromoetherification of bishomoallylic alcohol 8. The fused BC ring skeleton of 6 would be constructed from triene 9 via two 6-exo oxacyclizations of trishomoallylic epoxy alcohols. The triene 9 was disconnected to geranyl phenyl sulfide (11) and terminal epoxide 10, which would be prepared from commercially available methyl tiglate (13) via epoxy alcohol 12. The coupling partner D ring 7 could be derived from commercially available geranyl acetate (15) through 6-endo oxacyclization of epoxy alcohol 14.
Scheme 22.1 First generation retrosynthetic analysis of isodehydrothyrsiferol. TES = triethylsilyl, TBS = t-butyldimethylsilyl, Piv = pivaloyl, MOM = methoxymethyl
22.3 Toward Construction of the ABC Skeleton

First, the synthesis of the ABC skeleton 6 was begun according to the aforementioned retrosynthetic analysis. The known diester 17 [20] was prepared by homocoupling of silyl ketene acetal 16, which was obtained from commercially available methyl tiglate (13) by dienolate formation and the trapping with TMSCl, with TiCl4 (Scheme 22.2). TBS protection of the known diol 18 [21] transformed by reduction of diester 17 afforded the desired monosilyl ether 19a along with recovered 18 and disilyl ether 19b, which was returned to diol 18. A catalytic Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation [24] of 19a provided the known epoxy alcohol 12 [22, 23] in 90% yield (98% ee). A Ti(Oi-Pr)4-mediated epoxide-opening reaction [25] of 2,3-epoxy alcohol 12 regio- and stereoselectively gave pivalate 20, which was converted into epoxide 10. The lithiation of geranyl phenyl sulfide (11) [22], which was prepared from commercially available geraniol [26], and addition of epoxide 10 to the anion yielded sulfide 21 as a diastereomeric mixture at C8. The resulting sulfide 21 was reduced to 22 with metallic sodium [11], and the diol 22 was treated with triethylsilyl chloride to selectively afford TES-protected 9.

The Sharpless oxidation of hydroxy alkene 9 found by Shirahama et al. provided epoxy alcohol 23 in a diastereoselective manner [27] via more stable transition state B rather than more unstable transition state A suffering from an allylic 1,3-strain [28]. MOM protection of 23 and subsequent deprotection of all silyl ethers gave hydroxy epoxide 24, which was subjected to basic conditions to furnish the desirable tetrahydropyranyl B ring 25 in 83% yield and a 6-exo selective manner. After deprotection of the MOM group, the allylic alcohol 26 was treated with a stoichiometric Katsuki-Sharpless conditions [29] at a low temperature and then the temperature was stepwise raised to room temperature and reflux, successfully constructing the THP C ring, that adopts a twist-boat conformation, through titanium-assisted 6-exo oxacyclization such as C [11, 25]. When this reaction was catalytically performed, the starting material 26 was not completely consumed to furnish a low yield of 27 together with recovered 26 and an epoxy alcohol intermediate corresponding to C. Oxidative cleavage of the vicinal diol 27 afforded ketone 8, and after constructing the A ring, we attempted to confirm the stereostructure of the expected product 28, an authentic sample reported by Shirahama et al. [11].

Upon subjection of bishomoallylic alcohol 8 to the optimal conditions (NBS in HFIP) [30], the desired 6-endo bromoetherification proceeded, but epimerization at C14 also occurred under the conditions, giving 14-epi-28 as the product. Our synthetic compound 14-epi-28 with C14-H at 4.07 ppm (dd, J = 12.1, 3.0 Hz) was not identical to the reported data of 28 with C14-H at 3.99 ppm (dd, J = 6.6, 2.2 Hz). The unfavorable 1,3-diaxial interaction in 28 would lead to the epimerization at C14 under our conditions, employing a polar and protic solvent HFIP (pKa = 9.3) [31]. This process occurs through an enol intermediate 29, resulting in the formation of 14-epi-28, where such interaction is absent (Fig. 22.2). Thus, it was found that the ketone α-C14-H of the THP C ring tends to easily epimerize in the 6-endo bromoetherification and the bromination yield is low; therefore, we decided to carry out the A ring formation at a final stage of the total synthesis.
Scheme 22.2 Attempt to synthesize ABC ring system 28. LDA = lithium diisopropylamide, THF = tetrahydrofuran, TMS = trimethylsilyl, rsm = recovered starting material, TBHP = t-butyl hydroperoxide, DET = diethyl tartrate, MS = molecular sieves, ee = enantiomeric excess, Ms = methanesulfonyl, TMEDA = N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylenediamine, acac = acetylacetonate, TBAF = tetrabutylammonium fluoride, DMSO = dimethyl sulfoxide, NBS = N-bromosuccinimide, HFIP = 1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoro-2-propanol

Fig. 22.2 Possible mechanism for epimerization at C14
22.4 Second Generation Retrosynthetic Analysis and Synthesis of BC Ring System

The second generation retrosynthetic analysis of isodehydrothyrsiferol is depicted in Scheme 22.3. The bromoetherification of hydroxy alkene 30 would finally form the bromine-containing tetrahydropyranyl ring. The bond formation between C15 and C16 would convergently produce the penultimate via a cross-coupling reaction by Suzuki and Miyaura using enol phosphate 31a or enol triflate 31b and borane 7 or ent-7. Practically, enol phosphate 31a and enol triflate 31b were derived from ketone 8 via kinetic enolate formation followed by phosphorylation and trifluoromethanesulfonfylolation [32], respectively, after MOM protection of 8.

22.5 Synthesis of D Ring

The synthesis of alkene 39 required as a precursor of borane 7, a cross-coupling partner for 31, began with Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation [33, 34] of commercially available geranyl acetate (15) with AD-mix-β to afford the known diol 33 [35] in 93% yield and 98% ee (Scheme 22.4). Selective TES protection of the secondary hydroxy group and subsequent MOM protection provided acetate 34, and after deacetylation of 34 the resulting allylic alcohol was treated with catalytic Sharpless oxidation conditions to yield epoxy alcohol 35. Parikh-Doering oxidation [36] of alcohol 35, Wittig olefination of aldehyde 36, and removal of the TES ether gave bishomoallylic epoxide 14, which was utilized in the next reaction without purification because of the instability. According to the reaction conditions of the 6-endo selective cyclization in a vinylic epoxide substrate similar to 14 reported by Hioki and co-workers [37], the crude vinylic epoxide 14 was treated with CSA in CH2Cl2 at –78 °C to furnish the desired 6-endo THP 38a in 61% yield over 2 steps in addition to byproduct 38b. After chromatographic separation of products 38a and 38b, MOM ether 38a was deprotected and the diol was reprotected as a TES ether to afford the desirable alkene 39.

22.6 Examination of the Suzuki–Miyaura Cross-Coupling

First, we tried to investigate the conditions for Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling using manageable and stable enol phosphate 31a [38]. The results are given in Table 22.1. The coupling reaction between phosphate 31a and borane 7, which was in situ generated form alkene 39 with a large excess of 9-BBN [39], was carried out using Pd(PPh3)4 catalyst to only afford a complex mixture including the starting material 31a (entry 1). The addition of Ph3As gave the same result (entry 2). Since it seemed that the starting material 31a remained in the complex mixture, we felt the
Scheme 22.3  Second generation retrosynthetic analysis of isodehydrothyrsiferol and synthesis of BC ring system 31. LHMDS = lithium hexamethyldisilazide, Tf = trifluoromethanesulfonyl
Scheme 22.4 Synthesis of D ring 39. CSA = camphorsulfonic acid, DMAP = \(N,N\)-dimethyl-4-aminopyridine
oxidative addition to enol phosphate 31a did not occur. Although we used Pt-Bu3 and Bu3P as more electron donating ligands and increased an amount of Pd catalysts, the same results were obtained (entries 3–6). Further the reaction temperature was elevated, but there was no effect (entries 7–9). Therefore, we decided to perform the coupling reaction using intractable but more reactive enol triflate 31b.

The results using enol triflate 31b are indicated in Table 22.2. Although three kinds of Pd catalysts were tested in the presence of Cs2CO3 at room temperature, a complex mixture was only obtained (entries 1–3). Considering the instability of enol triflate 31b, crude 31b without purification was used but the results were not improved (entries 4 and 5). Referring to Jamison’s conditions [40] in the similar cross-coupling, we conducted the reaction with 30 mol% of Pd(dppf)Cl2 at 50 °C once again and were very much delighted to be able to obtain the desired coupling product 40 despite a low yield (entry 6). To increase the stability of the palladium catalyst in the reaction system [19], lithium bromide was added to the reaction and consequently the increase of the yield was observed (entry 7). The addition of lithium chloride further increased the yield (entry 8). For the purpose of inhibiting reductive detriflation of 31b, in addition to lithium chloride triphenylarsine [41] was also added to provide the coupling product 40 in 66% yield (entry 9). Thus, we could find the optimized conditions for the Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling of triflate 31b and borane 7.

22.7 Examination of 6-endo Bromoetherification and Synthesis of the Target Structure 5a

For final construction of the bromine-containing tetrahydropyranyl ring, MOM and two TES groups of the coupling product 40 were deprotected with a Brønsted acid to yield triol 30 (Scheme 22.5). In previous total syntheses of the thyrsiferol family, all the construction of the A ring has been carried out by bromoetherification (TBCO in MeNO2) of bishomoallylic alcohols such as 30 [11, 12, 16]. In those reactions, major products were undesirable 5-exo-cyclized THFs and the desired 6-endo THPs were minor products. Therefore, we investigated the bromoetherification reaction using synthetic intermediate 27 before the final step.

The results are indicated in Table 22.3. The same conditions as those used for 8 afforded 13% yield of the desired 6-endo THP 41a along with a mixture of 5-exo THFs 41b and 41c in 18% yield (entry 1). The conditions (reagent A) reported by Gulder et al. [42] slightly improved the yield of 41a (26%), but many THFs were produced (entry 2). Next, the conditions using NBS and a catalytic amount of thiourea 42 (reagent B) by Sakakura et al. [43] were tested. The reactions in CH2Cl2 resulted in at most 19% yield of 41a together with 5-exo 41b and 41c as major products (entries 3–5). The reactions in different solvents gave similar results (entries 6 and 7). Next, we examined the reaction utilizing bromodiethylsulfonium bromopentachloroantimonate (BDSB) as a brominating reagent developed by Snyder
Table 22.1 Examination of Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling using enol phosphate 31a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Cat (mol%)</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Additive (mol%)</th>
<th>Temp.</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (10)</td>
<td>Cs₂CO₃</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (10)</td>
<td>NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Ph₃As (40)</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pd(Pr-Bu₃)₂ (2)</td>
<td>Cs₂CO₃</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pd(Pr-Bu₃)₂ (5)</td>
<td>K₃PO₄</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Pd(Pr-Bu₃)₂ (50)</td>
<td>Cs₂CO₃</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (100)</td>
<td>NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Bu₃P (400)</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (100)</td>
<td>K₃PO₄</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>60 °C</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (10)</td>
<td>NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Bu₃P (40)</td>
<td>100 °C</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Pd(OAc)₂ (100)</td>
<td>NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Bu₃P (400)</td>
<td>100 °C</td>
<td>Mixtureᵇ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ᵃ BBN = borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane, DMF = N,N-dimethylformamide
ᵇ A complex mixture including enol phosphate 31a
Scheme 22.5  Synthesis of bishomoallylic alcohol 30 and previous selectivities of bromoetherification for substrates such as 30
and co-workers [44, 45]. The original conditions (reagent C) in MeNO₂ provided 41a in 30% yield in addition to 41b and 41c in 30% and 9% yields, respectively (entry 8), with the best 6-endo:5-exo ratio ever achieved. Other solvents were also examined, but the circumstances were not improved (entries 9–11). Although unsatisfied, we tried the bromoetherification by BDSB for bishomoallylic alcohol 30.

The bromoetherification of 30 by BDSB in MeNO₂ predominantly afforded the desired 6-endo-cyclized compound 5a in 36% yield, in addition to 5-exo-cyclized byproduct 43 (20%) (Scheme 22.6). This is the first example in that the 6-endo cyclization predominated over the 5-exo one on the occasion of the A ring formation in the total syntheses of the thyrsiferol family. The stereochemistries of synthetic compounds 5a and 43 including synthetic intermediates 27 and 38a have unambiguously been determined by their NOESY spectra. The regio- and diastereoselectivity in the bulky BDSB-mediated bromoetherification of bishomoallylic alcohol 30 could be explained as follows. The attack of BDSB to the double bond between C2 and C3 of 30 from the Re-face could reversibly generate bromonium ion intermediates. In that time products, 5a and 43 would be formed through 6-endo chair-like TS D and 5-exo TS E with similar stability, respectively. On the other hand, the Si-face attack could reversibly generate bromonium ion intermediates as well. In that time, 6-endo chair-like TS F with repulsive 1,3-diaxial interaction or the strained boat-like TS G leading to 3-epi-5a and 5-exo TS H with steric repulsion between the blue hydrogen and methyl leading to 3-epi-43 would be less stable than D and E without such strain and blue steric repulsion. Therefore, bromonium ion intermediates generated by the Si-face attack would return to the starting material 30. The polar nitromethane solvent would be useful to stabilize the ionic reagent and bromonium ion intermediates.

Unfortunately, the NMR spectra (1H and 13C) of compound 5a did not coincide with those of authentic isodehydrothyrsiferol [17], but this was predictable enough because 5a only represented one of possible stereostructures for isodehydrothyrsiferol. Thus, these circumstances prompted us to synthesize another diastereomeric compound 5b, wherein the absolute configuration of D ring is opposite to that of 5a.

22.8 Total Synthesis and Complete Assignment of the Stereostructure of Isodehydrothyrsiferol

The D ring borane ent-7 required for the synthesis of another diastereomer 5b was brought from the starting material 15 through the same sequence of reactions as those of 7, except for AD-mix-α for the known diol ent-33 [35] and a chiral ligand d-(–)-DET for epoxy alcohol ent-35 (Scheme 22.7). The Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling reaction of borane ent-7 and triflate 31b afforded a coupling product 45 in 65% yield. Removal of protective groups in 45 under acidic conditions and subsequent bromoetherification provided the desired 6-endo diastereomer 5b and 5-exo byproduct 47 in each 36% yield. Expectedly, the NMR spectra (1H and 13C) of compound 5b were identical to those of authentic isodehydrothyrsiferol [17];
Table 22.2 Examination of Suzuki–Miyaura cross-coupling using enol triflate 31b

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Cat (mol%)</th>
<th>Additive (mol%)</th>
<th>Temp.</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (10)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pd(Pr-Bu₃)₂ (10)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pd(dppf)Cl₂ (10)ᵃ</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4ᵇ</td>
<td>Pd(PPh₃)₄ (10)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5ᵇ</td>
<td>Pd(Pr-Bu₃)₂ (10)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Complex mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pd(dppf)Cl₂ (30)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>50 °C</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Pd(dppf)Cl₂ (30)</td>
<td>LiBr (30)</td>
<td>50 °C</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Pd(dppf)Cl₂ (30)</td>
<td>LiCl (30)</td>
<td>50 °C</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Pd(dppf)Cl₂ (30)</td>
<td>LiCl (30)</td>
<td>50 °C</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ᵃ dppf = 1,1’-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene
ᵇ Crude triflate 31b was used in this reaction
### Table 22.3

Examination of bromoetherification using bishomoallylic alcohol 27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Reagent&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
<th>Temp. (°C)</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Yield (%)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>41a</th>
<th>41b</th>
<th>41c</th>
<th>27</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HFIP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10 min</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>18&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>HFIP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5 min</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>CH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;Cl&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>– 78</td>
<td>3.5 h</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>CH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;Cl&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>– 78 to 0</td>
<td>1 h</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>CH&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;Cl&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>– 78</td>
<td>18 h</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>– 78 to 0</td>
<td>1 h</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>MeNO&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>– 30</td>
<td>30 min</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>MeNO&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>– 23</td>
<td>10 min</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10 min</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Reaction conditions

<sup>b</sup> Yields determined by NMR and GCMS

<sup>c</sup> Reaction performed at – 78 °C

<sup>d</sup> Reaction performed at – 23 °C

(continued)
Table 22.3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>CH₂Cl₂</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>CH₂Cl₂</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>10 min</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>CH₂Cl₂</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10 min</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a A: NBS (1.2 equiv), morpholine (1.4 equiv); B: NBS (1.2 equiv), thiourea 42 (0.1 equiv); C: BDSB (1 equiv)
b Isolated yield
c This reaction was performed without morpholine
d A mixture of 41b and 41c
however, surprisingly, the signs in optical rotations of compound 5b, [α]$_{27}^{D}$ = −7.6 (c 0.25, CHCl$_3$), and the authentic isodehydrothyrsiferol, [α]$_{25}^{D}$ = +6.5 (c 0.23, CHCl$_3$) [17], were the reverse to each other.

This fact claims the correct absolute stereostructure of the natural product has to be ent-5b enantiomeric to 5b. To confirm these findings, the stereostructure ent-5b was synthesized in the same way as that of 5b from borane 7 and triflate ent-31b, which was prepared from allylic alcohol 19a via Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation using D-(−)-DET for the known epoxy alcohol ent-12 [46] and triol ent-27. The NMR spectra ($^{1}$H and $^{13}$C) and the optical rotation, [α]$_{24}^{D}$ = +5.9 (c 0.24, CHCl$_3$), of compound ent-5b were consistent with those of authentic isodehydrothyrsiferol. Thus, we have accomplished the asymmetric chemical synthesis and total assignment of the relative and absolute configurations of isodehydrothyrsiferol, a new member of the thyrsiferol family [47].

It has been found that the absolute configuration of the ABC ring system of isodehydrothyrsiferol (ent-5b) is opposite to that common to the other congeners 1–4 through its asymmetric total synthesis. This phenomenon we call a phenomenon of enantiodivergence [48] in the structure common to congeners is very rare in natural products [49] and greatly surprised us, because the identical Laurencia viridis
produced isodehydrothyrsiferol (ent-5b) and dehydrothyrsiferol (2) [18]. We thought about these facts as follows.

Okino group has proposed one of the key enzymes responsible for the production of brominated compounds from marine red algae of the genus Laurencia is vanadium-dependent bromoperoxidases (VBPOs) [50, 51], which bring about the generation of a bromocationic species from hydrogen peroxide and bromide [52]. Therefore, VBPO enzymes seem to be related to the biogenesis of the thyrsiferol congeners produced by the genus Laurencia. On the basis of their biogenetic considerations mentioned by Shirahama [11] and Fernández [1], the biogenetic pathway of ent-5b and 2 is proposed through the epoxide-opening cascade reaction from pentaepoxide 49 triggered by the VBPO-generated bromocation, although the timing of each cyclization is unclear (Scheme 22.8). The bromonium intermediate I would be generated in a major path via the Re-face attack of the bromocation to the 2,3-alkene in pentaepoxide 49, which is enantioselectively derived from squalene via squalene tetraepoxide 48 proposed as a plausible precursor for many triterpenoids [1, 11, 53, 54]. Dehydrothyrsiferol (2), a major metabolite from Laurencia viridis, would be biosynthesized through the mode of cyclization and addition of water at C15 and
Scheme 22.8  Hypothetical epoxide-opening cascade biogenesis of isodehydrothysiferol (ent-5b) and dehydrothysiferol (2) initiated by VBPO
C23, as shown in the intermediate I, and subsequent dehydration at the C15 position of the resulting thyrsiferol (1). In a minor path, bromohydrin 50 would be generated via the Si-face attack of the bromocation in 49 [55] and subsequent addition of water at C2 in the bromonium intermediate J. Isodehydrothyrsiferol (ent-5b), a minor metabolite from Laurencia viridis, would be biosynthesized through the mode of cyclization and addition of water at C23, as shown in the bromohydrin 50, and subsequent dehydration at the C15 position of the resultant compound 51.

22.9 Conclusion

In this contribution, the enantioselective chemical synthesis of a marine bromotriterpenoid isodehydrothyrsiferol, a member of the thyrsiferol family, has been achieved, featuring two 6-exo oxacyclizations of trishomoallylic epoxy alcohols (BC rings), 6-endo oxacyclization for the D ring formation, and 6-endo bromoetherification for the A ring construction. The total synthesis enabled complete assignment of the relative and absolute configurations depicted in ent-5b for the undetermined stereostructure of isodehydrothyrsiferol and revealed that the absolute configuration of the ABC ring system is opposite to that common to the other congeners 1–4 from the same red algae. In addition, such enantiodivergency also occurred between dehydrothyrsiferol (2) and isodehydrothyrsiferol (ent-5b) originating from the identical red alga Laurencia viridis. It is generally described in textbooks that enzymes precisely recognize substrates and enantio- or diastereoselectively catalyze each reaction; however, these facts prove an enantiodivergent phenomenon can occur in spite of natural products originating from a single species. There would be no these findings without asymmetric chemical synthesis.

Acknowledgements We thank J. J. Fernández for kindly providing us with copies of the 1H and 13C NMR spectra of natural isodehydrothyrsiferol. This work was financially supported by JSPS KAKENHI Grant Number JP20310137 and the Asahi Glass Foundation.

References


23. Morimoto Y, Iwai T, Nishikawa Y, Kinoshita T (2002) Stereospecific and biomimetic synthesis of *CS* and *C2* symmetric 2,5-disubstituted tetrahydrofuran rings as central building blocks of


Chapter 23
Utilizing the $pK_a$ Concept to Address Unfavorable Equilibrium Reactions in the Total Synthesis of Palau’amine

Eisaku Ohashi, Kohei Takeuchi, Keiji Tanino, and Kosuke Namba

Abstract Herein, we introduce the $pK_a$ concept as a strategy for proceeding with unfavorable reactions in the total synthesis of palau’amine. The cascade reaction aimed at constructing palau’amine’s ABDE tetracyclic ring core initially encountered poor reproducibility due to an unfavorable equilibrium reaction. However, the addition of 1.0 equivalent of AcOH enabled the progression of the unfavorable equilibrium reaction. In the second-generation synthesis, the improved cascade reaction to construct CDE ring core also initially did not proceed due to an unfavorable equilibrium reaction, but using Ph$_2$NLi as a base was later found to enable the reaction to proceed smoothly. The conjugate acid of Ph$_2$NLi proved to be a suitable acid in the unfavorable equilibrium mixture. These investigations of the cascade reactions revealed that the coexistence of an appropriate acid played an important role in allowing the unfavorable equilibrium reaction to proceed. The authors propose a general equation for proceeding with an unfavorable equilibrium reaction.

Keywords Cascade reaction · Unfavorable equilibrium reaction · Conjugate acid · Nitrogen anion

23.1 Introduction

Palau’amine (1) belongs to the class of pyrrole-imidazole alkaloids, originally isolated by Scheuer in 1993 [1, 2], with revisions of its stereochemistry reported in 2007 [3–5]. Since its initial disclosure, 1 has received a great deal of attention as an attractive synthetic target due to its complex structure and potent biological activities,
including antifungal, antitumor, and immunosuppressive properties. In particular, the potent immunosuppressive activity of 1 has piqued the interest of researchers, leading to investigations into its mode of action [6, 7]. The distinctive structural attributes of 1 include the following: two guanidine moieties; a complex polycyclic system characterized by spiro and fused rings; eight consecutive stereogenic centers, including one nitrogen-containing tetrasubstituted carbon center; a fully substituted cyclopentane ring; and the highly strained \( \text{trans} \)-azabicyclo[3.3.0]octane skeleton located at the D/E ring junction [8–13]. However, 1 is well known as one of the most difficult natural products to synthesize; despite many attempts, only two examples of its total synthesis have been reported. The first total synthesis of palau’amine was achieved by Baran’s group in 2010 [14], and an asymmetric version was developed in 2011 [15]. In 2015 we successfully achieved the total synthesis [16], and in 2021 we developed an efficient method for constructing the hexacyclic ring system of palau’amine as part of our second-generation synthesis [17]. Not surprisingly, we encountered several difficulties during these synthetic studies. This chapter focuses on how we addressed the challenge of allowing an unfavorable equilibrium reaction to proceed.

23.2 The Key Reaction and Its Unfavorable Equilibrium in the Total Synthesis of Palau’amine

Our total synthesis of palau’amine (1) is summarized as follows. The synthesis began with commercially available cyclopentenone 2, and the precursor 3 for the key cascade reaction was obtained from 2 in 25 steps. The treatment of 3 with a strong base, followed by the addition of acetic acid, yielded the ABDE tetracyclic ring core of palau’amine in a single step. The C ring was constructed in the next 5 steps, resulting in the formation of 5. The F ring was also formed, yielding 6 within 8 additional steps from 5. Finally, the primary alcohol and the methylthio group on the C ring were each converted to an amino group, and subsequent hydrogenation afforded 1, which achieved the total synthesis of palau’amine (Scheme 23.1). Throughout the total synthesis, 1 was obtained with an overall yield of 0.039% in 45 steps starting from 2. The conversion of 3 to 4 was the key reaction in this total synthesis. The details are discussed below.

Our total synthesis first targeted the construction of a nitrogen-containing tetrasubstituted carbon center at the C16 position of palau’amine. To achieve this, we employed an Hg(OTf)\(_2\)-catalyzed olefin cyclization reaction that was originally developed within our research group. After various examinations, we achieved the catalytic construction of the tetrasubstituted carbon center at the C16 position by employing hydrazine as a nitrogen nucleophile. Subsequent ring contraction led to the formation of the pylazolidine ring 7, which was further oxidatively modified at the C10 position. After considering the structure of the intermediate 7, the author came up with the following cascade reaction. Intermediate 7 was transformed into 8 through the introduction of a pyrrole amide and a strong electron-withdrawing group.
into the primary amine side chain and the nitrogen on the pyrazolidine ring, respectively. The subsequent treatment of 8 with more than 3.0 equivalents of a strong base resulted in the deprotonation of active NH protons in both the pyrrole and amide groups, with the first two equivalents of the base involved in this process. If the third base can abstract the hydrogen at the α-position of the methyl ester at the C10 position, it could result in the simultaneous cleavage of the N–N bond along with the oxidation to form the imine at the C10 position due to E1cB elimination of the nitrogen carrying a strong electron-withdrawing group. This would lead to the formation of 8B. An amide anion of 8B promptly attacked the highly reactive acylimine moiety to generate the D ring, resulting in the formation of 8C. The cascade reaction did not end at this stage because the pyrrole anion still remained. The pyrrole anion also continuously attacked the methyl ester, resulting in the construction of the B ring and yielding 8D, which, upon acid quenching, afforded 9. Thus, treatment of 8 with more than 3.0 equivalents of the strong base would induce the cascade reaction described above, resulting in the formation of the ABDE tetracyclic ring core of palau’amine in a single step (Scheme 23.2).

After converting the Fmoc group of 7 to the pyrrole amide group, we attempted to introduce a highly electron-withdrawing group to the pyrazolidine ring nitrogen, but only the trifluoroacetyl group was introduced. With the precursor 3 in hand, we examined the cascade reaction. Surprisingly, in the first experiment of the cascade reaction, where 3 was treated with 3.0 equivalents of LiHMDS, the desired product 4 was obtained, albeit with a yield of only 30%. Clearly remembering that we had obtained the desired 4 in the first experiment, we were very excited by this result and immediately attempted to scale up this cascade reaction to achieve the total
synthesis of palau’amine. However, we encountered a problem at this point: subsequent attempts to repeat the reaction did not yield reproducible results. In some cases, the yield of 4 was around 50%, but in many cases it was less than 30%, and in some cases was hardly obtained (Scheme 23.3). As long as the yield reproducibility is consistent, it may be possible to address this by increasing the scale of synthesis even if the yield is not high. However, in cases of poor reproducibility, it was deemed too risky to use even a slightly larger quantity of the painstakingly synthesized precursor 3, given that it required 25 steps to obtain.

We carefully reconsidered the cause of the poor reproducibility based on the reaction mechanism. It became apparent to us that, in a sense, reproducibility could not be ensured. Upon treatment with a base, the D ring was formed via 3B, giving 3C. Up to this stage, the reaction had proceeded without any problems. Indeed, the conversion from 3 to 3C could be monitored by TLC. However, subsequent conversion from 3C to 3D was extremely slow. When we considered this carefully, we realized this was a matter of course. That was because a methoxide, which is less stable than the pyrrole anion of 3C, was formed during the nucleophilic addition reaction of the pyrrole anion to the methyl ester. Thus, even as the reaction proceeded, the generated methoxide attacked the amide site of 3D, bringing it back to 3C. In other words, this reaction was in an equilibrium between 3C and 3D, and 3C was much favored in this equilibrium. As we observed the equilibrium reaction with TLC and waited for 3C to disappear, 3C gradually decomposed, causing the loss of reproducibility (Scheme 23.3). Consequently, it was hypothesized that selectively quenching the minute amount of methoxide generated in this equilibrium would permit the reaction from 3C to 3D to advance, thus overcoming the unfavorable equilibrium reaction.
With this premise, we attempted to eliminate only the methoxide while preserving the pyrrole anion.

As a method to selectively remove methoxide, we added exactly 1.0 equivalent of acid when the cascade reaction had reached the 3C stage (Scheme 23.4). Treatment with 3.0 equivalents of LiHMDS at $-78 \, ^\circ C$ and warming to $0 \, ^\circ C$ resulted in the progress of the cascade reaction to form the D ring, leading to 3C. After TLC confirmed the formation of 3C, exactly one equivalent of AcOH was added to the reaction mixture at $-78 \, ^\circ C$. As the most basic of the three nitrogen anions of 3C was the Boc amide anion, it was protonated by acetic acid to afford 3E. The pyrrole anion of 3C still remained, and then the addition reaction of pyrrole anion to methyl ester continued. As the addition reaction proceeded to form 3F, methoxide was also produced as before. In this case, however, 3F had an active NH proton, and the methoxide showed a preference for abstracting the active proton as a base rather than adding to the amide site as a nucleophile. This quenched only the generating methoxide while retaining the pyrrole anion. This acid addition inserted new intermediates 3E and 3F between the previous equilibrium of 3C and 3D. This adjustment effectively shifted the equilibrium from favoring 3C to favoring 3D. Among various acids, acetic acid was found to be the best protonating reagent. In addition, precise amounts of LHMDS and acetic acid are very important for this “protonation-state switching by pKa game” reaction. In this way, the yield of ABDE tetracyclic ring core 4 was increased to 74% with good reproducibility achieved on scales acceptable.
Scheme 23.4 Overcoming unfavorable equilibrium between 3C and 3D for total synthesis (Scheme 23.4). By this method, it became possible to supply 4 in quantity to support the subsequent 19 steps and to achieve the total synthesis of palau’amine.

23.3 The Unfavorable Equilibrium Reaction in the Key Reaction of Second-Generation Total Synthesis of Palau’amine

We achieved the total synthesis of palau’amine based on the key reaction described above, but our total synthesis required a large number of steps (45 steps), as shown in Scheme 23.1. To advance both mechanistic studies of the potent immunosuppressive activity of palau’amine and structure–activity relationship (SAR) studies, a more efficient method of constructing the hexacyclic ring system of 1 was needed. Therefore, we tried to develop a more efficient synthetic method as a second-generation synthesis. In the first-generation total synthesis, there were several issues that lengthened the number of steps, including 25 steps that were required to obtain the cascade reaction precursor 3, while the construction of additional C and F rings also required many steps (5 and 8, respectively) after the construction of the ABDE tetracyclic ring core 4. Therefore, as a new synthetic strategy based on the key reaction in the first-generation total synthesis, we devised a plan to pre-introduce the sources for the...
C and F rings into the precursor of the cascade reaction. Specifically, the Boc group in 3 was converted into an isothiourea group to serve as the source of the guanidino group of the C ring. Additionally, the vinyl group was transformed into a nitrile group, which served as a foothold for the construction of the F ring. Furthermore, with the prospect of future expansion into SAR studies and probe development, we designed 10, lacking both the aminomethyl side chain and the chloro group, as a precursor for the cascade reaction. This enabled us to investigate whether these functional groups affect immunosuppressive activity. As was the case in the first-generation synthesis, treatment of 10 with 3.0 equivalents of a strong base was expected to initiate a cascade reaction for constructing the CD ring in a single step. This cascade encompassed the abstraction of hydrogens from NH groups and the C10 position, cleavage of the N–N bond accompanied by oxidation at the C10 position, addition of the amide anion to the imine moiety, and subsequent addition of thioisourea to the ethyl ester (Scheme 23.6). If this cascade reaction proceeded, the construction of the C ring, which required 5 steps in the first-generation synthesis, could be accomplished in a single step simultaneously with the construction of the D ring.

In the first-generation synthesis, we employed an Hg(OTf)2-catalyzed olefin cyclization reaction to construct the nitrogen-containing tetrasubstituted carbon center at the C16 position. In the second-generation synthesis, the tetrasubstituted carbon center was constructed by an unprecedented Strecker reaction to pyrazolines; this reaction shortened the synthesis of the cascade reaction precursor 10 from...
commercially available cyclopentenone to just 9 steps. Since this synthetic route could supply a sufficient amount of 10, we tried the cascade reaction.

First, treatment of 10 with 3.0 equivalents of LiHMDS resulted in the formation of a trace amount (< 5%) of the CDE ring core 11. Despite this, the intended reaction did progress to some extent, albeit with significant decomposition of the starting material (Scheme 23.6). We repeated the reaction under various conditions by changing the base equivalent, temperature, solvent, and so on, but we were unable to obtain more than a trace amount of 11 and often obtained none at all. Although most of the starting material decomposed, isothiourea 12 was obtained as the major byproduct. From the formation of byproduct 12, we considered that the reaction did not proceed and decomposed for the following reason. As in the first-generation synthesis, the third base abstracted the hydrogen at the C10 position to give 10B, and the amide anion subsequently added to the reactive imine moiety to form the D ring, leading to 10C. We considered the cascade reaction to have proceeded smoothly until this stage, similar to the first-generation synthesis. Although the subsequent introduction of the carbamate anion from the isothiourea to the ethyl ester could potentially yield the desired CDE ring core 11, this transformation was regarded as difficult to achieve.

Among the three anions present in the second-generation substrate 10C, the carbamate anion derived from isothiourea exhibited the highest stability. Consequently, the conversion to 10D, which produced the least stable ethoxide, was highly unfavorable. Therefore, the equilibrium between 10C and 10D strongly favored the former, and by subjecting this equilibrium to an acidic quench, 10D, which was minimal quantity in the equilibrium, was transformed into 11 and isolated. The abundant 10C was protonated to give 10E, and the highly strained D ring was immediately cleaved due to the electron-donating effect originating from the isothiourea group, resulting in the formation of 10F. The isothiourea moiety was removed from 10F by hydrolysis, leading to 12 as a major byproduct, along with the decomposition of the DE ring moiety (Scheme 23.6). From this result, we found that while 10D can be isolated as 11 after quenching with acid, 10C cannot be isolated as an intermediate because it decomposes during quenching. This, in turn, suggested that the reaction would give only decomposed products unless the favorable intermediate in this equilibrium reaction was reversed from 10C to 10D.

Also, the stereochemistry at the C10 position of 11, a trace amount of which was obtained, was the opposite of that of the cyclization product 4 obtained in the first-generation synthesis (Scheme 23.6). The cascade reaction in the second-generation synthesis unveiled that the CDE ring core was formed with a C10-position stereochemistry that was opposite that of palau'amine. The stereochemical differences between the first- and second-generation syntheses arose from the difference in the Boc and isothiourea groups. In the first-generation synthesis, DFT calculations revealed that the configuration at the C10 position was determined by the coordination of the carbonyl oxygen of the Boc group to lithium salt (see Ref. [16] for details). Although the stereochemistry at the C10 position of 11 was undesired, we planned to increase the yield of 11 first and then attempt its stereoinversion because the intermediate 10C could not be isolated. Therefore, to improve the yield of 11, we had to determine how to drive the reaction to 10D. We had already faced and
Scheme 23.6 Unfavorable equilibrium between 10C and 10D in the cascade reaction forming the CDE tetracyclic ring core in the second-generation synthesis of palau’amine

solved a similar problem in the first-generation total synthesis. We considered that the unfavorable equilibrium between 10C and 10D could be resolved by applying the same pKa concept that selectively quenches the ethoxide generated as the reaction proceeds from 10C to 10D.

The pKa concept in the case of 10 was as follows. At the stage where intermediate 10C was formed by treating 10 with 3.0 equivalents of LiHMDS, three nitrogen anions were generated: the pyrrole anion (pKa of conjugate acid: ~ 23), the carbamate anion of isothiourea (~ 15), and the trifluoroacetoamide anion (~ 17). Given the basicity of these anions, adding 1.0 equivalent of AcOH at this point would protonate the pyrrole anion, resulting in the formation of 10E’. The remaining carbamate anion of isothiourea then attacked the ethyl ester to afford 10H, and the simultaneously generated ethoxide abstracted the proton from the NH of pyrrole.
This prevented the ethoxide ion from attacking the imide moiety of 10H, effectively avoiding the reverse reaction leading to 10E’ and facilitating the progression of the reaction toward the dianion 10D (Scheme 23.7). However, the addition of 1.0 equivalent of AcOH after the conversion to 10C induced quick decomposition and gave only a similar byproduct, isothiourea 12 (Scheme 23.7). This outcome was likely a result of the protonation of the pyrrole anion to form 10E’, which diminished the electron-donating effect from the pyrrole anion. Consequently, the electron-withdrawing nature of the amide carbonyl group was heightened, leading to the cleavage of the highly strained D ring through the electron donation from the isothiourea carbamate anion, rather than facilitating the nucleophilic addition to the ethyl ester. This result indicated that the findings from the previous studies (the first-generation synthesis) were not applicable to the second-generation cascade reaction with the isothiourea. Thus a new solution, other than the addition of acetic acid, had to be discovered.

To find a solution, we revisited the reaction mechanism in detail and thereby realized that there was another intermediate within the equilibrium between 10C and 10D: the alkoxide intermediate 10I (Scheme 23.8). Although this alkoxide intermediate is often omitted when considering nucleophilic addition reactions to ester carboxyls, we realized that it was the key to allowing an unfavorable equilibrium reaction proceed. The pKₐ of the conjugate acid of the alkoxide of 10I is estimated to be less than 32 (based on the pKₐ of t-BuOH in DMSO). Notably, the alkoxide

Scheme 23.7  Application of acid addition method in the first-generation synthesis to the cascade reaction in the second-generation synthesis
of 10I stands out as the most unstable among the anions found in 10C and 10I. Additionally, its basicity significantly exceeds that of both the pyrrole anion and the amide anion. Instead of reverting to 10C by releasing the more basic ethoxide (pKₐ of conjugate acid: 28.9) from this unstable intermediate, the primary focus was on preserving the most stable (less basic) isothiourea carbamate anion (pKₐ of conjugate acid: ~ 15). Therefore, it was considered that an equilibrium mainly existed between 10C and 10I in this reaction system, with 10D barely involved in the equilibrium. The equilibrium between 10C and 10I significantly favored 10C, and the trace amount of 11 obtained by acid quenching was believed to originate from the scarcely present 10I through the formation of protonated 10I. Thus, we expected that if only 10I could be selectively protonated and converted to 10J, the equilibrium mixture would eventually converge to 10J, and subsequent removal of ethanol would afford 11 in good yield. There were six anions in the equilibrium mixture of 10C and 10I, with alkoxide and pyrrole being the most basic and second most basic anions, respectively. When acid was used to quench this equilibrium mixture, it protonated 10C, which was present in large excess within the equilibrium. Consequently, the reaction yielded only a mixture of decomposition products. However, if only the alkoxide of 10I could be selectively protonated and converted to 10J without protonating the pyrrole anions, 10I could be removed from the equilibrium mixture, and the mixture should eventually converge to 10J (Scheme 23.8).

Scheme 23.8 Plan to proceed with unfavorable equilibrium reaction
To facilitate the coexistence of such acids, we came up with the idea of using Ph2NLi as the base. Although there have been few examples of the use of Ph2NH as a base, treatment of 10 with 3.2 equivalents of Ph2NH allowed the reaction to proceed smoothly, and the generation of 10J was suggested by 1H and 19F NMR. The subsequent addition of 3.2 equivalents of AcOH in one pot induced the elimination of ethanol, successfully affording the desired 11 in a good yield of 72%. This reaction was considered to proceed through the following mechanism. First, 3.0 equivalents of Ph2NLi abstracted three protons of 10, leading to 10C. Then, as in the case of LiHMDS, 10C formed the equilibrium mixture of 10C and 10I, with a strong preference for the former. In this case, 3.0 equivalents of Ph2NH were generated as a conjugate acid in the reaction system after hydrogens were abstracted by Ph2NLi. Since the pK\textsubscript{a} of Ph2NH was 25, it could protonate a slightly generated alkoxide of 10I. On the other hand, Ph2NH was unable to protonate the pyrrole anion, as the pK\textsubscript{a} of the conjugate acid was estimated to be less than 23. In other words, Ph2NH functioned as a suitable acid that could selectively protonate the alkoxide formed in small quantities without interacting with the pyrrole anions, which were present in large excess in the reaction system (Scheme 23.9). The above results revealed that Ph2NH is an interesting base that transitions into an acid after initially functioning as a base.

Next, to validate whether the effectiveness of Ph2NH in the cascade reaction stemmed from the generation of a conjugate acid with the suitable pK\textsubscript{a} range (23–32) as we previously proposed, we conducted comparable experiments employing different bases (Scheme 23.9). The use of Et2NLi and iPr2NLi as bases did not afford the desired cyclization product, and only decomposition occurred. The respective pK\textsubscript{a}s of the conjugate acids of Et2NLi and Ph2NH were 40 and 36, significantly higher than the pK\textsubscript{a} (< 32) of the conjugate acid of alkoxide of 10I. Hence, the alkoxide of 10I remained unprotonated, and a substantial quantity of 10C persisted as the dominant intermediate in the equilibrium. Following quenching, it decomposed, as depicted in Scheme 23.6. The conjugate acid of LiHMDS has a pK\textsubscript{a} of 30, which is close to the acidity of the conjugate acid of the alkoxide of 10I. Thus, even if the alkoxide could be protonated by HMDS (TMS\textsubscript{2}NH) and converted into 10J, the resultant LiHMDS (TMS\textsubscript{2}NLi) had the capacity to extract the alcohol hydrogen from 10J and revert it back to 10I. This reverse reaction also generated the equilibrium between 10I and 10J, and the three intermediates 10C, 10I, and 10J were in equilibrium. Due to the large abundance of favorable 10C in the equilibrium, quenching this equilibrium reaction afforded only a trace amount of 11. To increase the abundance of 10J in the equilibrium, the addition of 10 equivalents of HMDS improved the yield of 11 to 36%. This result reinforced the idea that the pK\textsubscript{a}s of the conjugate acids of LiHMDS and alkoxide were similar, leading to an equilibrium between 10C and 10J.

Next, the use of (p-Br-C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4})\textsubscript{2}NLi, which was anticipated to have a lower pK\textsubscript{a} of the conjugate acid compared to pyrrole, resulted in the formation of only a decomposed mixture. It was considered that the pyrrole anion of 10C, which presented in large excess, became protonated by the generated conjugate acid, (p-Br-C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4})\textsubscript{2}NH. As a consequence, 10C decomposed through the same route as shown in Scheme 23.6.
Verification of pKa of conjugate acid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pKa range</th>
<th>base</th>
<th>pKa of conjugate acid</th>
<th>results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XH &gt; 32</td>
<td>Et₂NLi</td>
<td>~40</td>
<td>decomposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i-Pr₂NLi</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>decomposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 &lt; XH &lt; 32</td>
<td>TMS₂NLi</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TMS₂NLi + TMS₂NH (10 equiv)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ph₂NLi</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>decomposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XH &lt; 23</td>
<td>(p-Br-C₆H₄)₂NLi</td>
<td>&lt; 23</td>
<td>decomposition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scheme 23.9 Overcoming unfavorable equilibrium between 10C and 10I

Only the use of a base with a conjugate acid pKa range of 23–32 afforded the CDE ring core 11. Conversely, when other bases possessed conjugate acid pKa's either higher or lower than this range, only decomposed products were obtained (Scheme 23.9). This observation supports our hypothesis that the coexistence of suitable acids is essential for advancing an unfavorable equilibrium reaction.

In these synthetic studies of plau’amine, we have demonstrated that the presence of an appropriate acid can promote the successful progression of an unfavorable equilibrium reaction involving anions. Since this method is applicable to various
other equilibrium reactions, we propose this concept of a coexisting acid in the following general equation (Fig. 23.1). When compound AH is subjected to a base, it produces an equilibrium mixture consisting of B− and C− anions. The anion whose conjugate acid has a lower pK_a is the more stable one, leading to an equilibrium mixture in which this particular anion is predominantly present. In other words, in a case where the highest pK_a of the conjugate acids of B− and C− are a_1 and a_2, respectively, and the values are a_1 < a_2, the equilibrium favors B−. The greater the difference between a_1 and a_2, the greater the difference in the abundance of B− and C−. In this equilibrium mixture, if CH, which is protonated unfavorable C−, is the desired product, a simple acidic quench also protonates the B− anion, which is present in large excess. This results in the formation of almost no CH. To obtain CH, a protonated form of the unfavorable anion, as the major product, the presence of an appropriate acid that can protonate C− but cannot protonate B− is necessary. In other words, the coexistence of an acid with a pK_a higher than that of a_1 and lower than that of a_2 is required. Therefore, it is necessary to have coexisting acids that selectively protonate the unfavorable anion C− in the equilibrium, satisfying the following relationship: a_1 < a_3 < a_2, where a_3 represents the pK_a of the coexisting acids (Fig. 23.1).

Here, we attempt to apply this general equation to the aforementioned cascade reactions. In the first-generation cascade reaction (Scheme 23.4), when the precursor 3 was treated with 3.0 equivalents of LiHMDS, it produced an equilibrium mixture of 3C and 3D. Obtaining 3D as the major product was challenging due to the predominance of 3C in the equilibrium. On the other hand, if this reaction is considered as an equilibrium reaction between anions as shown in the general equation, it should also be viewed as an equilibrium reaction between 3C and the methoxide. The addition of 1.0 equivalent of acetic acid to this equilibrium mixture mainly protonated the Boc amide anion of 3C to convert to NHBoc 3E due to the much greater abundance of 3C compared to the methoxide. The equilibrium is then between the pyrrole anion of 3E and the methoxide, and the pK_a of the generated NHBoc is less than 24 (a_3), which is higher than that of the pyrrole anion of 3E (pK_a: < 23) (a_1) and lower than that of the methoxide (pK_a: 28) (a_2). Therefore, the pK_a of generated NHBoc satisfied the inequality “a_1 < a_3 < a_2” as the coexisting acid, so the reaction proceeded by quenching only methoxide as an unfavorable anion. In addition, in the second-generation cascade reaction, the pK_a 25 (a_3) of Ph2NH generated from Ph2NLi is higher than 23 (highest pK_a of conjugate acid: a_1) of the pyrrole anion of 10C and lower than 32 (a_3) of the alkoxide of 10I, and the general inequality “a_1 < a_3 < a_2” is satisfied. Hence, to selectively protonate only the unfavorable anion in the equilibrium of anions, it is effective to have an appropriate acid coexist, which adheres to the suggested general inequality “a_1 < a_3 < a_2” (Fig. 23.1).

Of course, while the pK_a concept is well known among synthetic chemists, it has often been applied based on individual chemists’ knowledge and experience rather than as a formalized general equation. Therefore, we proposed this general equation based on the results of the key cascade reactions in the synthetic studies of palau’amine. We plan to investigate the scope of this general equation in the future.
As described above, we overcame the unfavorable equilibrium reaction to achieve the total synthesis of palau’amine. In addition, by establishing a concept for proceeding with an unfavorable equilibrium reaction, we successfully developed a second-generation synthesis that can more efficiently construct the hexacyclic ring core of palau’amine. Although the first-generation total synthesis required 45 steps, the second-generation synthesis required only 20 steps to synthesize 13, which has all the ring structures of palau’amine (Scheme 23.10). By evaluating the activity of 13, we found that the immunosuppressive activity of palau’amine is retained even without the aminomethyl side chain and the chloro group, although the activity somewhat decreased. This suggested that these functional groups can be utilized to design probes. With the aim of supplying palau’amine for probe development, we are currently applying this concept to substrates with side chains.
In this chapter, we introduced the problems we encountered in the cascade cyclization reactions as the key steps of the total synthesis of palau’amine, and we developed solutions to them. In both the first- and second-generation syntheses, it took a long time for the cascade cyclization reactions to proceed with good yields and good reproducibility. In both cases, it was essential to conduct numerous experiments and engage in thorough deliberations before recognizing the presence of an unfavorable equilibrium reaction in the reaction system. Even after this realization, we performed many failed experiments before arriving at the idea of adding a coexisting acid. For example, to prevent the generation of highly basic methoxide and ethoxide, we first attempted the use of esters with acidic alcohols such as phenol and fluorinated alcohols, but the formation of active esters induced unexpected side reactions. In the end, the addition of an appropriate coexisting acid was the only solution that enabled the cascade cyclization reaction to proceed. Once we understood this, we realized it was a very simple solution. Although this research phenomenon may be common in any field, this study makes us realize once again that it can be difficult to notice the obvious. There is no doubt that repeated deep consideration and hard work are sometimes important to realize the obvious.

23.4 Conclusion

Scheme 23.10  Comparison of the first-generation synthesis and second-generation synthesis
Acknowledgements Part of Fig. 23.1 was reproduced from Ref. [17] with permission from the Royal Society of Chemistry.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.